

E

178

.1

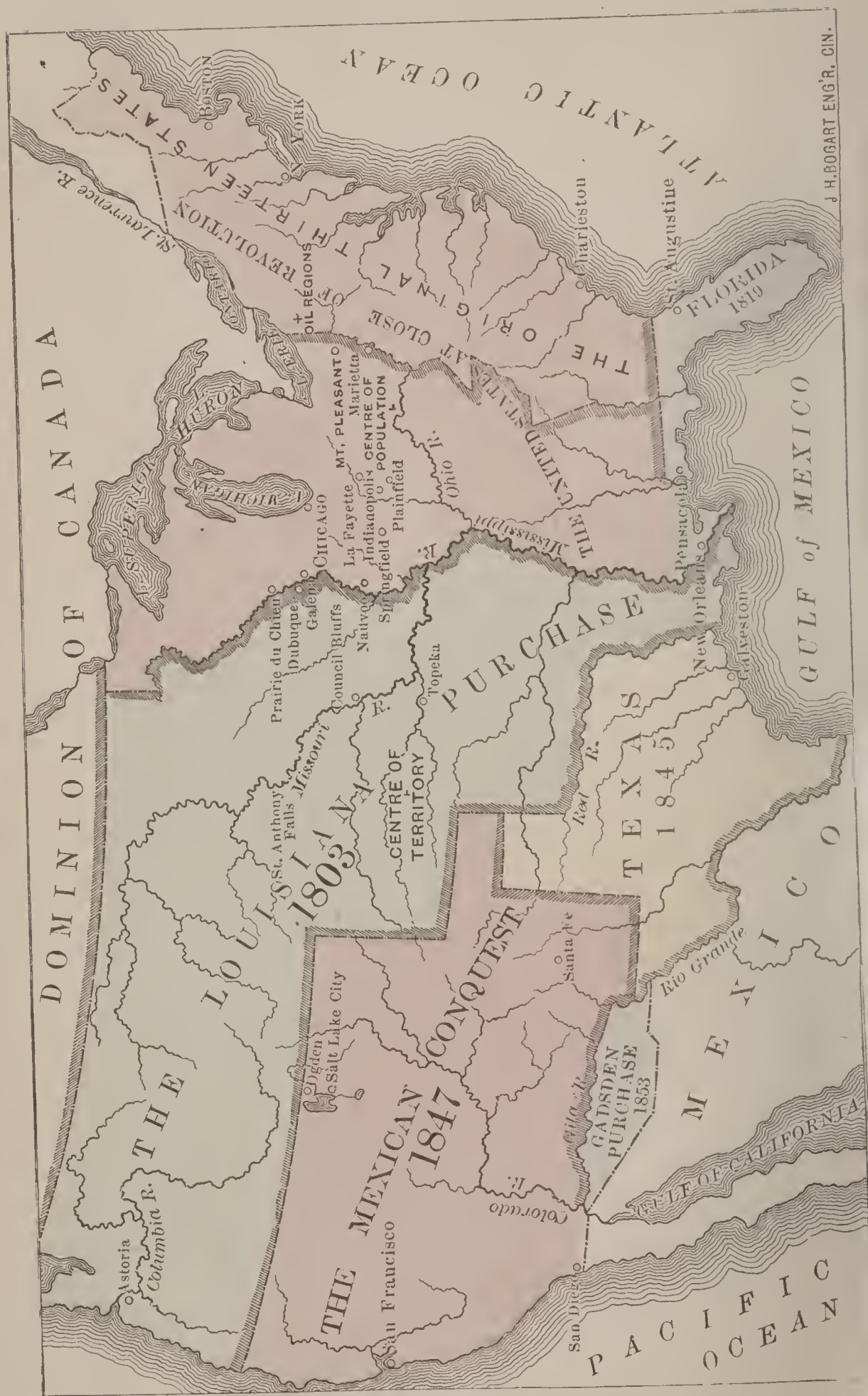
T22

FLS

2014

053084





THE
MODEL HISTORY.

A BRIEF ACCOUNT OF THE

AMERICAN PEOPLE;

FOR SCHOOLS.

✓
BY EDWARD TAYLOR, A. M.

"Nothing is really worth recording as final history except what promotes the permanent welfare of man."—PARTON.

CHICAGO:
GEORGE SHERWOOD & CO.

[1878]

COPYRIGHT, 1878,
BY GEORGE SHERWOOD & Co.

Em

1

322

PREFACE.

THE author is aware that he is entering a field which has been diligently cultivated; and it is evident that if there be room for one more History of the United States for Schools, it must differ in character from those now before the public. Several distinctive features are claimed for this work.

I. The Chart of Events. To most minds the mastery of dates is drudgery, and in the average school few exercises are more barren and profitless. No claim of originality in the general plan of the Chart is made. A. S. Lyman, in his Chart of Universal History, used it thirty years ago. It has been found that the association of an event with its relative place in the stream of time, remains impressed on the mind long after the arbitrary memory of a date has passed away. It is a method approved by experience, and not a scheme dictated by the fancy. The maps give the location of *every place* mentioned in the text, except those in foreign countries.

II. Colonial history is dwelt upon briefly, and much space is given to the period of nationality. The valuable lessons of American history are mostly to be found in our national, rather than provincial, life.

III. It is specially adapted to collateral reading. For this purpose a list of authorities is given at the beginning of every period. The amount of advantageous supplementary reading, to give completeness to the picture, is limited only by the time and inclination of the learner.

IV. The illustrations have historical accuracy. Very few of our battle scenes and other sensational cuts can lay any claim to historical truth. In nearly every case they are "evolved from the consciousness" of imaginative artists, and reduce to mere pictorial effect what might be made to yield trustworthy and pleasurable information.

V. Its adaptation for securing definite results in recitation. Broad-faced type suggests to the eye the chief point of each paragraph, and fits the narrative to the topical method of recitation. Provision is made for reviews. It is believed that the tables on contemporary European history will throw much light upon the true significance of many American events.

VI. It does not make a specialty of military details. It is not "a drum and trumpet history." Men are perceiving that war is a brutal, even if sometimes a necessary, method of adjusting national differences, and that that is a very barren national life which produces nothing better than the repetition of military deeds. It is a growing opinion with teachers of the young, that it is time some other history than military was taught in our schools. History is a much nobler thing than a mere record of bloodshed. "War plays a small part in the *real* history of modern nations," and in that of the United States it is smaller than in any other. It has been the design, therefore, without ignoring military history, to divest it of its details, and to present the salient features of the campaigns as the only thing the interests of the pupil demand.

VII. More than usual space is given to political contests, invention, education, industries, schemes for internal improvements, reforms, presidential issues, causes and results, progress of opinion, social, official, and domestic manners — in a word, the development of our national life. The paramount idea has been to show the learner the steps of progress by which we have become a great nation.

The style is simple and concise, without ignoring the ordinary graces of composition. The treatment of the various subjects will be found to be free from partisan bias on controverted points in politics, religion, and sectionalism. The narrative, it is thought, will be found to be full of facts and those *the essential ones*.

I desire to make public acknowledgment of my obligations to Prof. LEONARD F. PARKER, A.M., of the chair of History and Greek in the State University of Iowa, for his careful and scholarly revision of the proofs. Prof. MILES REECE has rendered valuable assistance in the correction of clerical deficiencies and errors of taste and syntax.

E. T.

TABLE OF CONTENTS.

TABLE OF PERIODS, - - - - -	PAGE
CHART OF EVENTS, - - - - -	6
	7

PERIOD I.

I. MOUND-BUILDERS, INDIANS, AND NORTHMEN, - -	17
REVIEW, - - - - -	22
CONTEMPORARY EVENTS IN EUROPEAN HISTORY, -	23

PERIOD II.

I. STORY OF THE GREAT DISCOVERY, - - - - -	25
II. EXPLORATION AND CLAIMS, - - - - -	31
REVIEW, - - - - -	36
CONTEMPORARY EVENTS IN EUROPEAN HISTORY, -	36

PERIOD III.

I. COLONIAL SETTLEMENTS, - - - - -	39
II. COLONIAL PROGRESS, - - - - -	63
III. THE FRENCH AND INDIAN WAR, - - - - -	74
IV. THE INTERVAL, - - - - -	82
V. CAUSES OF THE REVOLUTION, - - - - -	95
VI. THE REVOLUTION, - - - - -	103
REVIEW, - - - - -	108
CONTEMPORARY EVENTS IN EUROPEAN HISTORY, -	111

PERIOD IV.

I. INDEPENDENCE AND REVOLUTION, - - - - -	114
II. CONFEDERATION AND UNION, - - - - -	133
III. ADMINISTRATION OF WASHINGTON, - - - - -	138
IV. ADMINISTRATION OF JOHN ADAMS, - - - - -	150
V. ADMINISTRATION OF JEFFERSON, - - - - -	156
VI. ADMINISTRATION OF MADISON, - - - - -	170
VII. ADMINISTRATION OF MONROE, - - - - -	180
VIII. ADMINISTRATION OF J. Q. ADAMS, - - - - -	190
IX. ADMINISTRATION OF JACKSON, - - - - -	198
X. ADMINISTRATION OF VAN BUREN, - - - - -	207
XI. ADMINISTRATIONS OF HARRISON AND TYLER, - -	213
XII. ADMINISTRATION OF POLK, - - - - -	223
XIII. ADMINISTRATIONS OF TAYLOR AND FILLMORE, -	231
XIV. ADMINISTRATION OF PIERCE, - - - - -	235
XV. ADMINISTRATION OF BUCHANAN, - - - - -	240
XVI. ADMINISTRATION OF LINCOLN, - - - - -	248
XVII. ADMINISTRATION OF JOHNSON, - - - - -	269
XVIII. ADMINISTRATION OF GRANT, - - - - -	274
XIX. ADMINISTRATION OF HAYES, - - - - -	285
REVIEW, - - - - -	292
CONTEMPORARY EVENTS IN EUROPEAN HISTORY, -	297
HISTORICAL RECREATIONS, - - - - -	300
PRONOUNCING VOCABULARY OF PROPER NAMES, -	304
TABLES, - - - - -	307
DECLARATION OF INDEPENDENCE, - - - - -	311
CONSTITUTION OF THE UNITED STATES, - - - - -	314

PERIODS OF AMERICAN HISTORY.

When we think upon the political condition of this country from the beginning, it will seem convenient and natural to consider its history as divided into four periods.

I. **The Aboriginal Period**, extending to the discovery of the continent in 1492.

II. **The Period of Discovery and Exploration**, extending over 115 years, from the discovery of America in 1492 to the founding of the first English colony in 1607.

III. **The Colonial Period**, extending over 169 years, from the first English colony in 1607 to the Declaration of Independence in 1776.

IV. **The Period of Nationality**, extending over 102 years, from the Declaration in 1776 to the present time, 1878.

HISTORICAL CHARTS.

EXPLANATION OF THE CHART.

In most minds the faculty of abstract number is one of the *least* efficient, and locality one of the *most* efficient, of the mental powers. Hence the use of maps and charts. In geography maps are indispensable. In this chart the same principle of bringing the eye to the aid of the mind, is applied to history in locating events.

Time is represented as a stream, bearing events upon it, and flowing six inches each half century. It is recommended that the pupil *thoroughly master* the chart, and read the text in connection with it. It will be found that the varied facts of history will take their places in a panoramic view, giving a clear and lasting knowledge of the sequence of events and their bearing one upon another. The history of our country becomes, not a mass of dim and detached facts, but a coherent biography of the nation.

AMERICA.

73. Columbus conceives the idea of western exploration.

85. The spirit of exploration seizes Western Europe.

ABORIGINAL PERIOD.

This period extends backward indefinitely and forward to the era of exploration and discovery. It is to be read only in the traditions and remains of the Mound-Builders, Indians, and Northmen.

92. Col-
98.
99.

ENGLAND.

85. Henry VII.

1500.

PERIOD OF DISCOVERY AND EXPLORATION.

Columbus discovers America.

CABOT sails along the Atlantic coast.
VESPUCCIUS visits the New World.

13. BALBOA discovers the Pacific.

13. PONCE DE LEON visits Florida.

19. CORTES reaches Mexico.

20. MAGELLAN sails around the globe.

24. VERRAZZANI explores the Atlantic coast.

34. CARTIER explores Newfoundland.

39. DE SOTO explores the Southern States.

42. CABRILLO explores the Pacific coast.

9. Henry VIII.

47. Edward VI.

65. *St. Augustine* founded by Spaniards.

76. FROBISHER visits Labrador.

79. *Sir Francis Drake* explores the Pacific coast.

84.

SIR WALTER RALEIGH unsuccessfully attempts to colonize Virginia.

53. Mary, "the Bloody."

58. Elizabeth, the Virgin Queen.

64. Church of England established.

5. *De Monts* plants a colony at Port Royal.
6. Patents issued to the London and the Plymouth Companies.
8. *Champlain* founds Quebec.
9. *Hudson* sails up Hudson River.
7. *Virginia*: Jamestown founded.
8. John Smith, Governor.
19. First legislative assembly met at Jamestown.
20. Slavery introduced into Virginia.
20. *Massachusetts*: The Puritans land at Plymouth.
22. Indian massacre in Virginia.
23. *New York* settled by the Dutch.

34. Roger Williams disturbs Massachusetts.
34. *Maryland* founded by English Catholics.
34. The first saw-mill.
35. *Connecticut* settled from Massachusetts.
36. *Rhode Island* colonized.
37. Pequot War.
38. *Harvard College* founded.
39. First printing press.
43. New England.

COLONIAL PERIOD.

3. James I. He persecutes Catholics and dissenting Protestants.
25. Charles I.
- 49.

1600.

massacre in Virginia.
vesant in New York.

School system originates in Massachusetts.

52. The first mint.

63. The Grand Model tried in Carolina.

64. Eliot's Indian Bible.

64. The English overthrow the Dutch power in New York.

75. King Philip's War.

81. French Jesuits explore the Mississippi Valley.

82. William Penn founds the Colony of Penn-

setts.
olies.

85. Population of the Colonies 200,000
90. First paper money.

achusetts.

92. Salem witch-
93. William

at Cambridge.
Colonies united.

51. *Navigation Acts*, to restrict the commerce of Holland.

60. Charles II.

Cromwell establishes the Commonwealth.

85. James II.

88. William and Mary.

1700.

1. *Yale College* founded.

4. First American newspaper.

Mather, founder of American literature.
sylvania.

20. Potatoes are sparingly used as food.

29. Separation of the Carolinas.

31. Philadelphia Library founded.

32. Birth of Washington.

33. Georgia founded.

35. Freedom of the press estab-

38. Whitefield and Wesley

40. Eliza Lucas raises

40. Iron furnaces erected.

craft.
and Mary College founded.

44. Negro plot

46. College

49.

The Colonies suffer from the Navigation Acts
and the exactions of the Royal Governors.

2. Queen Anne.

14. George I.

27. George II.

52. Benjamin Franklin discovers the identity of lightning and electricity.

53. Washington carries a letter to Lake Erie.

54. French and Indian War. It decides the mastership of the continent.

55. Columbia College founded.

60. Daniel Boone goes west.

64. Brown University founded.

65. The contest with England begins.

65. First Colonial Congress.

66. Flying Machines.

70. First blood of the war.

73. Boston Tea Party.

Jonathan Edwards.

James Otis.

visit America. *Patrick Henry.*

cotton in Carolina.

in New York

of New Jersey founded.

The Ohio Company obtains a grant of 500,000 acres.

PERIOD OF NATIONALITY.

81. *Cornwallis surrenders.*

81. Articles of Confederation ratified.

83. Treaty of Paris.

87. Constitution drafted.

88. Ratified by nine States.

89. Washington,

91. National Bank

91. Vermont ad-

92. The Cotton

92. Kentucky

93. Genet

93. Yellow

94. Whis-

96. Ten-

97. Ad-

99.

60. George III.

67. *Tea Tar passed.*

70. Lord North, the servile minister of George III.

61. *Writs of assistance.*

65. *Stamp Act.*

66. The Act repealed

82. Marquis of Rockingham, prime

[minister.

74. Parliament declares a rebellion in Massachusetts.

[from Yorktown.

82. North resigns on hearing the news

1800.

- 1800.** Seat of Government removed to Washington.
1800. Repeal of the Alien and Sedition Laws.
1. **Jefferson**, President.
1. War with Tripoli.
2. Ohio admitted.
3. Purchase of Louisiana.
4. Hamilton shot.
6. Burr's conspiracy.
6. First Foreign Missionary Society.
6. Webster's Dictionary.
7. First steamboat.
8. Coast survey authorized.
8. Foreign Slave Trade abolished.
9. **Madison**, President.
11. Battle of Tippecanoe.
12. War with England.
12. Louisiana admitted.
13. First cotton manufactory.
16. National Bank chartered.
16. Indiana admitted.
16. American Bible Society.
16. Colonization Society.
16. Savings Banks.
16. First Protective Tariff.
17. **Monroe**, President.
17. Internal improvements.
17. Mississippi admitted.
18. Illinois admitted.
19. Alabama admitted.
19. First steamer crosses the Atlantic.
19. Florida acquired.
20. Maine admitted.
21. Missouri Compromise.
24. Lafayette revisits America.
25. Erie Canal completed.
25. **Adams**, President.
25. American Tract Society.
26. Anti-Masonic excitement.
27. The first railroad.
28. American Peace Society.
29. **Jackson**, President.
29. Rotation in office.
32. Hayne and Webster debate.
32. Nullification.
32. First Asylum for the Blind.
32. Asiatic cholera.
33. Reapers and Mowers.
35. Seminole War.
36. Arkansas admitted.
37. Michigan admitted.
37. **Van Buren**, President.
37. The panic.
40. Sub-Treasury Bill.
41. **Harrison and**
41. Anti-Mormon excitement.
42. Treaty of Washington.
42. Antarctic continent.
44. The first Telephone.
44. The Free Soil.
45. Florida admitted.
45. Texas annexed.
45. **Polk**, President.
45. Texas admitted.
46. War
46. Iowa admitted.
46. Sewing
48. Wisconsin.
48. Gold
49.

- 6.** French coast blockaded.
8. Orders in Council.
20. George IV.
30. William IV.
37. Victoria.

dent.

54. Kansas-Nebraska Bill.**56.** The Republican Party.**57.** Buchanan, President.**58.** Minnesota admitted.**59.** Oregon admitted.**59.** John Brown Raid.**59.** Petroleum business.**60.** Secession.**61.** Kansas admitted.**61.** Lincoln, President.**61.** The Rebellion.**61.** Sumter and Bull Run.**62.** Fair Oaks, Antietam, Fredericksburg.**62.** Donelson and Shiloh.**62.** Homestead Law.**63.** Abolition of Slavery.**63.** Chancellorsville, Gettysburg.**63.** Vicksburg, Chickamauga and Chattanooga.**63.** Taylor and Filmore, Presidents.**63.** West Virginia admitted.**64.** Wilderness, Spotsylvania, Cold Harbor, Petersburg.**64.** March to the Sea.**64.** Nevada admitted.**65.** Surrender of Lee and Johnston.**54.** Treaty with Japan.**58.** Mutiny in the East India Army.**65.** Fenian trouble in Ireland.**68.** Passage of the Reform Bill.**65.** Assassination of Lincoln.**65.** Johnson, President.**66.** Atlantic Cable.**67.** Alaska purchased.**67.** Nebraska admitted.**68.** The President impeached.**68.** Treaty with China.**69.** Grant, President.**69.** Pacific Railroad completed.**70.** Signal Service Bureau organized.**70.** Reconstruction completed.**71.** Burning of Chicago.**72.** Boston Fire.**72.** Alabama Claims adjusted.**72.** Credit Mobilier Investigation.**73.** The Money Panic.**74.** Patrons of Husbandry and Sovereigns of Industry.**75.** Political and social troubles in the South.**75.** Specie Resumption Act.**75.** Colorado admitted.**76.** The National Centennial.**77.** Hayes, President.**77.** Railroad Riots.

A BRIEF HISTORY OF THE AMERICAN PEOPLE.

PERIOD I.

ABORIGINAL TIMES.

TO THE DISCOVERY OF AMERICA.

1492.

[AUTHORITIES AND REFERENCES.—Bancroft's History of the United States; Graham's History United States; Squier and Davis's "Ancient Monuments;" Baldwin's "Ancient America;" Foster's "Prehistoric Races of America;" Jones's "Mound-Builders of Tennessee;" Schoolcraft's "History and Condition of the Indian Tribes;" Anderson's "Discovery of America by the Northmen;" Cooper's "Leatherstocking Tales;" Mathews's "Behemoth, a Legend of the Mound-Builders;" Longfellow's "Hiawatha;" Whittier's "Mogg Megone" and "Bridal of Pennacook;" Lowell's "Chippewa Legend."]

CHAPTER I.

MOUND-BUILDERS, INDIANS, AND NORTHMEN.

1. *The first inhabitants* of America are unknown. They were probably people from Asia. We do not know when, how, or why they came, though we can think of several ways by which they might have come.

2. *The Mound-Builders* is the name given to a race long since passed away, that erected earthworks for defensive, religious, and funeral purposes in the Mississippi Valley, from the Lakes to the Gulf. The largest trees are found growing upon these mounds, and the Indians have

no traditions of their origin. At Marietta, Ohio, is a mound bearing a tree eight hundred years old. These mounds consist of embankments, ditches, and heaps of earth, indicating considerable knowledge of military science. The embankments often have the outline of gigantic men and animals. It is said there are ten thousand of these works in Ohio alone. In Mexico and Peru are found still more



HOPETON WORKS IN OHIO.

wonderful remains. They consist of earthworks, ruined temples, idols, bridges, aqueducts, and paved roads. The Mound-Builders dwelt in cities, wove cotton, worked metals, and had regular trades and systematic governments.

3. *The Indians* followed the Mound-Builders as masters of the continent. We do not know why the latter left. They were probably enticed away by the more pleasant climate of the South, or were driven thither by the less civilized but more powerful tribes of the North. Having no written history, the Indians can give no reliable account

of their origin and progress. They nearly all belonged to two great families, the Algonquins and the Iroquois.

4. *In person* the Indians were copper-colored, and had straight black hair and high cheek bones. They had no beard, and commonly cut off their hair except one lock called the "scalp-lock." They were not equal to Europeans in bodily strength, but they had wonderful endurance. They were very light of foot, and their best racers could run eighty miles a day.



GRADED WAY IN OHIO.

They used skins as clothing, which they prepared by smoking instead of tanning. When white men came they obtained blankets, which they decorated with feathers, beads, shells, and trinkets. In summer they wore but little clothing, and the early settlers said it was hard to fight with an Indian, because there was "nothing to hold on by except his hair, and not much of that."

5. *Their domestic life* was peculiar. The Indian regarded all labor as degrading. He therefore compelled

his squaw to build the wigwam, cut the wood, and carry the burdens. While he was on the hunt or spending a lazy life in fishing, she cleared the bushes away, scratched the ground with a crooked stick, and cultivated the simple crop of corn and pumpkins with a hoe made of a clam-shell.

The wigwams were made by fixing poles in the ground, bringing them together at the top, and covering them with bark of trees or mats made of rushes. Mats on the earthen floor, or the skins of wild animals, formed their beds. The fire was kindled in the center, and the smoke escaped at the sides and top.

The inmates had neither chair nor stool, but sat on the ground with their elbows on their knees. They had no domestic animals or beasts of burden. Their domestic utensils were of wood or stone, and fire was produced by continued friction. They made stone axes and arrow-heads; and these are often found in the ground to this day. Iron was unknown to them. Their most ingenious inventions were the birch-canoe and the snow-shoe. The canoes were sometimes thirty feet long, and would carry a dozen Indians. An Indian could travel forty miles a day upon snow-shoes, and could overtake the deer and moose, whose pointed hoofs cut through the snow. These shoes are still much used in Canada.

6. The *education* of the Indian consisted of muscular exercises, and such restraints as would accustom him to endure hunger and fatigue. There were long fastings, races on foot, trials of strength, and contests with the bow and arrow. It was a purely physical training. In some tribes the youth were instructed by the old men in the history and institutions of their people. They knew nothing of the books, writing, and sciences of civilized life.

7. *Their government* consisted of a council of the chiefs and all those warriors who had killed an enemy in battle. These, sitting in a half circle, deliberated with great solemnity of manner on the making of peace or war,

the disposal of prisoners, and the management of the chase. The professed orators engaged in long debates, and often the sound of true eloquence was heard. Treaties were ratified by smoking the pipe of peace, and records were kept by strings of sea-shells.

8. *War* was thought to be a glorious occupation, and the tribes were nearly always engaged in it. The war-dance always preceded the opening of hostilities. A painted post was set in the ground, and the warriors formed a circle around it. The chief stepped into the open space, chanting the deeds of himself and his fathers, and striking the post as though it were an enemy. The warriors would follow, one by one, making the forest roar with their yells. This was always at night. In the morning they laid aside their ornaments, and crept quietly through the forest to the place of attack.

The expeditions were conducted by small parties whose object was to surprise the enemy, kill as many as possible, and return with their scalps. They made rapid advances and retreats, covering their trail to deceive the enemy. Their greatest warriors were incapable of any well-planned campaign or far-reaching policy, and their success was mainly owing to their silent approaches, patient watchings, and cunning stratagems. They thought it honorable to kill an unarmed enemy, and praised treachery and deceit. To fight a pitched battle was evidence of rashness or want of skill. They were very brave, but saw no shame in running away when there was no chance of success.

9. The *character* of the Indian was a strange mixture of good and bad qualities. He was faithful in friendship, and strongly susceptible to kindness. But as an enemy he was cruel and treacherous. "The very words tomahawk, scalping-knife, and torture-scaffold fill the fancy with dire images; and to say 'as savage as an Iroquois warrior' is to exhaust the power of simile."

The Indians had no forethought, and were satisfied if they had plenty to-day, although starvation threatened them

to-morrow. They showed great firmness under torture, and thought it unmanly to manifest emotion or pain. They were usually without a sense of modesty, and followed the suggestions of the baser propensities. They had no delicate moral principle, and their religion was full of superstitious notions and without much spirituality

10. *The population* of the United States east of the Mississippi River, at the time of the earliest white settlements, did not exceed two hundred thousand. The Indians have probably never been a very numerous race, and when first visited by Europeans they were fast diminishing in number from war and disease. This decrease has continued since their contact with white men; and they will finally either embrace civilized life, to which they have always been opposed, or else disappear from the earth.

11. *The Northmen*, who dwelt in Sweden, Norway, and Iceland, claimed to have been the original discoverers of America. According to their tradition the continent was first seen about the year 1000 by one of their seakings, Erickson by name, whom a tempest had driven away from the coast of Greenland. They claimed to have made settlements on the Atlantic coast, and to have sailed southward as far as Florida. It is probable that these traditions are true; but no permanent settlement was made, the discovery was not considered of any importance, and was not known to the rest of Europe; the route was lost, and even the existence of the continent was forgotten.

REVIEW.

The first inhabitants of America are unknown.—There are many remains of the Mound-Builders.—The Indians came next.—Their appearance.—Their domestic life.—Their two chief inventions.—Their education.—Their government.—Their opinion of war.—Their manner of conducting campaigns.—Their character.—Indian population at the time of Columbus.—The Northmen.

TABLE OF CONTEMPORARY EVENTS IN
EUROPEAN HISTORY.

The five hundred years immediately preceding the discovery of America are known in history as *the Middle Ages*. It was a period in which the religious unity of Europe produced the great tidal waves of the Crusades. Peter, the hermit of Picardy, kindled a flame of military and religious zeal which burned two hundred years throughout the continent. Later than this, old institutions gave way before new opinions, the feudal system vanished, and tendencies which had long lain in the germ sprung forth into activity. The art of printing came to diffuse a general enlightenment, and the revival of ancient learning greatly stimulated European genius. The discovery of a continent hitherto unknown, gave a new direction and opened a new field of unlimited scope to the activities of the age.

During all this time *America*, as we have seen, was a wilderness inhabited only by the vanishing Mound Builders, and roamed over by wild Indian tribes. The continent was reserved for the future, and was yet in its pre-historic period.

1000. The French language began to be written. Manufacture of paper from rags introduced into Europe by the Arabs.

1001. Erickson, the Iclander, reached Labrador and explored the coast as far as Rhode Island.

1025. The Musical Scale invented by Guido Aretino, an Italian.

1066. William the Conqueror, a Norman, ascended the English throne.

1095. Peter the Hermit preached the first Crusade.

1120. Scholastic Philosophy attained its highest point by the teachings of Peter Abelard, of France.

1137. The Pandects (the collection of Roman laws made by order of Justinian) discovered at Amalfi. It

became the foundation of modern law in all civilized nations.

1204. The Spanish Inquisition established.

1215. The Magna Charta, which secured important rights to Englishmen.

1260. Glass mirrors, magnifying glasses, and spectacles invented.

1272. The last of the Crusades.

1302. The Mariner's Compass introduced into Europe.

1307. Founding of the Swiss Cantons.

1347. A company of Norsemen in America.

1356. Mandeville wrote the first English book.

1441. Death of John VanEyck, the inventor of oil-painting.

1450. Printing by movable types invented in Germany by Guttenberg.

1479. The marriage of Ferdinand and Isabella united the kingdoms of Castile and Arragon.

PERIOD II.

DISCOVERIES AND EXPLORATIONS.

FROM THE DISCOVERY OF AMERICA TO THE FOUNDING
OF THE FIRST ENGLISH COLONY.

1492-1607.

[AUTHORITIES AND REFERENCES.—Bancroft's and Grahame's Histories United States.—Parkman's "Pioneers of France in the New World."—Irving's "Life of Columbus."—Parkman's "Discovery of the Great West."—Hakluyt's "Voyages touching the Discovery of America."—Simms's "Damsel of Darien" (Balboa), "Vasconcelos" (De Soto) and "The Lily and the Totem."]

CHAPTER I.

STORY OF THE GREAT DISCOVERY.

1. *Modern History* begins with the year 1500. It was a time of great changes in Europe. Modern civilization was just beginning its development. The darkness of the Middle Ages was passing away, and the Revival of Learning was about to free the human mind from the ignorance of the times. The art of printing had just been discovered, and the Protestant Reformation was about to break up the feudal and religious systems of Europe.

2. *The Discovery of America* occurred at this time. A new field for adventure and colonization was thus opened to the restless spirits of the Old World, who were ready to occupy it.

3. The *map of the world* at that time was exceedingly imperfect. Only a portion of the African coast had been explored; Asia and northern Europe had no well defined limits; and America and Australia were unknown.

Mariners did not venture far from land, and the unexplored regions were supposed by the superstitious sailors to abound in whirlpools, headless men, horrible serpents, hippogriffs, and other monsters.

The vessels were small and clumsily constructed, and, as they sailed for trade and not for exploration, they coasted timidly along the shore. But little interest was taken in geographical discovery.



THE WORLD AS KNOWN BEFORE COLUMBUS.

4. The *shape of the earth* was not known by most persons to be round. They thought it was a flat surface with the ocean lying like a great river around it. They did not think to ask what was beyond. But a few scientific and thoughtful men believed the earth to be a sphere, and two or three ventured the opinion that Asia could be reached by sailing westward. The wildest speculation never dreamed that between the western coast of Europe and the eastern shore of Asia there was a mighty continent

three thousand miles wide and ten thousand long, and peopled by a new race of men.

5. *The spirit of exploration* prevailed in western Europe. The monarchs of Portugal, avoiding the conflicts of states in European wars, chose the sea as the field of their enterprise. Under their patronage the vessels no longer coasted timidly along the shore but sailed abroad on the Atlantic. They discovered the Cape Verd islands and the more distant Azores, lying six hundred miles from the shore of the continent. These became waymarks on the ocean route to the New World.

6. The great *problem of the age*, during the latter half of the fifteenth century, was to find a nearer route to Asia. Commerce with that country was carried on by way of the Red Sea, the Isthmus of Suez, and the Mediterranean Sea. Bartholomew Diaz and De Gama had not yet sailed around the Cape of Good Hope. India and China had long been celebrated for their wealth. Their silks and shawls, their spices and fragrant woods, their pearls and ivory, their diamonds and jewels, made them a wonder-land whose trade was very valuable to Europe.

7. No sailor was brave enough to undertake the *African route*. That continent extended to an unknown distance southward, and the fancy of the people filled the South Sea with numerous terrors,—pools of fire, boiling whirlpools, and man-eating monsters.

8. *Toscanelli* was the name of an eminent geographer living at Florence. He knew the earth was a sphere, and wrote a letter to Portugal recommending a voyage westward to reach Asia.

9. As early as 1356 the English traveler, *Sir John Mandeville*, had declared in the first English book ever written, that when traveling northward he had seen the north star rise in the heavens, and that when going south the antarctic constellations came into view. He said the earth was a sphere, and that it was possible and practicable for a sailor to reach Asia by a western voyage.

10. **Christopher Columbus**, a native of Genoa, had been a sailor from boyhood. During all his life he was



COLUMBUS.

either making voyages or else drawing charts. He was a man of originality and genius, and reflected much on the proposed route to Asia. The world was then thought to be only about eight thousand miles in circumference, and Columbus saw that if this was correct, the distance westward to the shores of Asia could not exceed four thousand miles.

But for this lucky mistake Columbus would never have been the discoverer of America.

The mariner's compass, which was then in continual use, and the astrolabe, a rude kind of quadrant, were the instruments which made the navigation of pathless oceans possible. Columbus therefore thought the voyage could be made. He regarded himself as divinely chosen to open the new route to the opulent East, and to carry the blessings of Christianity to the people residing there.

11. Some **direct evidence**, as well as his theories, greatly interested him. His brother-in-law had seen a piece of strangely carved wood that had been washed on the shores of Portugal by a westerly storm. An old sailor had picked up the paddle of a canoe a thousand miles west of Europe. Strange plants, a canoe, and the bodies of two men very different in appearance from Europeans, had been washed from the westward to the shore of the Azores. These things, together with an encouraging letter from Toscanelli, so far confirmed him that he resolved to act.

12. **Aid** could only be obtained from the government. Columbus was a poor man and had no ships of his own. He first tried his countrymen, the Genoese, then the repub-

lic of Venice, and then the king of Portugal. He next turned to Spain. He had now become so poor that he was obliged to beg bread for himself and his little son, and to borrow suitable clothes to wear in his interview with the king. Ferdinand was engaged in a great war, and had no time to listen to a poor sailor whom every one laughed at. The very children mocked him as he passed in the streets, and put their fingers to their heads in ridicule. But he watched and waited.

13. *Success* came at last. Eighteen years had now passed since he conceived his great design, seven of which were spent waiting for the answer of Ferdinand. Saddened by his continual failures, he was leaving Spain, begging a little food at convent doors, and resolving to apply



ISABELLA.

to the king of France. At a lonely mountain pass he was overtaken by a messenger from the queen, Isabella, asking him to return to the capital. Urged by a desire to spread the Catholic faith throughout the world, and to see Spain the mistress of lands in Asia, the queen had changed her mind. To the cold objections of Ferdinand she nobly answered, "I undertake the enterprise for my crown of Castile, and will pledge my jewels to raise the necessary

funds." Thus the perseverance of one man and the enterprise of one woman triumphed over the ignorance and bigotry of the age.

14. *Preparations* began at once. The sacrifices of Isabella were not required. By a draft on the treasury for twenty thousand dollars, equal to six times that amount at the present day, three small vessels were equipped, and a crew of ninety men secured. These men were compelled

to embark on the expedition. They were full of fear, and very few had any faith in the theories of their leader or shared in his enthusiasm.

15. *The voyage* began Aug. 3, 1492, and the little fleet proceeded to the Canaries. On leaving them, Columbus sailed steadily westward for many days. The sailors became despairing and mutinous. The leader calmed their fears as well as he could, and exercised great patience with them. They even talked of throwing him overboard and returning to Spain. At length he promised them that if they did not see land within three days he would turn back. That very day the sailors were cheered by signs of approaching land. Flocks of land birds were seen overhead, singing their forest songs, sea weeds and tunny fish, seldom found far from shore, floated around the vessels; a cane, freshly cut, and a branch of red berries, were picked up, and the water was growing shallower. On the third evening at ten o'clock a light was seen glimmering across the water.

16. When the morning of *October 12, 1492*, dawned upon Columbus and his fleet, land was before them. There were gay flowers, strange trees, and tropical fruits. The shore was lined with copper-colored people who looked with wonder at the Spanish ships. They believed the strangers had come down from Heaven. Columbus landed, carrying the standard of Spain, kissed the earth, and with appropriate religious ceremonies took possession of the land in the name of Ferdinand and Isabella.

17. *The land* was found to be a small island, to which Columbus gave the name San Salvador,—the Spanish words for Holy Saviour. It is now usually called Cat Island. Columbus did not doubt that he had discovered one of the seven thousand four hundred and forty islands which Toscanelli had declared to lie in the ocean east of Asia. As he supposed the people belonged to the Indies, he called them Indians.

18. *Three other voyages* were made by Columbus. In one of these he reached the mainland of South America. He never dreamed that he had discovered a new continent, and died supposing that he had opened the new route to Asia. His later years were saddened by persecution and neglect, and his labors and character were not appreciated till subsequent times.

19. The *naming of the New World* was an accident. An Italian merchant named Americus Vespuccius visited the coast of Brazil, and wrote a fine description of the countries he had seen. These writings were eagerly read, and, being about the first published accounts of the new discoveries, a German geographer suggested that the land be called "Americi Terra," or the land discovered by Americus. Vespuccius was the friend of Columbus, and is now thought to have been innocent of any design to rob him of his honors. He probably never knew that his name had been given to the new lands, and both he and Columbus were certainly dead before the name became in general use, or was applied to the entire country.

CHAPTER II.

EXPLORATION AND CLAIMS.

20. *To the West!* was the cry of European navigators when Columbus brought the news of his discoveries. The new lands were represented as abounding in precious minerals, delicious fruits, and strange animals. Stories were told of diamonds as big as robin's eggs, and of mountains where gems could be seen glittering among the rocks. It became at once the fashion to enter on western exploration. Those who went now were not unwilling seamen, but were mostly those adventurous men whom the peace at home had thrown out of their regular

employment, warfare. They were animated by high hopes of wealth and fame. The era of exploration had come.

21. The *four powers* which took an active part in exploring North America were Spain, England, France, and Holland.

THE SPANISH.

22. Under *Columbus* the Spaniards planted a colony in the West Indies, from which they sent out expeditions to the mainland.

23. Under *Vespucius* they reached the eastern coast of South America. He first announced the fact that the new lands were not a part of India, but were in reality a new continent.

24. They colonized Central America by an expedition under *Balboa*, and discovered the Pacific Ocean at the isthmus of Panama. The leader waded into the water, drawing his sword after the pompous fashion of Spanish explorers, and declared that the ocean and all the lands washed by it should be Spanish property forever.

25. Under *Ponce de Leon* they explored the coast of Florida for many leagues.

26. They invaded and conquered, under *Cortez*, the wealthy empire of Mexico.

27. They sent an expedition under *Magellan* around South America and across the Pacific and Indian Oceans. This was the first circumnavigation of the globe.

28. They explored the Pacific coast, under *Cabrillo*, as far north as Oregon.

29. They sent a finely equipped force of six hundred, under *De Soto*, through the Southern States, and discovered the Mississippi River. This little army fought a severe battle with the natives, endured incredible hardships, and buried their leader in the river they had discovered.

30. They founded *St. Augustine*, the oldest city in the United States.

THE ENGLISH.

31. The English became the earliest rivals of Spain in American exploration. *John and Sebastian Cabot*, father and son, sailed under a commission from the King. They explored the coast from Gulf St. Lawrence to Cape Hatteras. This was fourteen months before Columbus touched on the mainland of South America. North America, therefore, belonged to the English by what was called the right of discovery.

32. Out of respect for a decree of the Pope of Rome, arbitrarily granting to Spain all the lands on the western shore of the Atlantic, the Catholic monarchs of England engaged no more in western exploration for three fourths of a century. Then *Martin Frobisher* obtained a commission, with the idea of reaching the Indies by sailing around America to the north. He attained a higher latitude on the Atlantic coast than had ever been reached before.

33. The great sea captain and piratical commander, *Sir Francis Drake*, explored the Pacific coast and returned homeward by way of the Cape of Good Hope.

34. *Sir Walter Raleigh*, a favorite at the court of the English Queen, obtained a grant of a large body of land and attempted colonization.

35. *The first expedition* sent by him explored Roanoke Island and the adjacent sounds, and gave so favorable an account of the country that Raleigh named it in honor of the Queen, Virginia.

36. *His second party* made a settlement and were kindly received by the natives. But because a silver cup had been lost or stolen, the commander burned an Indian village and the corn of the inhabitants. Soon after, a party of Englishmen, having met a chief and his associates in a council, fell upon them and put them to death. This was not only a treacherous, but a very unwise act. The Indians withdrew their supplies, and the colonists, becom-

ing dissatisfied, returned to England. They took with them three products of America,—corn, potatoes and tobacco.

37. *His third attempt* was to found an agricultural colony in Virginia. He saw that he must send not adventurers but families to America, who would make it their possession and home. The party founded the city of Raleigh, but failed in making a permanent settlement. Unlike their predecessors, they awaited death in the land of their adoption. "If America had no English towns it soon had English graves." Every member of the colony perished or was adopted by Indian tribes.

THE FRENCH.

38. The French navigators could not remain quietly at home with the glories of western exploration ringing in their ears.

39. Under *Verrazzani* they explored the coast from Carolina to Nova Scotia. They supposed this land had never been seen by white men, but we know that Cabot had discovered it twenty-five years before. They named the country New France. Verrazzani wrote to the king of France the earliest description of the Atlantic coast now extant.

40. *Cartier*, in search of the Northern Passage, explored the coast of Newfoundland and named the St. Lawrence.

41. Under *De Monts* they made good their claim to Canada and the St. Lawrence by establishing a permanent settlement at Port Royal, Nova Scotia.

42. *Champlain* founded the City of Quebec as a trading post. He has been termed the father of New France.

THE DUTCH.

43. The Dutch, still trying to find a Northwestern Passage, made a single expedition under *Henry Hudson*, who discovered and explored the Hudson River, and trav-

ersed the coast northward to Hudson Bay. He named the country New Netherlands.

44. *The objects of these explorations* were various. The Spaniards went for gold and precious stones; the Portuguese to capture Indians and reduce them to slavery; the French for the sake of fishing; and the English and Dutch to find a passage to India. Even the learned supposed for a long time that the new lands were a series of islands called "Florida," "Hispaniola," and "America." The geographers thought China and Japan lay just west of these islands, and they eagerly sought a passage thence.

45. *The claims of territory* resulting from these explorations were very conflicting. The Spaniards wished to own all the lands they had seen or sailed near. So did the English. So did the French. So did the Dutch. But none of them were willing to stay there and keep possession. Finally the Spanish made a beginning at St. Augustine, and the French at Port Royal. The right of discovery was then regarded as a just title to ownership; and the conflicting claims led to endless trouble in after years, and finally brought on a contest of arms for the possession of the continent.

46. *The Spanish claimed* nearly all of the United States under the name of Florida, and all the Pacific coast under the name of New Mexico.

47. *The English claimed* the coast from Cape Fear to Halifax, and the territory west of it to the Pacific.

48. *The French claimed* Canada and the whole of the Mississippi Valley.

49. *The Dutch claimed* the territory between the Connecticut and Delaware Rivers.

50. We shall now study the settlements made on this contested territory, the conflicts of authority, and the development of a great nation.

R E V I E W.

CHAPTER I.

The beginning of modern history.—An incomplete map of the world.—Known to be a sphere but thought to be small.—The great problem.—Mandeville first suggests the idea.—Toscanelli confirms it.—Columbus resolves to prove it.—He finds much to confirm his theory.—And spends eighteen years searching for a patron.—He sails and finds land.—And makes three other voyages.—The new lands called America.

CHAPTER II.

The fever for western exploration.—Balboa sees the Pacific.—Vespucius visits Brazil.—Cortez in Mexico.—Magellan circumnavigates the globe.—Cabrillo first visits Oregon.—De Soto explores the Southern States.—The Cabots first explore the Atlantic coast.—Frobisher visits Labrador.—Drake explores the Pacific.—Raleigh makes three attempts to found a colony in Virginia.—Verrazzani visits New France.—Cartier names the St. Lawrence.—De Monts plants a colony at Port Royal.—Champlain founds Quebec.—Hudson discovers the Hudson River.—The object of the explorations.—The conflicting claims.

TABLE OF CONTEMPORARY EVENTS IN
EUROPEAN HISTORY.

1492–1607.

This period in Europe was *a time of storms*. Struggles of vast power, religious, civil, and intellectual, shook the continent. It was the stormy dawn of Modern Times. The temporal power of the Papacy was raised to the summit of its authority by the conquests of warlike popes. The four great monarchies of England, France, Spain, and Germany, having recovered from feudal strifes, stood in solid form and power under rulers of surpassing ability. The wonderful awakening of intelligence in the preceding period passed over into this to stir the mind of Europe in every class of society, and in every department of thought. The Protestant Reformation, at first a religious dispute, swept over the continent in a whirlwind of opinion, and

soon absorbed within itself all other issues, political, social, and moral, of the age.

America, as we have seen, became the theater upon which the active spirits of an adventurous age played their parts in quest of wealth, knowledge or dominion.

1492. Ferdinand conquered the Moors, who for 800 years had held the fairest portions of Spain.

1517. Martin Luther began the Protestant Reformation by his opposition to papal indulgences.

1520. Raphael and Michael Angelo flourished in Italy.

1524. The Peasants' War in Germany. The revolt suppressed with terrible slaughter.

1529. The Reformers called Protestants because they *protested* against the decrees of the Diet of Spire.

1530. The Augsburg Confession drawn up by Melancthon, and approved by Luther, as the creed of the German Protestants.

1532. True theory of the solar system taught by Copernicus.

1534. The order of Jesuits founded by Ignatius Loyola, with six other students of the University of Paris.

1545. Flourishing period of the Dutch linen, and the Spanish silken and woolen, manufactures.

1550. Era of the Puritans in England. Persecution of English Protestants. Ridley and Latimer burned at the stake.

1555. The Revival of Learning promoted by the translation and study of the Bible.

1558. The first English newspaper (the English Mercury) by Lord Burleigh.

1572. Massacre of St. Bartholomew, in which 70,000 French Protestants were murdered.

1579. The East India Company established.

1581. Independence of the Dutch Republic declared.

1582. Reformation of the Calendar—called the New Style—introduced into Catholic countries by a papal decree, October 5 being reckoned October 15.

1588. The "Invincible Armada" defeated in the English channel by Sir Francis Drake.
1598. Edict of Nantes restored religious liberty to the Protestants of France.
1600. During the latter half of the century Europe was scourged by desolating wars between the old Catholicism and the young Protestantism.
1601. Great commercial companies incorporated for trading with, settling, and governing distant lands became very popular with the nations of western Europe.
1605. Discovery of the Gunpowder Plot for blowing up the English Houses of Parliament.

PERIOD III.

COLONIAL TIMES.

FROM THE FOUNDING OF THE FIRST ENGLISH COLONY
TO THE DECLARATION OF INDEPENDENCE.

1607-1776

[AUTHORITIES AND REFERENCES. — Bancroft's, Graham's and Hildreth's Histories of United States. — Palfrey's "New England." — Upham's "History of Witchcraft." — Drake's "Indian Wars." — Elliott's "New England." — Mather's "Magnalia." — Sparks' "American Biography." — Jefferson's "Notes on Virginia." — Banvard's "Plymouth and the Pilgrims." — Parton's "Franklin." — Wirt's "Patrick Henry." — Longfellow's "John Endicott," "Giles Corey," "Evangeline," and "Courtship of Miles Standish." — Mrs. Heman's "Landing of the Pilgrims."]

CHAPTER I.

COLONIAL SETTLEMENTS.

1. At the close of the former period *the condition of America* was nearly the same as when Columbus found it. It was still almost an unbroken wilderness. The few settlements which had existed were of a commercial and transient character, and it had not yet entered the European mind that here was to be the seat of great states. But now that gigantic commercial corporations had come into vogue, with powers of colonization and government, the work of settlement was ready to begin. The state-builders of the new world were now to enter on their labors.

2. *April 10, 1606*, was an important day for the western continent. On that day the king of England issued two great patents to men of that country, authorizing them to possess and colonize most of that portion of North America lying between the thirty-fourth and forty-fifth degrees of latitude, and extending from ocean to ocean.

3. *The London Company* was an association of nobles, gentlemen, and merchants residing in London. To it was granted the territory lying between the thirty-fourth and thirty-eighth degrees—from Cape Fear to the Potomac.

4. *The Plymouth Company* was composed of corresponding classes at Plymouth, in the west of England. It received the exclusive right to plant colonies between the forty-first and forty-fifth degrees—from New York City to Halifax. By this allotment a strip of land three degrees wide lay between the territories of the companies from which both were excluded. These grants led to the permanent settlement of the country.

5. By the *terms of the patents* the affairs of the companies were to be managed by a Superior Council residing in England, and an Inferior Council residing in the colony. The members of both Councils were appointed and dismissed at the pleasure of the king. All law-making authority was also finally vested in the monarch, and not a single principle of self-government was admitted. The companies were bound to pay to the king one fifth of all the gold and one fifteenth of all the silver found within the territory. The colonists were required to hold all property in common for five years, and were to retain all the rights and privileges of Englishmen.

VIRGINIA, 1607.

6. *The first settlement* was made by order of the London Company. One hundred and five men without families reached Chesapeake Bay and coasted along the southern shore till they came to the mouth of a broad and beautiful river. They proceeded up this stream about fifty miles, moored their vessels, and in the forest laid off a town. The stream was called James River, and the town Jamestown, in honor of their king. This was one hundred and ten years after Cabot had sailed along that coast. This length of time had been required to plant English civilization among the forests of America.

7. *The colonists* were not the kind of men to found a new State. They were idle and wasteful. There were only twelve common laborers, six masons and blacksmiths, and four carpenters. There was a long list of forty-eight "useless gentlemen," and several pardoned criminals. They regarded themselves as mere sojourners, expecting to dig gold, trade with the Indians, get wealth, and return home. Being mere adventurers, they planted nothing the first year, and the provisions they brought were soon consumed. By autumn, famine and the diseases of a hot, moist climate had swept away half their number.

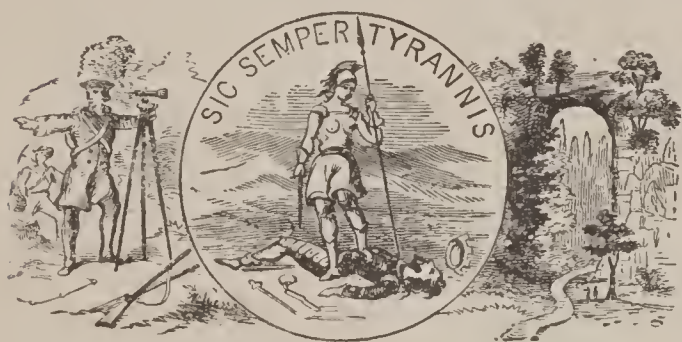
8. *Captain John Smith*, a very brave and able man was the president of the colony for several years. Though less than thirty years of age, his life was full of experience. Born in England; a soldier in Holland; a traveler in France, Italy, and Egypt; captured by the Turks and sold as a slave; sent to distant Tartary whence with an iron collar about his neck he escaped through the forests of Russia to Europe; thrown overboard at sea; he returned to England, restlessly joined the London Company, and was now to rescue a colony from destruction. He was the most noted man of early times in America.

9. *His labors* were incessant and generally successful. He cultivated the friendship of the Indians and tried to stimulate the indolent colonists. He spent the winters in exploring the shore and interior, and he made the first accurate map of the coast. In these expeditions he had many adventures with the Indians. He was greatly chagrined to find that in spite of his entreaties the company continued to send out gold-hunters, jewelers, engravers, adventurers, and "gentlemen," instead of mechanics and laborers.

10. *The love of gold* was the impulse which drew these people to America. As soon as spring came they began to stroll over the country in search of it, and the industry which Smith encouraged was laughed at. When some glittering sand was discovered on the banks of the

river the whole colony began to glow with excitement. A ship was loaded with this "fool's gold" and sent to England. Even the Indians laughed at men who would rather dig worthless sand than raise a crop of corn!

10. The *growth of the colony* was slow for many



SEAL OF VIRGINIA.

years. The reinforcements from England could do but little more than supply the loss from disease, famine, and Indian massacre. Two or three times the entire colony

was on the point of abandoning Jamestown and returning to England. Twice they had already taken passage with this view, but luckily met new colonists, with provisions, who induced them to return. At the end of twelve years not one in twenty of all those who had lived in the colony was alive.

11. After the gold fever had passed, the *productions* of the soil rapidly increased. Tobacco was now very popular but very scarce in England, and the colonists engaged extensively in its cultivation. It became, and for many years remained, their principal article of export. With it they paid for the goods brought to them from England. The huge forests of Virginia supplied large quantities of lumber, which was very welcome in the mother country. "One fir-tree will make the main mast for the greatest ship in England," wrote a colonist to his relative. Tar and pitch, deer skins, beaver pelts, and salted fish were exported in considerable quantities.

12. *The want of laborers* was severely felt for many a year. The Company induced many young men to join the colony who were to have a free passage, and food, clothing, and tools to work with, for one year. They were then to choose a master among the planters, whom they were to serve for seven years. They were called "bound

servants." This plan was not very successful. Englishmen did not like to deed away their freedom, and so the great want of the colony still continued.

13. **Black laborers** were first introduced into the colony in 1620. A Dutch ship trading in the East Indies stopped at Jamestown, and sold the planters twenty negroes as servants for life. They made good field-hands, and their number rapidly increased. The Council discouraged the importation of these people by placing a heavy tax on female slaves. But the demand for laborers was so pressing that even criminals and felons were liberated from English prisons and sent to America that they might be of some use. Many of these convicts became honest men when they had a chance to begin a new life in the young colony.

14. **The presence of women** was another want. Many of the young men were idle and unsettled and needed tidy wives to care for their homes. The Company, therefore, sent over one hundred and fifty young women as wives for the unmarried men. We are told that they were "maids of virtuous education, young, handsome and well recommended." Whoever took a wife in this way must pay the expense of her ocean passage—usually one hundred pounds of tobacco. It must have been an amusing sight to see the bachelors choosing wives at Jamestown. The result was that homes increased, the plantations flourished, and the colonists lost all desire to return to England.

15. **A written constitution** was soon given to the colony, which granted the privilege of electing a legislature, the right of petition, and of trial by jury. Power was given the legislature to veto any objectionable acts of the Company. Under this constitution the first legislative assembly of America met. Thus the people learned the important lessons of self-government.

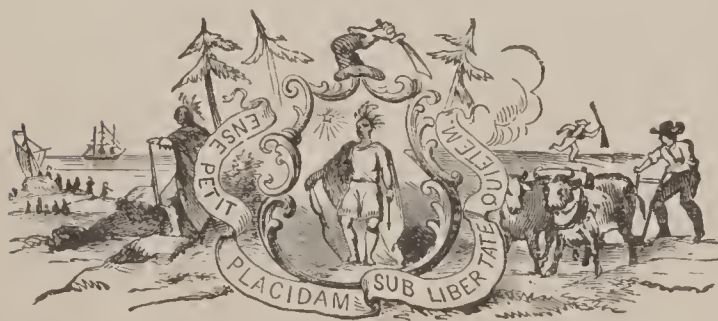
16. Two **Indian massacres** came near exterminating the growing colony. One day at noon the savages fell upon the settlements along the James River through a

distance of one hundred and forty miles, and an indiscriminate slaughter followed. Hundreds perished under their clubs and hatchets. The more distant plantations were entirely destroyed; but a friendly Indian having revealed the plot at Jamestown the night before, those settlements to which the news could be carried by the fleetest horses, prepared for the attack and were saved.

17. *The laws* of the colony were very strange and very severe, especially on religious matters. At one time it was the law that if a man was absent from church, without a good reason, even for a single Sunday, he must be on half allowance of food for one week; if he offended a second time, he must be whipped; if a third time, he was to suffer death. A woman who was an habitual scold might be "ducked" three times in running water. The usual punishments were whipping, sitting in the stocks, and standing at the church door with the names of their crimes pinned to their breasts. The Roman Catholics and the quiet Quakers were severely punished if they came into the colony. All these things were quite common in that period.

MASSACHUSETTS, 1620.

18. *The second colony* was planted within the territory of the Plymouth Company, though without its knowledge or consent, on the coast of Massachusetts, at Plymouth, by a company of Englishmen



SEAL OF MASSACHUSETTS.

who had been residing in Holland, where they had gone to obtain religious freedom, which had been denied them in England.

19. These people were called *Puritans*, and are known in history as the *Pilgrim Fathers*. Their

clothes were plain in color and cut. They were also called in derision "Roundheads." They were slow to quarrel, and never swore as was then the wicked fashion. They spoke slowly, discouraged mirth, and took life in solemn earnest. One hundred and two of these people came in a single ship, the Mayflower. They landed on a frozen coast in the middle of winter, and began to build houses, dividing themselves into nineteen families. Their sufferings were very great, and the first winter swept away half their number. Occasionally a ship arrived from England, bringing them articles of comfort and luxury. After some years their exports of dried fish, furs, and lumber, brought them whatever civilized life required.

20. A few years afterward *another company* of Puritans arrived from England. They made what they called a "short and speedy" voyage of forty-five days, and settled on the coast of Massachusetts at Salem. They came in summer and saw the shore in its floral beauty. Soon after, three hundred of the best Puritan families in England came over in seventeen ships. They were not adventurers and vagabonds, but educated, enterprising, and virtuous people, who came to secure religious freedom, and with no expectation of returning. Their first governor was a noble man, John Winthrop.

21. *Their sufferings* were scarcely inferior to those of their neighbors at Plymouth. It was the same old story of famine, disease, and suffering from cold. Many of the settlers had been delicately nurtured in their old homes, and could not endure the wintry blasts. "Sleet and snow drifted through the cracks of their board huts where enfeebled men and delicate women moaned out their lives." Before Christmas two hundred had perished; but there was no complaint nor despair.

22. *The Indians* gave them no trouble, though for a time the colonists were in great fear. One day an Indian came to the settlement, and, holding out his hands, exclaimed, "Welcome, Englishmen! welcome, Englishmen!"

A solemn treaty of friendship was made with them, which was faithfully kept for fifty years. This was the first display of justice and humanity toward the Indians made by any of the Europeans appearing on the American continent.

23. *The government* of the colony at first was democratic. The people elected their own officers, and a legislative body chosen by them made the laws. But after some years the right of suffrage was much restricted, and only church members could vote at the colonial elections. Thus a minority of one fourth made laws for a majority of three fourths. None but members of the church were eligible to offices of trust; taxes were levied for the support of the ministers of the gospel; and attendance on public worship and oaths of obedience to the magistrates were required by law.

24. During whole generations *religious matters* were subjects of public and private discussion. In England at that time religious intolerance was common. An established church was thought to be a powerful thing in a State, and difference of belief in religion a very great danger. The Puritans, therefore, having secured liberty of conscience for themselves, did not mean to give it to any one else, and kept strict watch that no one spoke disrespectfully of the church or disputed any of its doctrines. If any one thus transgressed he was arrested and admonished. If he did it a second time, he was banished from the colony.

25. The first man to speak against these practices, and in favor of religious freedom, was *Roger Williams*, a learned and very promising young minister of Salem. He taught his congregation that a magistrate had nothing to do with the consciences of the people, and that they should rule only in civil cases, as the collection of taxes, the support of equal rights, and the repression of crime.

He wrote a paper, declaring that the lands belonged to the Indians, and that the king of England had no right to

give them away without buying them. He also said that compulsory attendance of church service and forced taxation for the support of the ministry, were contrary to the gospel.

26. There was much excitement, and *his arrest* soon followed. Governor Winthrop, who was a very gentle Puritan, entreated him to desist. But Williams said he came to America to secure liberty of conscience, that every one else had the same right as himself, and that he must declare what he believed to be true.

He was condemned, and became an exile in the wild forest in the middle of winter, traveling through the snow for fourteen weeks, sleeping on the ground and in hollow logs, and living on parched corn and acorns. He made his way southward, and lived among the hospitable Indians. We shall hear of him again.

27. Soon after this a noted preacher named *Anne Hutchinson*, a clear-headed and powerful reasoner, desired the privilege of speaking in the weekly debates. The elders refused her, and said that women had no business in such assemblies.

She declared that ministers who deprived women of the gospel were Pharisees. She called meetings at her own house and elsewhere, spoke much in public, declared that every person has a right to interpret the Scriptures for himself, and argued with great fervor for full freedom of conscience.

The eloquence and ability of her argument gained many adherents. But she was declared unfit for the society of Christian people, and was banished from Massachusetts. With a company of her friends she joined the apostle of freedom, Roger Williams.

28. The *persecution of the Quakers* was another event of interest in the history of this religious commonwealth. When these good, but sometimes rather imprudent people came, there was a cry of alarm. Two women were searched for marks of witchcraft, their books were burned, and they were thrown into prison.

Soon after, eight others were banished, and a law was passed excluding Quakers from the colony. For the first violation the penalty was whipping, the loss of one ear, and banishment; for the second, the loss of the other ear; for the third, the tongue was to be bored through with a red-hot iron, and the victim hung.

Under this law, four Quakers, who came to preach against persecution, gave up their lives, and many others suffered banishment. But this savage intolerance was of short duration. The law was repealed, and the prisons were opened. It has always been thought strange that a people who fled to America to secure freedom in religious belief, should thus begin their career by intolerance and persecution.

But we should remember that the history of those times in Europe is full of wrong and violence, and that charity was not a popular grace. Since the colony was more of a religious than civil organization, heresy was considered worse than treason. We should be glad we live in better days.

29. At the end of about half a century *King Philip's War* broke out, and peace with the Indians was at an end. They saw in the increase of pale-faces the doom of their race. A new generation had come forward who longed for the hunting grounds of their fathers, and could not understand why the white men should possess them. The game was falling before the rifles of the strangers, and the fish was scooped from the rivers by English nets.

Soon blood was shed on both sides, and the Indian chief King Philip regretfully prepared for war. The contest lasted over a year, and was full of terror and blood. Nearly all the frontier settlements of New England were attacked and burned, and the inhabitants sank under the vengeful tomahawk.

30. The principal battle was called *the Swamp Fight*. The Indians collected all their warriors to the number of three thousand, with all their possessions, in a deep swamp, which they carefully fortified.

In this, as in nearly all the previous engagements, victory was with the colonists. A thousand warriors were killed and hundreds captured. The wounded and the old men, women and children, with all their goods, were consumed in the flames. The result of this contest was the subjugation of the Indians of New England.

31. But the darkest days were those of *Salem Witchcraft*, a remarkable delusion which spread through the colony. It was believed that the devil appeared to some people in the form of a black cat, and persuaded them to enter his service, and write their names in his big red book. Such persons had power to bewitch and injure others by magic arts.

This belief was then common in many civilized countries, and even among the learned. At Salem it prevailed like a panic. The wildest tales were believed. To express doubt in witchcraft was proof of being a witch. If the accused persons confessed that they were witches they were pardoned, but if they would not tell a lie even to save their lives, they were tortured and hanged.

Persons of the highest respectability, clergymen, magistrates, and the wife of the governor, were accused. One child, only five years old, lay chained in Salem jail awaiting trial. An old man, Giles Corey, was slowly pressed to death by heavy stones placed on his chest.

32. In about six months a *reaction of opinion* took place, but not till fifty-five persons had been tortured into confession; not till two hundred had lain chained in prison; not till twenty were hung, including one minister of the gospel.

The Puritans were very much ashamed of what they had done, though they had acted with entire honesty. One old judge used to keep a day of fasting and prayer every year to atone for the sins he had committed.

33. *The cause* of this strange outbreak of frenzy is now believed to have originated in the personal malice of a minister, Samuel Parris. He had a quarrel in his church

about the selection of a new minister, George Burroughs. Under the management of Parris and the celebrated Cotton Mather, minister of Boston, the superstitions of the people were turned against Burroughs and his party. He was hung; and every one of those accused, imprisoned, or hung, were in sympathy with him in the church quarrel.

In Scotland, four thousand had suffered death on the charge of witchcraft, and it is not very strange that men high in authority should cause twenty to be executed in Massachusetts.

NEW YORK, 1623.

34. *The third colony* was planted by the Dutch on Manhattan Island, where New York City now stands. It



SEAL OF NEW YORK.

did not occur to the English king when he granted the two great patents to the London and Plymouth Companies, that another nation might place a colony

on the neutral ground between them. This is just what happened. The colonists bought the island of the natives for twenty-four dollars—about one cent per acre—and built a fort at its southern extremity. They surrounded this with residences, and called the place New Amsterdam, and the colony New Netherlands.

35. At first the people who came were poor; but soon wealthy and influential men, called *Patroons*, were sent out by the Dutch West India Company. Each of these men had authority to found a colony of fifty persons, and to own a tract of land sixteen miles wide and extending into the interior as far as he chose. Each patroon thus became a little lord, who was responsible to the Company.

36. The population was chiefly honest, thrifty, whole-souled *Dutchmen*, though they were soon joined by

many French, Germans and English. They were slow and leisurely in their manners. They delighted in good eating and drinking, a fine story and hearty laughter.

They it was who introduced into this country many of our popular festivals,—“Santa Claus” or “St. Nicholas” at Christmas, and dinner parties at New Year. These were very different people from the Cavaliers in Virginia, and the Puritans in Massachusetts.



A DUTCHMAN OF THE OLDEN TIME.

37. For a long time friendly relations were sustained with *the Indians*. But finally, under the influence of Dutch rum, they committed several acts of violence. The governor, a cruel and unreasonable man, resolved upon a general destruction of the natives. A company of them one night was surrounded and murdered before they had time to take their arms.

Soon after, the red men in revenge burst upon the lonely settlements and killed all the inhabitants. The contest

thus became a succession of acts of retaliation and treachery performed by the opposing races. The people rightly charged all the bloodshed and horror to the headstrong passions of their governor.

38. *Peter Stuyvesant*, familiarly called "Headstrong Peter," was the last Dutch governor of New Netherlands. Under his government the colony was ably managed and defended against the Indians and the English. He was very arbitrary and despotic, and the people had but little voice in the government. The greater freedom enjoyed by the other colonists made them dissatisfied.

Finally an English fleet appeared before New Amsterdam and demanded its surrender. Disregarding the bluster of "Headstrong Peter," who had haughtily said that his authority was "by the appointment of God and the West India Company," the people welcomed the invaders, expecting to enjoy more freedom under English control.

39. Under the *English rule* the people did not gain as much as they expected; and the history of New York in colonial times is a long succession of contests and troubles with the royal governors, most of whom were obstinate and despotic men.

40. New York, like Salem, was visited by a fatal delusion known as *The Negro Plot*. Slavery was then permitted in the province, and the slaves were suspected of having caused several destructive fires which occurred. Some worthless women testified that the negroes had plotted to burn the city, kill all who opposed them, and set up a negro governor.

Freedom was offered to any slave who would reveal the plot. Scores rushed forward to tell their contradictory tales. The jails were filled, and over thirty accused negroes were hung or burned. Reason soon returned to the people. It was only a panic, and it became evident that *there was no plot at all*.

NEW HAMPSHIRE, 1629.

41. *The fourth colony* was originally a part of Massachusetts, and remained so during most of the colonial times. It was twice made a separate province, but was again placed under the care of Massachusetts to



SEAL OF NEW HAMPSHIRE.

secure protection from the hostile tribes of Indians. It was for a long time violently agitated by conflicting claims to the land. The people were courageous, hardy, and liberty-loving.

MARYLAND, 1634.

42. *The fifth colony* was founded by the Catholics of England under Lord Baltimore, whose name was Cecil Calvert. The object in coming was to secure religious liberty, denied them under the



SEAL OF MARYLAND.

Episcopalian rule in England. Not meeting a cordial reception from the Puritans in Massachusetts, Calvert led his people south to Chesapeake Bay.

43. *Their Charter* was the most liberal which had ever received the sanction of the British government. No taxes were to be collected without consent of the people. Two Indian arrows were to be sent every year in token of subjection, and one fifth of any gold and silver found in the borders of the colony was to be the property of the king.

Equality in religion was conceded to all, with the excep-

tion of those who denied the doctrine of the Trinity and the revelation of the Bible. The government was nearly a pure democracy. These liberal provisions were granted by the king as a special favor to Calvert who was his intimate friend.

44. *The population* rapidly increased. "Within six months it had advanced as much as Virginia had done in as many years." Here was an asylum for the oppressed consciences of England, and large numbers came. Puritans oppressed in Virginia, and Quakers persecuted in Massachusetts, found here a quiet home.

45. *Religious troubles* afterward arose, and constituted a large part of the colony's history. The Puritans became so numerous that they obtained control of the colonial legislature. One of their first acts was to disfranchise the Catholics, and deprive them of the protection of the laws. A more ungrateful piece of legislation can not be found in history.

War ensued between the Protestants and the Catholics. This strange contest between religions for political supremacy continued at intervals and with varying fortunes for more than a century.

46. Purely *political matters* claimed but little attention. The habits and occupations of the people were much like those of the Virginians. There were few large towns, and the people lived on plantations and raised tobacco.

For a long time there was a dispute between Maryland and Pennsylvania about their boundary line. But it was at last settled by the appointment of two surveyors, Mason and Dixon, who drew the boundary called "*Mason and Dixon's line.*" This line afterward became of great importance, because it divided the Slave States from the Free States.

CONNECTICUT, 1635.

47. The valley of the Connecticut was settled from Massachusetts. The *first company* was composed of sixty



SEAL OF CONNECTICUT.

men, women, and children, who made a journey on foot through the wilderness, guided by the compass and driving their flocks. The winter came on

early, and they reached their destination after intense suffering. Before spring came, they must have perished but for the milk of their cows. The country was found to be good, and settlements were made in several places.

48. Almost at its beginning the colony engaged in a desperate struggle — *The Pequod War*. It originated in a single murder committed by some young Indians. This met a bloody punishment from a company of militia.

An alliance of Indian tribes was prevented only by the intercessions of that noble man, Roger Williams. Embarking alone in a frail canoe, during a storm on the bay, he proceeded to the wigwam where the Pequod warriors were urging the alliance against the English. For three days and nights, at the imminent peril of his life, Williams resisted the arguments of the Pequods. His efforts were successful.

Soon after, the colonists surrounded the palisaded fort of the Pequods, surprised it, and set it on fire. The destruction was complete and awful. If the wretched Indian burst through the flames he met death by the sword or bullet. Six hundred men, women, and children, were roasted to death in a sickening heap! The Pequods were utterly destroyed.

49. *The government* was based upon a written constitution formed by a convention of the people, the first

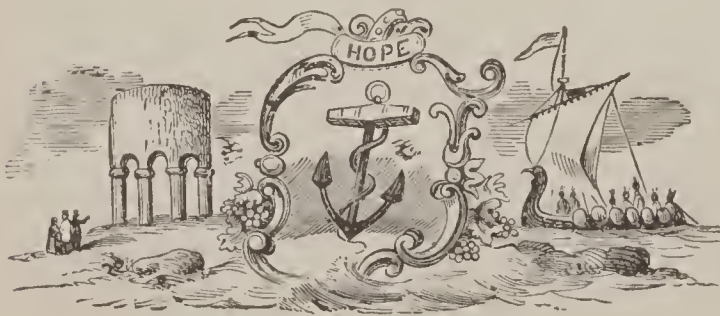
instance of the kind in history. It was one of the most liberal ever adopted. An oath of allegiance to the State was the only qualification of citizenship. The people made the laws and chose their officers, and all religions were allowed and respected.

This instrument was sent to England, and, to the surprise of every one, King Charles II signed it without the alteration of a letter. Thus, as though striving to outdo his father's favors to Calvert, he granted the most liberal and ample rights ever secured from an English monarch.

50. The *career of the colony* was one of nearly uninterrupted peace and prosperity. The little republic was a shining example of self government. The farmer sowed and reaped his fields in safety. The mechanic toiled in cheerful content, and the hum of the spinning wheel was mingled with the voice of song. Want was unknown, wealth was lightly esteemed, and crime was rare, among a people who cultivated intelligence and virtue.

RHODE ISLAND, 1636.

51. *The seventh colony* was founded by the exile from Massachusetts, Roger Williams. His stay with the Indians had greatly endeared him to them, and they regretted to part with him. With five companions he began a settlement at a place



SEAL OF RHODE ISLAND.

which, in order to express his confidence in the mercies of God, he called Providence. All the lands which he had bought of the Indians the generous founder gave away to the colonists who flocked in, except two small fields to be cultivated by his own hand.

52. *The government* was a pure democracy. The supreme authority was vested in the entire body of the people. The majority should always rule. Laws were

passed guaranteeing the utmost freedom in belief and worship to all,—“the first legal declaration of freedom of conscience ever adopted in Europe or America.”

Maryland made Christianity the religion of the colony, but in Rhode Island *all* beliefs were welcome. A Moham-edan from Constantinople, a Jew from Damascus, or a pagan from Madagascar, would have been welcomed at Providence, and given a voice in the provincial councils. Thus early was the precious tree of Equality planted in America.

53. Such a scheme of government was a novelty on both sides of the Atlantic, and those who made *predictions of failure* were by no means few. But it stood the test of time, and became the asylum for all the oppressed bodies and consciences of the other colonies.

Instead of the predicted turmoil there was only peace and quiet. It was found that when the State had nothing to do with the Church all men could live in harmony. Rhode Island was always true to these early professions. Although the least of the colonies in the area of her territory, she was the greatest of them all in the grandeur of her principles.

CAROLINA, 1663.

54. This *settlement* was made by English, Scotch, Dutch, and French, mostly from the other colonies. The king granted the land to a few English noblemen, who resolved to have a more aristocratic form of government



SEAL OF SOUTH CAROLINA.

than any existing in America.

55. With this view the *Grand Model* was proposed as a constitution “agreeable to monarchy.” It was the work of the philosopher John Locke, and was an attempt to connect hereditary wealth and political power. Orders of nobility were created, and the rights of the common

people were ignored. It was an attempt to establish an aristocratic system among a democratic people.

There were earls, dukes, barons, knights, lords, and all kinds of magnificent nonsense. Of course such a pompous scheme did not suit the plain people living in the woods of Carolina. It was tried for twenty years, but met with such opposition and contempt that the nobility of the statute-book disappeared from history. For a long time the colony was without any laws at all.

56. The *cultivation of rice* flourished in Carolina. The captain of a ship from Madagascar presented to the governor a sack of seed, which was distributed among the planters. It yielded a good harvest, and the crop soon became a staple of the colony. Indigo, tar, turpentine, and deer-skins, were also exported.

57. The *division of the colony* into North and



SEAL OF NORTH CAROLINA.

South Carolina came after seventy years. In the south the people lived on large isolated plantations as in Virginia; in the north the settlers lived in the woods, where they

made tar and turpentine, hunted the bear, and trapped the beaver. These differences caused the division of the colony in the year 1729.

NEW JERSEY, 1664.

58. The history of *New Jersey* begins with its settlement by English Puritans from Long Island, in 1664. The colonists bought the land of the Indians, and of the Governor of New York, who



SEAL OF NEW JERSEY.

claimed the territory as a part of his province.

59. Afterward, it became a Quaker colony by being assigned to a company of English Friends, who ruled it by a body of laws called *Concessions*. The name was very proper, for it conceded every thing to the people, rivaling the code of Rhode Island, previously enacted, in the liberality and purity of its principles.

All men and all religions were declared equal before the law; imprisonment for debt was forbidden; no rum was to be sold to Indians; no superiority was acknowledged to wealth, title, or birth; and taxes could be levied only by vote of the people or their representatives.

60. The *career of the province* was one of peace. Indian wars never troubled the Jerseys. The people were industrious, moral, and great lovers of liberty. They firmly resisted the attempts of the royal governors to impose upon them. The rich soil and the frugal habits of the people brought a prosperity which continued till the end of colonial times.

PENNSYLVANIA, 1682.

61. *William Penn*, an eminent English Friend, obtained a charter from the king to plant a colony in



SEAL OF PENNSYLVANIA.

America as an asylum for his afflicted people. For this charter he abandoned a claim of eighty thousand dollars, which he held against the king. He

bought the land a second time from the Indians, and invited all men to his colony without reference to race or religion. "I will found a colony for all mankind," were the sublime words of Penn.

62. *Its growth* was very rapid, and over two thousand settlers came in one year. Within three years Philadelphia had gained a larger population than New York in half a century.

63. One of Penn's first cares was to make a *treaty with the Indians*. At a great conference, addressing them by an interpreter, he said, "My Friends: We are all one flesh and blood. Being brethren, no advantage shall be taken on either side. When disputes arise we will settle them in council. Between us there shall be nothing but openness and love."

To this the chiefs replied, "While the rivers run and the sun shines we will live in peace with the children of William Penn." This verbal treaty lasted seventy years. During the time the colony was under the control of the Friends it was free from border troubles, nor was the war-whoop heard in the land.

64. *The government* made belief in Christ a necessary qualification for voting and office-holding; but provided that none who believed in the existence of the Deity should be molested in their views. These were very liberal provisions for those intolerant times.

DELAWARE, 1703.

65. This colony was settled by the Swedes as early as 1638. They were



SEAL OF DELEWARE.

soon overpowered by the Dutch. Delaware fell under the control of the English at the same time as New York. For a long time it

formed a *part of Pennsylvania*, but in 1703 it established a legislature, and became a separate colony. It took a prominent part in the Revolution.

GEORGIA, 1733.

66. *Imprisonment for debt* was for a long time common in England. Thousands of good but unfortunate

people lay without hope in prison, while their families were

desolate and starving.

A commissioner appointed at his own request visited the prisons, investigated pauperism, and succeeded in opening the jails and returning the



SEAL OF GEORGIA.

poor victims to their homes. Who was this noble hearted commissioner?

67. **James Oglethorpe**, the philanthropist. He obtained a grant of land from King George II, to which he invited all the poor and oppressed of England. The land was given to the founder "in trust for the poor," and was named Georgia, in honor of the king.

68. Oglethorpe spent *ten years* with the colony, wisely directing the government. The warm friendship of the Indians was early secured and always kept. Slavery was forbidden, and for many years excluded. The importation of rum and the sale of it to the Indians, were prohibited.

69. A *conflict with the Spaniards* of Florida was brought on by their nearness and their rival claims of territory. Hostilities continued over two years with varying success, and ended in the defeat of the Spaniards.

70. Beside this, there was much *internal trouble*. The settlers had not been allowed to own their lands by a deed, and agriculture had not flourished. Estates could be inherited only by the eldest son, and the colonists charged their poverty to the fact that slave labor was prohibited.

Slaves began to be hired on terms of service which were sometimes as long as a hundred years! This was equivalent to slavery. Finally slaves were imported, plantations laid out, the free-labor plan abandoned, and slavery formally introduced.

NATURE OF THE COLONIAL GOVERNMENTS.

71. Subjection to the king was the chief feature of the colonial governments. These differed greatly. The colonies received different powers from the monarch, and had different laws among themselves. The styles of government were five in number.

72. **I. Voluntary Association.** Some colonies, as Connecticut, were founded by the people without asking authority of the king or others.

73. **II. Commercial Association.** Some, as Virginia, were founded by a company for purposes of trade and profit.

74. **III. Proprietary.** Some, as Maryland and Pennsylvania, were founded and ruled by a Proprietor to whom the king had granted the land.

75. **IV. Royal.** Some, as New York, were ruled by governors appointed by the king and made answerable to him. Nearly all the colonies were, at some time, under this form.

76. **V. Charter.** Some, as Rhode Island, had a written instrument from the king granting certain powers and conferring certain privileges.

PERIODS OF COLONIAL FOUNDATIONS.

77. Only **six months** were required to plant a colony by the wise governor of **Georgia**.

78. Only **one year** did the Catholics require in laying the foundations of the **Maryland** colony.

79. **Seven** years were required in **Connecticut**.

80. **Eight** years were necessary in **Rhode Island**.

81. **Twelve** years were spent by English adventurers in their attempt to plant a permanent colony in **Virginia**.

82. **Fourteen** years were required to make a permanent settlement in **Massachusetts**.

83. For **seventeen** years Dutch traders were trafficking on the Hudson before a permanent colony was planted in **New York**.

84. **Fifty** years elapsed from the first settlements to the establishment of colonial governments in **Pennsylvania, Delaware, and New Jersey**.

85. **Sixty** years passed away before the settlements in **Carolina and New Hampshire** became fully developed colonies.

CHAPTER II.

COLONIAL PROGRESS.

86. The *rate of settlement*, as we have seen, was slow indeed. The idea of planting agricultural colonies in America was long in being entertained, and slow in being executed.

The great obstacle, at first, was the belief, which outlived the early explorers, and which for a century after Vespuccius filled the popular mind, that America was only a portion of the great Asiatic continent.

Other and later causes were the attachment of the people to their old homes, the dangers of the sea, the sacrifices to be endured by pioneers, and the hostility of the Indians.

87. The great *object of colonization* was to escape from some form of persecution in the Old World. The people were nearly all pilgrims and refugees, who fled to avoid the intolerance of the state, of the church, or of society, beyond the Atlantic.

To achieve freedom the colonists risked the dangers of the sea, endured the sufferings of a wintry coast, braved the pangs of famine, and met Indian warfare at their own doors.

88. *African Slavery* was introduced, as we have seen, early in the settlement of the colonies. That score of blacks sold by the Dutch traders at Jamestown, was the advance troop of that host which was to overshadow the republic.

At that time the slave trade was carried on extensively in Europe. Slave labor was wanted in Virginia and elsewhere in America. *Tobacco was king*. The soil and climate were adapted to its culture, and negro labor could best produce it. This was the real cause of slavery in this country.

Cargo after cargo of blacks were stolen from their homes in Africa and brought to America. Slave labor was found

to be profitable to the planters in the South, and slave importation to the merchants in the North. Thus the institution gradually extended to all the thirteen colonies. South Carolina alone was a slave colony from its beginning. In New England the slaves were employed as house servants; elsewhere they performed all kinds of manual labor.

It is an interesting coincidence that the same ocean, in the same year, brought to the same shores the Pilgrim Fathers, the apostles of freedom, and a cargo of Africans, the victims of slavery.

89. The *treatment of the Indians* in early times produced very marked effects on colonial life. The natives received the early explorers with hospitality and confidence. But this fair picture passed away, and in the place of mutual kindness came those acts of hatred and revenge which have resulted in three hundred years of border warfare and Indian atrocity.

90. *Their wrongs* would make a long record of inhumanity. Columbus himself carried considerable numbers of the natives to Europe, where they were sold into slavery.

Another explorer carried off fifty to the same fate.

Another, having induced the confiding Indians to visit his ship, closed the hatchways, spread his sails, and started for the West Indies.

Another enticed the king of the Hurons on board his vessel, and carried the captive chief to France, where he died of grief and loneliness.

Another compelled them to perform the most degrading kind of work, used them as beasts of burden, loaded them with chains, killed them without regret, burned their villages, and pursued the flying inhabitants with blood-hounds.

When Hayti was discovered it contained about a million of inhabitants; but within fifteen years they were reduced to sixteen thousand by the cruelty of Spanish taskmasters.

"The entire aboriginal population of the West Indies soon became extinct under the iron rule of the Spaniards." The

practice of selling Indians into bondage in Europe continued for nearly two centuries.

91. *The news* of these and other wrongs spread from wigwam to wigwam, from tribe to tribe, till the tales of treachery and outrage reached the most distant nations of North America.

92. *The results* were such as might have been expected. A general distrust of white men spread among the Indians. Except an occasional treaty of friendship, as those of Williams, Penn, Oglethorpe, and the French Jesuits, not one of the nations colonizing America met the red men with kindness, or succeeded in winning their confidence.

The English colonists were not men of blood, but they were far more ready to punish than to pardon offenses. The wise men among the Indians told their tribes that more Englishmen were yet to come, that they came to stay, and that they would drive the red men from their homes and hunting-grounds.

They saw white men increasing, ships arriving, settlements spreading, cities growing. The instinct of self-preservation brought a deliberate resolve to annihilate their enemies. Beside, there were frequent conflicts, which could not fail to excite revengeful feelings in a savage breast.

Whatever might have been the immediate occasion, these were the real causes of those massacres, midnight horrors, and Indian wars, which fill the pages of colonial history.

93. The *Rev. John Eliot*, of Massachusetts, often called the Indian apostle, was one of the many good men who tried to convert the natives to Christianity.

He learned their language, wrote an Algonquin grammar, and translated the Scriptures into that tongue. This book was printed at Cambridge, and was the first Bible published in the country. He had spent many years in its preparation, and he made good use of it. It is now a mere literary curiosity, the extinction of the tribe for which it was intended having made it a sealed book.

He spent a long life in missionary work, and was greatly beloved by the Indians. His labors were confined to a small district, and were only partially successful. At one time there were thirty churches of "praying Indians" under native preachers.

The red men were found to adhere closely to the manners of their fathers, and efforts toward their civilization were attended with the greatest difficulties. They said they did not want the teachings of a people who murdered and enslaved them. Eliot was followed by John Sargent, David Brainerd, David Zeisberger, James Marquette, Thomas Mayhew, and other heroic laborers in this unpromising field.

94. The *character of the Puritans* was stern and rugged. They were sober, earnest people, moved by deep religious principle, and true to their convictions of duty. They were part of a great body of people in England who held similar opinions. They were haters of sham and fashion—wigs, veils, long hair, plumes, scarfs, silken hoods, and long sleeves.

They wore broad-brimmed hats, long vests, loose pants, and knee-buckles. They carefully observed the Sabbath, beginning it on Saturday evening. Amusements were restrained and holidays abolished. They especially hated the observance of Christmas and all the ceremonies of the Episcopal church. Industry and economy were every where practiced.

The authority of magistrates was highly respected, and the ministers of the Gospel wielded great influence in public and private life. In Connecticut it was said that every town had a scholar for its minister. From these strange, good people have descended the enterprising, progressive Yankees.

95. The Puritans of Massachusetts had scarcely settled themselves in their new homes, till the *work of education* claimed their attention. In 1647, the general court declared that every town or district of fifty families should support a common school. Every town of one hundred

families should maintain a grammar school of sufficient grade to fit young men for Harvard, founded nine years before.

This regulation soon found its way into the other New England colonies, and thus was founded the American system of public schools. Heretofore education had been the task of the church or private enterprise, but now for the first time in the history of the world, the State took the matter in charge, and taxed all for the support of public instruction. Thus the foundations of the republic were being laid.

96. With these people *church matters* were esteemed of the highest importance. A drum, a horn, a conch-shell, or possibly a bell, called the people to service at nine o'clock on Sunday morning. They came to the log "meeting-house," carrying their muskets for fear of Indian treachery.



EARLY NEW ENGLAND CHURCH.

Within the church, the old men sat in one place, the young men in another, and the children in another. The boys sat on the stairs or in the gallery, guarded by an elder, who carried a long, light rod with a hare's foot on one end, and a hare's tail on the other.

"If a woman went to sleep he touched her on the forehead with the hare's tail; if a boy nodded, he received a rap with the other end. We can imagine the rod was often needed, for the service was from three to six hours in length, the sexton turning the hour-glass on the pulpit at the end of every hour."

There were no organs, choirs, or hymns; but the music consisted of singing by the entire congregation, from a

poetical version of the Psalms. The whole number of tunes did not exceed ten, and few congregations could sing more than five.

Prayers and sermons were little esteemed, unless they were of great length. The children and servants were regularly catechised. Persons were fined for unnecessary absence from service, and for protracted absence they were put into the stocks or into a cage.

97. It was early seen that some form of union among the colonies would be desirable. The primary object was mutual defense. The Dutch threatened in the west, the French in the north, and the Indians in the very midst. In 1643, the colonies Massachusetts, Plymouth, Connecticut, and New Haven, were joined in a loose confederacy, called *the United Colonies of New England*.

The chief authority was vested in the assembly, composed of two representatives from each colony. There was no president, and each colony could do as it pleased about obeying the laws. Only the general matters relating to war and revenue were submitted to the assembly. No other colonies were ever admitted, though several others applied. This first union lasted forty years.

98. *The laws of New England* were generally severe. All war that was not defensive was condemned, idolatry and blasphemy were punished with death, and heavy penalties were attached to gambling, drunkenness, and other immoralities. No interest was to be taken on borrowed money.

Church and State were much united. The privilege of voting was greatly restricted, and the whole number of voters in Massachusetts was not over one-fifth of the population.

99. The *genuine Blue Laws of Connecticut* — so called because they were originally printed on blue paper — were very curious. A few of them will serve to illustrate the strange legislation of the times. The early citizens of Connecticut adopted, in substance, the law of Moses as

their code in the punishment of crime. Blasphemy, adultery, and gross immorality were, therefore, capital offenses.

A child of sixteen years or older, if stubbornly disobedient, or if he should curse or strike his father or mother, was liable to the penalty of death.

Profaning the Sabbath was, in extreme cases, a capital offense. Lying subjected the offender to a fine of five, ten, or twenty shillings; inexcusable absence from church on Sunday, to a fine of five.

No man could vote unless he was a member of one of the churches allowed in the province.

All were required to pay for the support of the regular congregational minister, and if any failed to do so, he was assessed for that purpose, and the assessment was collected in law as an ordinary debt.

If children were brought up in ignorance, the selectmen were to provide education at the expense of the parent.

Married persons were obliged to live together or be imprisoned. Should a young man seek the hand of a young lady in marriage, without having obtained the previous consent of her father, he was liable to a fine of forty shillings for the first offense, eighty for the second, and a reasonable amount for the third, or he might be flogged.

It is well to remember that, though these laws seem to us severe, the men of Connecticut were no less tolerant than their fellows. While there were twelve capital offenses in Connecticut, there were about two hundred in England.

100. *The population* of the colonies at the accession of King James II to the throne of England was two hundred thousand,—seventy-five in New England, forty in the middle colonies, and eighty-five in the South. These were drawn from several different countries. English predominated; but Dutch, Swedes, French, Scotch, Irish, and Germans also abounded.

These people were nearly all of a good class, fully determined to win their way in the New World. This mixture of solid men and women from the best races has made the

people of the United States the most progressive nation in the world.

101. The *farming* of the early settlers was attended by many difficulties. Unbroken forests extended from the Atlantic to the Mississippi. For many years the people cultivated only those small patches of ground which the Indians had cleared of wood. After this it was thought necessary in clearing land to remove all the stumps and roots. By thus doing a man could not prepare more than one acre a year.

But at one time a farmer, more negligent than the others, cut down the trees, plowed the stumpy and rooty ground as best he could, and scratched in his seed. His neighbors made him the subject of much ridicule; but at the time of harvest he gathered an excellent crop. It was a great discovery.

From that time forward forests were rapidly cut away, farms were made, and the waving grain quickly followed the woodman's ax. In New England the land was divided into small farms, by which means social life was cultivated, and enterprise and thrift were increased. Towns and villages were numerous.

In the southern colonies the planters lived on great plantations, miles apart. Their households were large, consisting at first of apprenticed hands sent over from England. These laborers were afterward entirely superseded by slaves.

102. The *productions* were corn, oats, rye, peas, hay, barley, squashes, wheat, and pumpkins. Many of the plants which the colonists had brought from Europe could not be made to flourish in the climate of the Atlantic coast. For whole generations public and private attention was given to the production of silk,—almost the only business that has not been made to flourish in America.

It required many years to ascertain the crops suited to the conditions of climate; but this was finally done so thoroughly that, with the exception of sorghum, there has

been no new field crop of any importance introduced into American agriculture since the Revolution.

Apples, pears, plums, quinces, and cherries, were raised. Cotton and woolen cloths were made in early times in the homes of the people. Ship-building was carried on. The first cargo sent to Europe was a ship-load of sassafras root. The chief exports were furs, fish, sweet potatoes, tobacco, and lumber.

It is a strange fact that one hundred and thirty years before England had a saw-mill, one was put in full operation by the Puritans only fourteen years after their landing.

103. At first *the money* in use was corn, beaver skins, bullets, and pounds of tobacco. These were used even in paying taxes. English and foreign coins afterward came into use. Massachusetts set up a mint in 1652, and coined small silver pieces for circulation.

The mint-master was to receive fifteen pence for every twenty shillings coined. It is recorded that he became wealthy, and gave his only daughter her weight in silver. This coinage was called "the pine-tree currency."

Paper money was first issued by Massachusetts in 1690, to defray the expense of a military expedition. Paper currency soon became common among the colonies. In trade with the Indians, Yankee-made wampum was much used. Value was estimated in pounds, shillings, and pence. Dollars and cents came in with the Revolution.

104. *The mode of life* was exceedingly simple. The people wore home-spun clothes, and made their yarn from the wool of their own sheep. But on great occasions, and on the Sabbath, the young men wore gold and silver buttons and showy belts; and the young women, silken hoods, lace handkerchiefs, and embroidered caps.

All persons were required by law to dress within their means. Alice Flynt was accused of wearing a silken hood; but the complaint was dropped when she showed that she was worth a thousand dollars! Jonas Fairbanks was arrested for

wearing "great boots;" but he was acquitted of the crime for want of sufficient evidence.

Mr., *Mrs.*, and *Miss*, were titles applied only to ministers, their wives, and persons of high standing. *Goodman* and *Goodwife*, commonly contracted into *Goody*, were the addresses of all persons in ordinary stations. *Mr.* Josias Plaistowe stole some corn from the Indians. He was afterward only Josias Plaistowe.



NEW ENGLAND KITCHEN.

The farmer's wife rode to church or market behind her husband on the same horse. The roads were poor, and wheeled vehicles scarce. The food was simple but abundant. People in all stations made their morning and evening meal of mush and milk. The standard dinner was of pork and beans, or beef and peas. Tea and coffee were not yet used, but home-made beer and cider were largely taken as drinks. Potatoes were not much used as food till a century after the landing at Plymouth. Forks were

not used at the table. Bread was commonly made of rye and corn-meal rather than of flour. The houses were mostly log cabins, with small windows, and chimneys made of sticks and clay plaster. The furniture was generally very simple and plain. The kitchen was the most important apartment, with its wide fire place, the mortar and pestle for pounding corn, and the firelock for hunting and defense.

There were few amusements; dancing and the theater were not tolerated; and no one was allowed to carry cards or dice. Thanksgiving was instituted to take the place of the Christmas festival. The standard of morality was very high.

105. *British oppression* was early felt, more or less, in all the colonies, in two ways.

First. The exactions of the royal governors, who were often men without principle, seeking to enrich themselves by oppressing the people.

Second. The Navigation Acts, which forbade all British colonies to send their products elsewhere than to England; to buy their goods any where but in England; and to send by any but English vessels.

The love of liberty grew strong. Having come originally to secure freedom of conscience, the colonists soon wished it to extend to political matters. In every colony the tendency was toward "a rule of the people by the people." The royal interference might check, but it could not destroy, this strong tendency toward republicanism.

106. The *religious belief* of the colonists differed greatly, though nearly the entire population professed Christianity. Maryland, founded by Catholics, soon had, like the other colonies, a majority of Protestants.

The Church of England,—the Episcopal,—prevailed in Virginia and Carolina. In New England, the people were largely Calvinistic in doctrine and Congregational in practice. In New York, the Dutch Reformed were supreme.

The Quaker element predominated in Pennsylvania,

Delaware, Rhode Island and New Jersey. Roger Williams established at Providence the first Baptist church in America.

The French Protestants,—the Huguenots,—were found in considerable numbers in New York and Carolina.

107. The celebrated *John Wesley*, the founder of Methodism, and *George Whitefield*, an eloquent evangelist, visited America on a missionary tour, in 1738. It was the mission of the latter to arouse the people; of the former, to lead and organize.

The people flocked to their ministry, and on one occasion in England, Whitefield is said to have preached to sixty thousand listeners. His open-air meetings were often attended by forty thousand. This was a time of intense religious enthusiasm on both sides of the ocean, and is known as the "Great Awakening."

108. *A war of sects* was waged in several of the colonies. The people forgot their ideas of tolerance and religious equality when power came to them. "New England Protestants appealed to Liberty; then they closed the door against her." It was a sad, strange picture of life.

The Puritans imprisoned Baptists and executed Quakers.

The Churchmen in Virginia banished Puritans and imprisoned Baptists. The Protestants in Maryland disfranchised the Catholics.

But as years passed away, a more kind, tolerant spirit prevailed; and long before the end of the colonial period the illiberal sentiment of persecution had passed away.

CHAPTER III.

THE FRENCH AND INDIAN WAR.

109. For three hundred years *five powers* struggled for the possession of North America,—the Indians, Spain, France, England, and the Thirteen Colonies. These struggles have resulted in nearly all the wars in our history.

110. *The Indians* were in reality subdued by the

white races at an early period, although they have continued a hopeless struggle at intervals during our entire history. For the last fifty years it has been within the power of the United States, did not humanity forbid, to inflict upon the red man the last wrong he can suffer — extermination.

111. *The Spanish* did not engage to much extent in conflicts with other colonists. They left behind them names for our towns, rivers, and islands; but they disappeared from the territory now included in the United States late in our history, at the purchase of Florida, the annexation of Texas, the acquisition of California, and the war with Mexico.

112. *The French* first engaged with the English in the struggle for supremacy on the continent. It had long been foreseen, in a day when arbitration was not practiced and men knew no better way of settling disputes than by warfare, that a contest of arms must some time come.

113. The *causes of the war* had existed for generations. They were two in number. 1. The conflicting claims of territory. 2. The old enmity of England and France.

114. *The claims of territory* on both sides were very distinct. The English based their pretensions of ownership on the voyage of Cabot along the Atlantic coast, and always assumed that their territory extended westward to the Pacific. The French claimed the Mississippi valley, because they first explored and occupied it.

115. *French Jesuits*, acting in the double capacity of explorers and Indian missionaries, had penetrated far into the interior. They were brave, devoted men, who were ready to endure every privation, suffering, and even a lonely death, in carrying a knowledge of Catholic Christianity to the red men of the forest.

Under their leadership, the French had explored the Great Lakes, had seen the Mississippi River from the Falls of St. Anthony to the Gulf, and had established a chain of no fewer than sixty military posts on the lakes and in the Mississippi valley.

116. Some *previous collisions* had occurred between the English and the French in America; but these conflicts had grown out of war between the parent countries. The issue now raised was an American question, and was to be decided, in part, on American soil.

117. The *population of the two nationalities* in America at that time was nearly as follows: English, one million; French, one hundred thousand. The former were confined to the Atlantic coast; the latter to the valleys of the St. Lawrence and the Mississippi.

118. *The immediate occasion* of the war was an infringement on the French claims by the issue of a grant of land to a number of capitalists called The Ohio Company. This grant consisted of a large tract on the Ohio River, with the obligation of colonizing it, and the privileges of the Indian trade.

Immediately the French offered resistance. They broke up the settlement, imprisoned the surveyor engaged in laying off the land, and drove away the traders.

119. *Major George Washington* now first appears in the history of his country. The act of the French alarmed the English government, and orders were dispatched to the governor of Virginia, to send "a person of distinction" to demand of the French the abandonment of the disputed territory. The letter was to be carried from the capital of Virginia to the French commander on Lake Erie. It was the most serious mission yet undertaken in America.

George Washington was chosen. He was a Virginian by birth. When a boy he was distinguished for good behavior, for energy, and for a disposition for hard work. At sixteen he became a good surveyor. At nineteen he was made adjutant of one of the military districts of his native State, ranking as major.

He was twenty-one when he undertook the message to the French commander. He was even then regarded as a young man of unusual promise.

120. *His journey* lay through four hundred miles of forests. Selecting a few companions, he traveled the distance on foot, delivered his message, and bore back the reply in safety. No subsequent act of his life elicited so much admiration as the performance of this hazardous mission. The reply was a courteous but positive refusal to accede to the demands of the English.

121. *Unity of action* was secured to the colonies by the home government. A council was held at Albany, in which the provinces resolved to act together. Treaties were also made with several Indian tribes.

A plan for the political union of the colonies was proposed by Benjamin Franklin, a delegate to the council. The scheme was adopted by the convention, but it did not go into effect. It was rejected by both the colonial assemblies and the British government, being too aristocratic for the former, and too democratic for the latter.

122. It should be remembered that *the idea of union* grew very slowly on this continent. A part of the New England colonies had been joined for many years in a confederacy formed for protection against the Indians, and for the regulation of commerce.

William Penn had proposed, but not successfully, an annual congress of all the colonies, with power to regulate trade between them. Franklin received this idea, and argued it acceptably before this provincial congress at Albany, twenty-two years before the Great Declaration.

123. The contest which ensued was fought on both sides of the ocean, and is called in European history The Seven Years' War. In American history it is known as *The French and Indian War*. For five years commissioners from both nations had been engaged at Paris in discussing the conflicting claims.

Their labors were in vain. The quarrel was secretly incited by the parent governments, and these intrigues soon brought on a general war vastly more disastrous than the contest on this side of the Atlantic, nearly nine

hundred thousand men falling on the battle-fields of Europe.

1755.

124. *General Edward Braddock*, an Irish officer of distinction, bore a commission as Commander-in-Chief of all the British and colonial forces in America.

125. *Four expeditions* were planned as the operations of the year: one under General Johnson, against Crown Point; a second under General Shirley, against Fort Niagara; a third under General Winslow, against the French settlers in Nova Scotia; and a fourth, and chief, under General Braddock, against Fort Du Quesne.

126. *The first* was a failure.

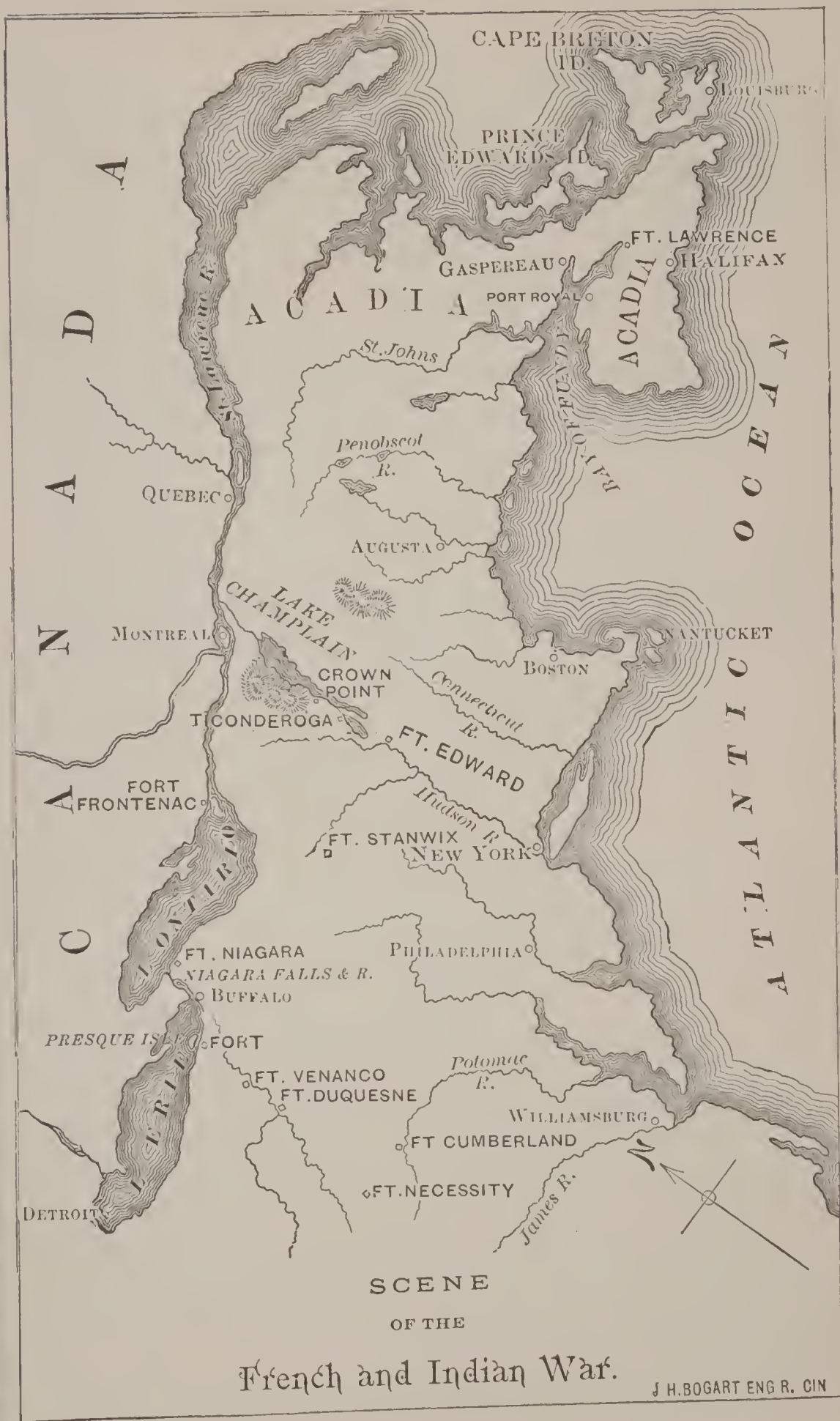
127. *The second* was a failure.

128. *The third* was a success. The French settlers of Nova Scotia were a peaceable, innocent, and happy people. They desired to remain neutral during the war, but it was claimed that they might join their countrymen in arms.

Seven thousand of them were therefore kidnapped, put on ships, and carried into exile into the various colonies. Families were broken up, never to be reunited; and the newspapers in following years often contained advertisements asking for missing relatives. The crops and the homes of the simple Acadians were destroyed, and the people stripped of every possession except the clothes they wore.

This act resulted in the expulsion or extinction of the entire French population of Nova Scotia. The poet Longfellow founded his poem entitled "Evangeline" on this sad event.

129. *The fourth* was a failure. Rejecting the advice of Washington, Braddock fell into an Indian ambush, and his army was thrown into confusion. The loss was heavy. Braddock was killed, and the remnant was saved only by the coolness and skill of Washington, who led the shattered army back to Philadelphia.



1756.

130. The *plan of the campaign* was the same as the year before, with the exception of the expedition against Nova Scotia. The colonies had twenty thousand men in the field. *Every one of the expeditions failed.*

1757.

131. *The plan this year* was a single expedition against Louisburg, on Cape Breton. Leaving the entire Canadian frontier in undisputed possession of the French, the British General Loudon settled down near Louisburg with eleven thousand men, cleared off a mustering plain, and, lest his men should take the scurvy, planted the fields near the city in onions !

When he heard that the enemy had one more ship than himself, he surpassed his former absurdity by sailing away to New York. Thus the expedition ended in disgrace and failure.

132. *The situation* was far from satisfactory to the English. They had not a single village or fortress remaining in the whole valley of the St. Lawrence. West of the mountains there was not a single cabin where English was spoken. France claimed, and appeared to possess, twenty times as much American territory as England, although its population was only one-tenth as great.

1758.

133. Discontent with the management of the war was now freely expressed in the colonies and in England. *More vigorous measures* were adopted. The British ministry was changed, and William Pitt, called the Great Commoner, was placed at the head of the government. The colonies raised men and money, and in the spring fifty thousand regular and provincial troops took the field. This force equaled the entire male French population of the continent.

134. *The plan of operations* was nearly the same

as that of the first year of the war. Three expeditions were planned. The first against Louisburg; the second against Ticonderoga; and the third against Fort Du Quesne.

135. *The first* was successful. With twelve thousand men the British attacked the fortress by land, and bombarded it from the fleet. After thirty days the defenders of Louisburg struck their colors. It was the first heavy blow of the English armies against the French power in America.

136. *The second* was a failure. A finely equipped army of fifteen thousand,—the largest force that had ever been seen in the western hemisphere,—came confidently to Ticonderoga. It was repulsed with a loss of two thousand.

137. *The third* was successful. Nine thousand men went against the fort. The advance detachment, under Washington, proceeded with caution, and found the fortress burned and abandoned. The army entered the ruins, raised the English flag, and named the place Pittsburg, in honor of the British minister. Washington had already displayed military qualities superior to those of any other general who had appeared on the continent.

1759.

138. *The plan of the campaign* was to conquer Canada, and it embraced three expeditions: one against Ticonderoga; the second against Fort Niagara; and the third, and chief, against Quebec. Every one of these expeditions was successful.

139. *General Wolfe*, the British commander of the third expedition, rose from a bed of sickness, and in the stillness of night led his army up a precipice three hundred feet high to a plain,—the Plain of Abraham,—overlooking Quebec.

Montcalm, the French general, led out his forces, and a bloody battle was fought. Both commanders were slain. The capital of New France surrendered.

140. *The Treaty of Paris* ended the war. France gave up to England all her possessions in North America

east of the Mississippi River, except the city of New Orleans and the island adjoining it. Thus England won in the contest for the possession of the continent. It was to be the home of the English-speaking millions.

141. The *cost of the war* to the colonies was very great. The British generals often sneered at the awkward young farmers and mechanics fighting in their armies, but they nearly always did their duty well, and many thousands of them had fallen in the struggle. The colonies spent sixteen million dollars, five of which were afterward repaid by the British government.

142. The *significance of the war* was in its being a preparation for the impending struggle of the Revolution. It was a training-school for the generals and soldiers of the colonies. It showed them war as conducted by the best captains of Europe. Washington, Putnam, Gates, Montgomery, Stark, Arnold, Morgan, and others, who acted in the Revolution, here learned the tactics of war.

It taught the colonies the idea of consolidation, and that "in union there is strength." In later years, when defending the American colonies in Parliament, the statesman Burke strikingly illustrated the process of growth now going on in American character: "*These colonies are yet in the gristle; they have not yet hardened into bone.*"

CHAPTER IV.

THE INTERVAL.

143. The *sixteen years* between the close of the French War and the opening of the Revolution, were years in which the character of the colonies rapidly matured. It was a time of deep political study.

The Common Law of England was everywhere discussed, and every young lawyer became familiar with the legal literature of the parent country. Burke said of America, "In no country in the world is the law so general a study." Meetings for political debate were held in every city and

village. The rights of man was the absorbing theme; and the very schoolboys tried to handle, in earnest discussion, the high topic.

144. The *state of society* was very different from that of the early colonial times. There had been a gradual assimilation of manners, and the colonies had become a coherent people. Instead of being thirteen provinces with separate and sometimes opposing interests, they had become one nation in thought and feeling.

They were Americans. They began to feel that they all had the same interests, and that it was their destiny at some time to be a united people. Society was growing in preparation for nationality; but the most far-seeing statesman could not have imagined that union and independence were to come together.

145. *Agriculture* continued to be the chief industry, but slow progress was made in introducing improved methods of husbandry.

Seeds were expensive and implements imperfect. The sickle, the scythe, and the flail, made the farmer's life full of labor. Rotation of crops was not thought of, and the value of fertilizers was little understood.

Sheep and cattle were not over half as large as at the present time. The swine were long-legged, covered with bristles, and hard to fatten. There were no agricultural journals, and "book-farming" was often spoken of with contempt. With the exception of a few valuable essays on field husbandry, published in 1747, by Jared Eliot, a clergyman, there were no attempts to encourage improved tillage.

Tobacco was the source of much wealth in Virginia, where the planters became an aristocratic class. The produce of the Mt. Vernon plantation was carefully managed by the proprietor, and the barrels of flour bearing the brand of George Washington of Mt. Vernon were entered in the ports of the West Indies without inspection.

About the year 1740, a young woman of eighteen, named Eliza Lucas, was managing a plantation in South Carolina. Her father sent her some cotton seeds from the West Indies. She planted them and had a good crop. From that day, the cultivation of cotton increased with great rapidity in the South, till it became the king of products.

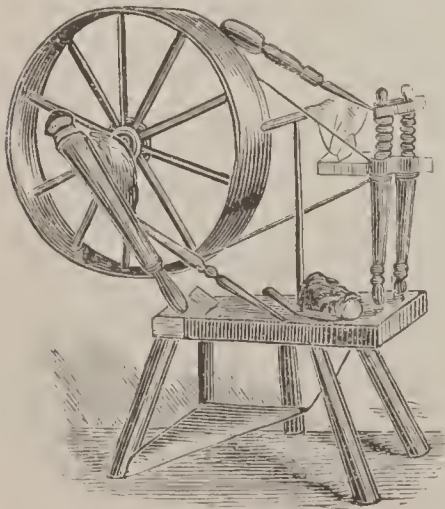


THE COTTON PLANT.

146. In the northern colonies, *manufacturing* also received much attention. The people early began to diversify their industry, and to make by hand nearly all the articles produced in England.

The first manufactory was a glass furnace. Hats, paper, household furniture, farming implements and cutlery, were made to a limited extent. Silks were made in Connecticut, cotton and woolen cloth in Rhode Island, and shoes at Lynn.

The weaving of cloth by machinery was not yet thought of, and the thrifty people spun their yarn and wove their fabrics by hand. It is recorded that Mrs. Washington had sixteen spinning-wheels running at a time.



SPINNING-WHEEL.

Ship carpenters were busy. Nantucket had one hundred and fifty vessels engaged in whaling voyages; and Marblehead had fifty vessels in the foreign fishing trade.

Iron furnaces were erected as early as 1740, the same year in which Eliza Lucas planted her cotton seed.

147. The usual *mode of travel* was on foot or on horseback, though the gentlemen planters of Virginia used to ride in a great coach with yellow wheels, and drawn by six horses.

There were no turnpikes nor macadamized roads. Lumbering coaches made the trip from New York to Philadelphia twice a week ; but in 1766 a stage was put on the route which accomplished the journey in "the remarkably short time of two days." This was called The Flying Machine.

148. For a long time *postal accommodations* were very inferior. Previous to 1693, all mail matter was carried by private conveyance. In that year Parliament voted to establish post-offices in the colonies, and Thomas Neale was authorized to transmit letters and packets "at such rates as the planters should agree to give."

Seventeen years later, a chief office was established at New York, and a line of posts reaching northward to New Hampshire and southward to Philadelphia. The postman traversed this route as often as letters enough had accumulated to pay expenses.

Benjamin Franklin held the office of postmaster general in America for twenty years, until his dismissal at the outbreak of the Revolution.

149. Slavery continued to flourish in all the colonies. Its prosperity was owing in part to the demand for slave labor, and in part to *slave importation* by order of the British government.

In 1712, the English South Sea Company and the African Company were endowed with the monopoly of introducing negro slaves into the western world. They were encouraged and firmly sustained by English legislation, and during the century ending at the Declaration of Independence, the British nation, chiefly by these two companies, imported into the English, Spanish, and French colonies in America about three million negroes, most of them between the ages of fifteen and thirty years.

Several of the colonies, and especially Virginia, complained of this excessive importation ; but Parliament was firm in the support of this traffic, pronouncing it “a trade highly advantageous to the kingdom and its colonies.” The object of all this was to encourage agriculture and discourage manufacturing in America, in order that British factories might have an abundant supply of raw materials and a ready market for their goods.

The acknowledged policy was to keep the colonies dependent on the parent country. The result was that fifty years before Independence some of the colonies had a greater colored than white population.

150. The *slave laws* in force during colonial times were very severe. As a sample, it may be stated, that in the colony of the Carolinas, it was enacted, in 1712, that “all negroes, Indians, and mulattoes, who can not prove themselves freemen, are made and declared slaves.” Any person finding a slave abroad without a pass, must chastise him, or else be liable to a penalty for the omission.

All crimes committed by a slave, from theft to murder, were punishable by death. If the owner of a runaway slave failed to whip the culprit, cut off his ear, or brand him with a red-hot iron, he forfeited his ownership.

The expense of hunting slaves was paid from the public treasury, and if any person, while engaged in such service, should be disabled, the public paid the damages. If a slave died during his punishment, no penalty was to be attached, unless murder was intended, when a fine of fifty pounds was to be paid.

151. *The New Englanders* could no longer be called Roundheads. They wore great powdered wigs, and tied them behind in a long queue fastened by a pink ribbon. Well dressed gentlemen at home wore a red velvet cap, a blue damask dressing-gown, a white satin waistcoat with deep embroidered flaps, black satin breeches, long white silk stockings, and red morocco slippers. This was a

very dandyish costume compared with the modest dress of the early Puritans.

In manners and opinions the people had not changed so much. They believed in the future, and they labored as much for posterity as for themselves. They still maintained their spiritual worship; they called upon no saint; they hated Christmas and Popish festivals; they erected neither altar nor crucifix; they married without a minister; and buried the dead without prayer. They thus manifested their dislike of Episcopacy and Catholicism.

152. *The Southerners* were mostly descendants of the original Cavaliers of Virginia. They dressed much as their neighbors in New England, but differed from them greatly in manners. The Virginia planters lived like princes. They had grand Christmas dinners, with music and dancing. They did not care much for schools and books, but built fine residences, and bought gay dresses and rich furniture.

They busied themselves in managing their plantations, and spent their vacant time in hunting and fishing. Bull-baiting, cock-fighting, and fox-hunting were popular amusements. Much attention was given to politics.

153. As time advanced, many *new customs* were introduced into society at which we would smile to-day. Watches were rarely carried. Forks at the table were used in 1680 in the wealthier families, but plates were articles not yet thought of.

Coffee was used by only a few, and as a luxury. Tea was supped sparingly in 1710. Potatoes began to be used as food about 1720; but when, fifty years later, Samuel Garver put away a bushel for winter use, his neighbors wondered what he would do with so many!

In 1721, singing by note began to be introduced into church service, a custom which encountered much opposition, and opened a ten years' quarrel in the churches.

An organ was made in 1745, but it was not allowed in

the "meeting-house." At home, young ladies played on the spinet, and the young men on the violin.

About the close of the French war, chaises came into use for Sunday traveling, in place of the saddle.

154. *The Press* early became a power in the land. Few books were allowed by Parliament to be printed in the colonies, but they were highly prized. In 1639, an English printer named Stephen Day, set up at Cambridge the first printing press.

The first printing done in the country was The Freeman's Oath, and the next, an almanac calculated for New England. The first book was a poetical translation of the Psalms, which was published in a volume of three hundred pages, and went through seventy editions. It was the hymn-book of New England.

The first newspaper appeared in 1704, and was called the *Boston News Letter*. John Campbell was the first American editor. Fifty years later there were but seven newspapers in the country. They were small, single sheets, frequently printed on only one side, and mostly devoted to local news.

The age of newspapers had not yet come. But pamphlets on political topics were very popular, and teemed with much thought in the right direction. Sound political philosophy was thus spread among a people who were so soon to take a place among the nations.

155. In 1732, John Peter Zenger, of New York, publisher of the *Weekly Journal*, strongly censured the governor and the assembly for laying illegal taxes on the colony. No newspaper had ever taken so bold a step before. Zenger was arrested on a charge of libel, and the edition of his paper containing it was publicly burned. The *freedom of the press* was thus for the first time put on trial. Attorneys feared the power of the government, and it was very difficult for Zenger to obtain counsel.

On the day of trial, a venerable, noble-looking stranger appeared on his behalf. It was Andrew Hamilton, the

speaker of the assembly of Pennsylvania, and the famous "Quaker lawyer" of Philadelphia. Being not allowed to prove the truth of the charge which Zenger had made, Hamilton appealed to the jury that they were aware from their own knowledge, that it was true, and asserted that the principles of liberty were on trial before them, and not the mere person of a man.

Zenger was acquitted amid cheers; and thus freedom was proclaimed to the press in the New World, long before it had escaped the censorship of the government in the Old.

156. *The Pulpit* was also a great educator of the times. Many of the ministers were men of superior scholarship, who preached their long, strong sermons to congregations of farmers, mechanics, and small tradespeople of the district. In many a parsonage the Scriptures were read in the original languages at the morning and evening worship.

For two-thirds of a century metaphysical theology had held the ascendancy in the ministry; but the clergy did not stop with the discussion of dogmas: they led and inspired the people; they kept patriotism aflame; they promoted vital religion; they moulded national character.

157. The importance of *education* was acknowledged from the first settlement of the colonies. *In New England*, the people prized it next to religion. In Connecticut, every town that did not keep open a school at least three months in the year, was liable to a fine.

The "town-meetings," long since gone out of style, were then common. Old and young, rich and poor, there met on equality, and discussed matters of local and national interest. Every one had the right to vote and speak. In these village councils the people formed the habit of acting in a body for the good of all, and accepting the will of the majority as law. These meetings developed public spirit, taught the people the important art of self-government, and gave skill in public debate.

158. *The Middle colonies* had their common

schools and colleges. The first schools in New York were taught by Dutch masters, who gave instruction in English as an accomplishment.

The first girls' school in the country was started at Lewiston, Delaware. In the first schools of Pennsylvania, "reading, writing, and casting accounts," were taught for eight shillings a year.

159. *The Southern colonies* met with difficulties in their plans to promote education. The royal governors were generally opposed to public instruction, and would not allow the people to have common schools. One of the governors of Virginia, Sir William Berkeley, said, "I thank God there are no free schools, nor printing in the colony, and I hope there will not be these hundred years: for learning has brought disobedience, heresy, and sects into the world, and printing has published and scattered them."

This wish came near being fulfilled; for, a century and a half later, a member of Congress from Virginia thanked God that his district was without a newspaper. The scattered condition of the people was unfavorable to the cause of general education. The planters, and others who could afford the expense, sent their sons to be educated in England.

160. It must be acknowledged that *literature and science* did not receive much attention in colonial times. The people were too busy in making homes and developing their country. Increase Mather, one of the early presidents of Harvard College, and his son, Cotton Mather, were the founders of American literature.

Cotton Mather's *Magnalia*, a religious history of New England, was the first important book written by a native of this country, and it is still interesting reading. Franklin's experiments with a boy's kite, by which he proved the identity of lightning and electricity, elicited the praise of all Europe.

161. *Nine colleges* existed in this country at the close of the colonial period,—three Episcopalian, three

Congregational, one Presbyterian, one Baptist, and one Dutch Reformed. They exerted a great and steady influence from a very early date. They sent out a continuous succession of minds, trained to do their country's solid thinking and effective action. They educated the generation of men who achieved Independence.

162. *Harvard College* was the oldest of these institutions, being founded in 1638, at Cambridge, Massachusetts, only eighteen years after the landing of the Puritans. They saw that they must provide for the education of young men in the ministry, as they could not fill their pulpits from England.

At the outset about two thousand dollars were appropriated by the general court, gifts of books were made, many subscribed cash or supplies, and the school was opened with a very small attendance.

A few years afterward, each family gave a peck of corn, or a shilling, or a sheep, or a string of wampum, for its support. The income of a ferry was set aside for its use, and valuable presents of books were sent from England.

It was named Harvard College in honor of John Harvard, a lately arrived and learned Englishman, who, in his will, made bequests of his library and five thousand dollars in money. As a college motto it adopted the words, *For Christ and the Church*. As it was the earliest, it has also been the most richly endowed, institution in the land. It is the pride of the United States, as it was the pride of its Puritan founders.

From its walls have issued Everett, Sparks, Emerson, Bowditch, Felton, Ticknor, Longfellow, Lowell, Channing, Palfrey, Parsons, Story, Kent, and many other illustrious men.

163. *William and Mary College* was next in order, being founded in 1693, at Williamsburg, the colonial capital of Virginia. In its early history it was much interested in humane but impracticable schemes for the education of the Indians, who, instead of instructing their race, nearly always relapsed into barbarism themselves.

Another object was the preparation of young men to become ministers of the church in Virginia — the Episcopal. Although *four times* destroyed by fire, it was promptly rebuilt, and has always been the leading educator of the South.

Its list of distinguished names is very long. It instructed Peyton Randolph, Thomas Jefferson, James Monroe, John Tyler, Chief Justice Marshall, and Winfield Scott. It gave Washington his commission as surveyor, and made him its chancellor during the last ten years of his life.

164. Seeing the great success and advantages of the Harvard school, ten worthy ministers assembled, in 1700, near New Haven, and each placed a few volumes upon the table at which they were sitting, with these words: "I give these books for the founding of a college in this colony."

Such was the beginning of *Yale College*. It was named in honor of Elihu Yale, a native of New Haven, who made valuable gifts of books and money. Sir Isaac Newton and other Englishmen sent books.

The college has always held a prominent place in American education, and has produced many famous men. Ten thousand persons have received degrees, of whom over two thousand have been ministers of the gospel. It has now about one thousand pupils, under fifty professors.

165. The *College of New Jersey* at Princeton was founded in 1746. It had its origin, like the others, in a desire to educate gospel ministers. It has always filled a large sphere, especially in the education of Presbyterian clergymen. It has granted about six thousand degrees.

166. *Columbia College* — formerly called King's College — was founded in the city of New York, in 1755. Among its early students were DeWitt Clinton, Alexander Hamilton, and John Randolph. It has always been famous as a classical school. Its School of Mines is probably the most prosperous in the country. It has about one thousand pupils.

167. In the same year the *University of Penn-*

sylvania was founded at Philadelphia by Benjamin Franklin.

168. *Brown University* — formerly called Rhode Island College — was founded at Providence in 1764. It is controlled by the Baptists — the followers of Roger Williams — but the utmost liberality is practiced in religious opinion. Like nearly all the other colleges, it was closed during the Revolution.

169. *Rutgers College* — formerly Queen's College — was founded in 1770 by the Dutch Reformed. It is situated at Brunswick, New Jersey. It has had much financial embarrassment during its history.

170. *Dartmouth College* was founded at Hanover, New Hampshire, in 1769, to provide a Christian education for the Indians. Without exalted pretensions it has always done its work well, and has sent out over five thousand graduates, among whom were Daniel Webster and Rufus Choate

171 The *libraries* of colonial times were few in number but great in power. They were moulders of society. The Philadelphia Library was founded by Franklin in 1731. He was then a young man, and desired to provide the means of self-improvement to the masses. It now contains about one hundred thousand volumes.



JONATHAN EDWARDS.

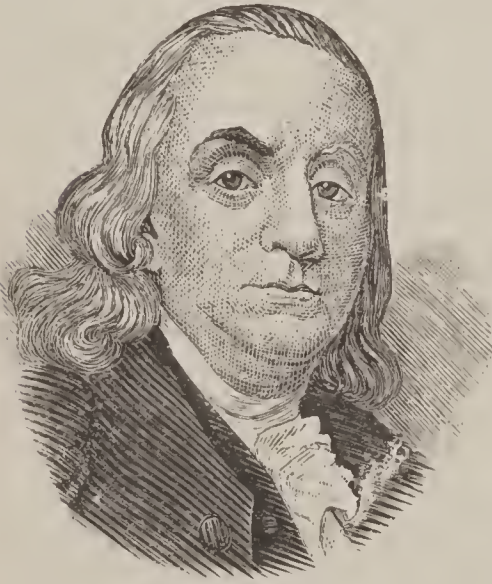
The Redwood Library, at Newport, R. I., was founded near the same time by a club of literary gentlemen. The New York City Library was chartered in 1754. The Library of Congress was not founded till after the Revolution.

172. The colonial times produced several *great men*, whose lives are illus-

trious examples to American youth, and whose labors did much to shape the American character.

173. *Jonathan Edwards*, of Connecticut, was one of the greatest theologians and metaphysicians that has lived in this country. Born in a colony which was almost a wilderness, educated at a college yet in its infancy, and settled for many years as pastor over a church on the borders of civilization, he yet exerted the greatest influence over religious thought and character. His greatest work was "An Inquiry into the Freedom of the Will." His belief was severely Calvinistic. He died in the midst of his usefulness, at the age of fifty-five.

174. *Benjamin Franklin*, the philosopher and statesman, was a man of ceaseless activity, and possessed a truly practical mind. He founded the first public library, and edited the best newspaper in the colonies. He first introduced newspaper advertising. He created our post-office system. He invented the Franklin stove, and abolished that great nuisance of colonial times, smoking chimneys. He first effectually taught the necessity of ventilation, introduced the basket willow, and suggested



BENJAMIN FRANKLIN.

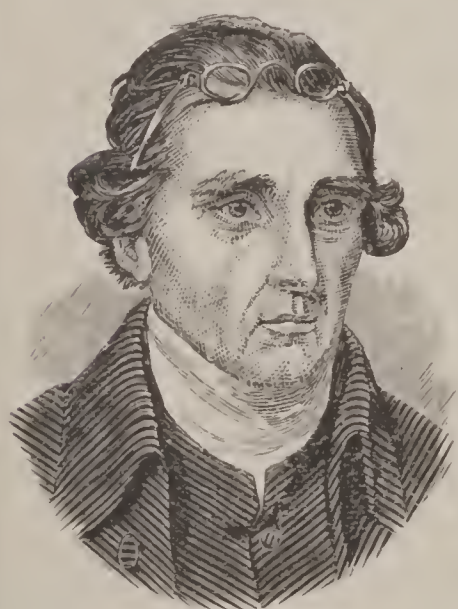
the use of mineral fertilizers. He proved the identity of lightning and electricity, and set up the first lightning-rods.

He founded the American Philosophical Society, our first organization in the interests of science. He first expounded the theory of ocean navigation by means of winds and currents. He proposed the first acceptable scheme for uniting the colonies, and was chiefly instrumental in causing the repeal of the Stamp Act. He took a leading part in concluding the peace which ended the Revolution, and

in the labors of the convention which framed the Constitution. He died at the age of eighty-four.

175. **James Otis**, the fervid orator of Massachusetts, was the first man to assert before a supreme court the doctrine of the right of the colonies to absolute freedom of trade under self-imposed laws. He was the earliest leader of the Revolutionary party in Massachusetts. He made a masterly argument against the "Writs of Assistance," and was largely instrumental in securing their repeal.

He became the Father of Congress by first proposing to call a convention of the colonies without asking consent of the king. He issued a radical treatise entitled, "Rights of the British Colonies." He died just before the Revolution, by a stroke of lightning, at the age of forty-nine.



PATRICK HENRY.

176. **Patrick Henry**, of Virginia, was the twin spirit of Otis. The early part of his life was spent in struggles with poverty; but he made up for his early disadvantages by subsequent study. His first case in law won him fame. His vigorous argument in the House of Burgesses secured the opposition of the colonies to the Stamp Act. He is represented as having possessed extraordinary powers of oratory, and he was every where regarded as the champion of colonial liberty.

CHAPTER V.

CAUSES OF THE REVOLUTION.

177. The *attachment of the colonies* to the mother country was deep and sincere. They believed in the justice of English sentiment, and had no thought but of submission to the king and the laws. Even after they had raised armies and begun to fight, the Continental Con-

gress said, "We have not raised armies with the ambitious design of separating from Great Britain and establishing independent States."

178. But the *destiny of America* was a separate national existence. Numerous influences were at work to produce this result much sooner than the most far-seeing statesman would have predicted.

179. *First*, the very origin of the colonies indicated independence as their birthright.

180. *Second*, their isolation from the parent country forbade European control of the continent.

181. *Third*, the misconduct of the royal governors, and the obstinacy of the English king, made the people suspicious of arbitrary power.

182. *Fourth*, the anti-monarchical institutions, the marked absence of class-legislation, the consciousness of capacity for self-government, and the opinions of a self-reliant people concerning political liberty — all pointed to independence as the natural condition of the colonies.

183. These were the *real causes of the Revolution*.

184. *The immediate occasion* of that struggle was the passage of several acts by Parliament, supposed to be destructive of liberty. These extended over a period of twelve years just preceding the outbreak, and related to the collection of money by taxation.

185. *The policy of England* was to make all her colonies a source of revenue. An English statesman declared in Parliament that this was the very purpose for which they were planted. With this view, the treatment of the American colonies was, from the first, rather severe, though far less so than the oppression of English colonies in other parts of the world, as India and Ireland.

The idea prevailed that if one nation became wealthy another must become poor, that what one gained another lost, and that it was necessary to enact laws to secure the prosperity of England.

186. To secure the *execution of this policy*, the Navigation Act had been passed by Parliament to restrict the commerce of other nations, over a century before this time — 1651. Other Acts followed: one placing a heavy tax on sugar, molasses, and rum imported into the country; another, forbidding the erection of iron works; another, prohibiting the manufacture of steel and other articles which would compete with the English products in the markets of the world.

In the land of the beaver no hats could be made, as, it was argued, America would soon supply the whole world with hats. In a land of abundant mineral wealth it was forbidden “to make even a nail for a horse-shoe.” In a country where every family read the Scriptures, no English Bible could be printed without committing piracy.

The object of all this was to secure an American market for English goods at a high price, and an English market for American goods at a low price.

187. But such laws could never be carried into effect. They were simply disregarded and ignored. To aid the officers in finding smuggled goods, Parliament authorized a kind of search-warrant called *Writs of Assistance*. They gave command to the constables to enter houses to search for and seize goods suspected of having evaded the duty. These acts created much excitement in the colonies.

188. *The essential point* in the difficulty was that America was not represented in the British Parliament. It should be remembered that at this time it was not the custom with the European nations to permit the representation of their colonies in their law-making assemblies. The colonists were willing to pay taxes only on condition that they should have a voice in the government.

“*No taxation without representation*,” was the pithy and popular motto of the times. When the colonies were called upon to pay a still greater portion of the expense of the French War, which had added three hundred million dollars to the English debt, the colonial legislatures declared that

their losses and expenses in the struggle were already as great as they could bear.

189. Nevertheless the *Stamp Act* passed Parliament by a vote of five to one. It provided that all legal documents, almanacs, pamphlets, newspapers, and advertisements should be written or printed on paper bearing an English stamp, and furnished by the British government at high prices.

The sum demanded for each sheet varied from a half-penny to six pounds. This would prove a heavy tax on business. As some compensation to the colonies for the stamp duties, provision was made for allowing the exportation of American lumber to all the ports of Europe.

190. *The Quartering Act* was passed about the same time. It provided that a standing army should be sent to America, and that the people should provide bedding, firewood, drink, soap, and candles, for the soldiers. It was a new thing to see soldiers among the colonists in times of peace, and it was regarded by them as a menace. Their very presence was, under the circumstances, hateful and irritating.

191. The *feeling of the colonists* on the passage of these measures, was one of sorrow and anger. Franklin, who was then in England, using his influence to prevent their adoption, wrote home: "The sun of liberty is set; you must light up the candles of industry and economy." Serious alarm was excited from one end of the country to the other.

192. Several of the *colonial legislatures* passed strong resolutions denouncing the Acts. In Virginia, after waiting several days in vain for the older members to speak, Patrick Henry, "alone, unadvised, unassisted," jotted down five resolutions on the fly-leaf of an old law book, read them, and, in a speech of thrilling eloquence, so ably defended them, that they passed the House. They were cautiously circulated, till they reached New England, where they were fearlessly published in the newspapers. Speeches,

pamphlets, and sermons, against the odious measures, increased the popular excitement.

193. The *Sons and Daughters of Liberty* were the names of organizations which had their origin in these patriotic times. The Daughters pledged themselves to buy no goods imported from England. They formed spinning societies, and wove all the cloth used in the families. At one spinning match a company of school-girls produced two hundred and thirty skeins of yarn as the result of the afternoon's labor.

The Sons made it their special business to frighten and drive away stamp officers. In some of the colonies these officials were compelled to resign, and the stamps were seized and burned.

194. *Political Parties* were now formed for the first time in our country. Two great parties, Whigs and Tories, appeared. The Whigs were advocates of popular freedom, and even encouraged resistance to the laws of Parliament.

The Tories were upholders of Parliamentary authority, and believed that the true interests of the country demanded a cheerful obedience to the commands of England.

195. The excitement resulted in the meeting of the *First Colonial Congress*, which assembled in New York in 1765. It was not a numerous body, being composed of only twenty-eight delegates from nine of the colonies; but it was an imposing assembly, embracing the foremost men in the country. It remained in session only fourteen days; but it prepared three official papers whose spirit and principles were unmistakable. The first was a Declaration of Rights; the second, a Memorial to Parliament; the third, a Petition to the King.

These documents expressed attachment to the government of the parent country, urged the injustice of being taxed and at the same time unrepresented, and maintained that the advantage derived by England from the monopoly

of the American trade was a sufficient contribution from the colonies to her treasury.

196. The *American merchants* resolved to import no more goods till the measures were repealed. Associations were formed for the encouragement of manufactures, and the people very generally agreed to wear garments made only of American cloth. The most wealthy men and women clothed themselves in homespun goods. There was no market for foreign luxuries, and the trade with England was nearly discontinued. The very children echoed the cry, "Liberty, property, and no stamps!"

197. Of course *the sale of stamps* was very slow. To avoid using them, proceedings in the courts were suspended, and differences were wisely settled by arbitration. Society was at a standstill. The stamp officers were nowhere to be found; no stamps were on sale; the royal governors did not dare to attempt the execution of the law; and the Act never went into effect during the twelve months of its existence on the statute books of England.

198. This opposition created great surprise and *alarm in England*. The law was just such as has existed in England for several generations. It was such a law as has since been imposed in America by vote of the people. The colonists objected because it involved a principle. The British merchants, seeing their trade ruined, petitioned for a repeal. The friends of America were very numerous in England, and they strongly urged the same thing. William Pitt and Edmund Burke, two eminent statesmen, were advocates of the repeal. These efforts were successful. The joy in both countries was excessive and demonstrative. Good feeling revived and trade was resumed.

199. A great *change in sentiment* had taken place in the colonies concerning taxation. Before this the people had not objected to external taxation, as duties on imports, but only to internal taxation, as was imposed by the Stamp Act. They now objected to *all* taxation, basing their argument on their non-representation in Parliament.

200. The *right of taxation* had not been relinquished. The historian says: "Wise princes, when forced to yield, do it with a grace that wins the populace." This could never have been said of King George and his party, for when repealing the Stamp Act, it had been explicitly declared that Parliament had a right to bind the colonies in all cases whatsoever. This "right" was the very thing objected to. It was pithily said by John Adams, "The right to take one pound implies the right to take a thousand."

201. *Another Act* was soon passed, laying a tax on tea, paints, lead, glass, and paper. The duty was soon removed from every thing except tea. Although the tax on this was reduced to six cents a pound, the sales of tea fell off, the non-importation societies were formed again, and the old spirit of resistance was aroused.

202. The history of the colonies for the *next eight years* may be summed up in the passage of odious measures by Parliament, and remonstrance and evasion by the colonies.

203. *The first blood* of the impending struggle was shed in New York. A riot occurred because the soldiers had cut down a liberty pole. One citizen was killed and several were wounded.

204. Although the *importation of tea* was discontinued by the people, British merchants sent it at their own risk. In New York and Philadelphia the tea ships were not allowed to land their cargoes. In Charleston the tea was stored in damp cellars until it became worthless.

In Boston, forty citizens, disguised as Indians, very quietly proceeded to the ship, broke open three hundred and forty chests of tea, and, in the presence of a large crowd, emptied their contents into the sea. As soon as the news of this audacious proceeding reached England, an Act was passed closing Boston port. These were the sad times of violence and retaliation.

205. The *Second Colonial Congress* soon after met in Philadelphia, composed of delegates from all the

colonies except Georgia, where the governor prevented their appointment. It was the most important body which had ever assembled in America. It had authority to act for the colonies even to the declaration of war. It issued addresses to the king, to the English nation, and to the people of Canada. It reaffirmed the sentiment of non-importation of English goods, voted to encourage domestic manufactures, and resolved to remain in session from time to time till the odious measures were repealed.

206. It was evident that a *crisis* was *approaching*. For several years British soldiers had been stationed at various places; and now the British General Gage seized the military stores in the provincial arsenals, and fortified advantageous positions near Boston. Parliament voted that a rebellion existed in Massachusetts and was encouraged by the other colonies. Ten thousand more troops were ordered to America.

207. The *preparation in the colonies* was active. In Massachusetts a committee of safety was appointed, and the volunteer militia were ordered to train and be ready to march on a minute's notice. Twenty thousand pounds were voted to pay for their equipment. In Virginia Washington was organizing the militia, and Patrick Henry was exclaiming, "I repeat it, we must fight!"

208. *The Tories* loved their country as truly as the advocates of resistance. They were generally the rich and prosperous men, and those who held office under the British government. They believed that the colonies were too weak to oppose England, and that it would be better to submit than to resist. Many of them, with tearful eyes, tried to persuade the Whigs to listen to reason. Their opinions were at first opposed by argument; they then became unpopular and hateful; and finally were regarded as treason. Many of these Tories afterward changed their opinions; others went to England and the other British provinces; others joined the royal armies to fight against their country.

209. The Tories rightly said that the *resolve of King George* was to make the colonies submit. It was the old contest of argument against obstinacy. It was popular aspirations against kingly pride. Neither the moderation of Congress, nor the diplomacy of Franklin, nor the forbearance of the people, nor the statesmanship of Pitt and his associates, could avert the determination of the king and his party to coerce the colonies. Sorrowfully and prophetically Washington wrote: "More blood will be shed than history has yet furnished instances of in the annals of North America."

CHAPTER VI.

THE REVOLUTION.

1775.

210. The *opening of hostilities* soon followed. One midnight a regiment of British soldiers was ordered by General Gage to destroy some military stores collected at Concord, a small town near Boston. The design was anticipated by the wary colonists, and a light was raised in the belfry of the old North Church as a signal to the surrounding country. Swift messengers rode all night, arousing village and farm house for miles around. Longfellow's poem, "Paul Revere's Ride," was founded on this incident.

211. *At Lexington* the troops found a party of minute-men collected on a green. "Disperse, ye rebels," cried the leader of the British. No one moving, he ordered his men to fire. Seven of the patriots were killed and nine were wounded.

The troops then marched to Concord, destroyed such stores as could be found, threw a small quantity of ammunition into a mill-pond, and began a retreat. The minute-men were pouring in from all quarters, and the retreat soon became a rout. Hidden behind trees, rocks, fences, and barns, the provincial soldiers poured in a constant fire upon

the ranks of the running enemy. This bush-fighting and chase continued till the panting regulars found refuge in Boston.

The losses in this memorable skirmish were small, the Americans losing eighty-eight, and the British two hundred and seventy-three ; but the significance of the event could not be measured by the number who fell. *It meant American Independence.*

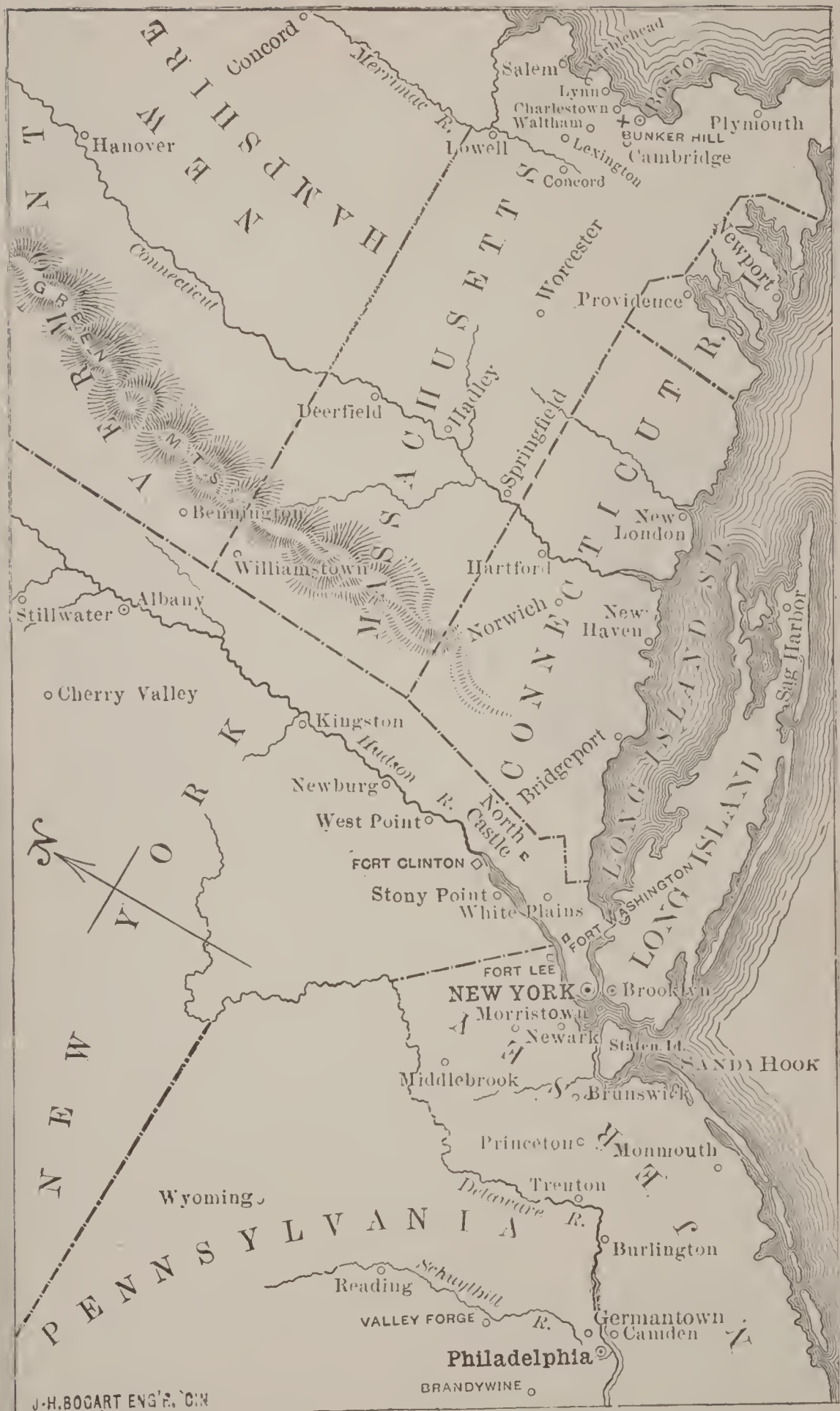
212. *The effect* was great and immediate. As the news flew through the colonies a tide of aroused men poured to the seat of war. Horses were taken from the field and mounted by men who rode them till they dropped dead, and within a few days twenty thousand provincial soldiers had invested Boston.

213. As another result of the startling news from Lexington, the *Mecklenburg Declaration* was passed by delegates from the various counties of North Carolina assembled at Charlotte, in Mecklenburg County. It was a declaration of independence, and preceded the Declaration at Philadelphia more than a year.

214. *Fresh arrivals* of British troops under Generals Howe, Clinton, and Burgoyne, placed twelve thousand veterans at the command of Gage. He resolved on active operations.

215. The *Battle of Bunker Hill* soon followed. In order to stop the land outlet from Boston, fifteen hundred New England troops under General Prescott one night silently fortified the high ground in the rear of Charlestown. Having fired this place, the British made two assaults, which were severely repulsed. At the third attack, the ammunition of the Americans gave out, and the enemy carried the rude line of defences. Bunker Hill became a dearly bought English victory. The battle was witnessed by thousands of people from the house-tops of Boston and from burning Charlestown.

216. The *Third Colonial Congress* met in Philadelphia according to previous agreement, and by common



consent assumed authority to act in all cases for "The United Colonies." It passed resolutions declaring a strong desire for peace, and denying a wish to throw off allegiance to England. At the same time it voted that the colonies should be prepared for war, and would never submit to taxation without representation. It voted to raise and equip an army of twenty thousand men, and authorized an issue of one million dollars in paper money.

217. John Adams made a powerful address on the *choice of a commander-in-chief*, and closed by



nominating George Washington, of Virginia. As soon as his name was mentioned, Washington arose and left the hall. He was overpowered by the responsibility about to be placed upon him, and, with tears in his eyes, he remarked to Patrick Henry, "I fear this day will mark the downfall of my reputation."

218. Washington entered at once upon the *discharge of his duties*. His journey to Boston was

one continued ovation: every where he was greeted with cheers and benedictions. He reached the seat of war two weeks after the battle of Bunker Hill, and next morning took command. He found fifteen thousand undisciplined, insubordinate, and poorly equipped militia, encamped on Cambridge common. Some degree of system and regularity was soon introduced, and arrangements were made for the manufacture of gunpowder. Several ships laden with this article and intended for the British army, were soon after captured, affording a seasonable supply to the colonial troops.

219. *Four Major Generals* were appointed to aid Washington. The first was Artemas Ward, one of Massachusetts's favorite soldiers. The second was Charles Lee, of Virginia, a man possessing brilliant but superficial quali-

ties, enjoying the society of British officers, and without much love for liberty or the cause of his country. The third, Philip Schuyler, of New York, was a man of patriotism, but without military qualities or experience. The fourth was Israel Putnam, of Connecticut, whose adventures and dashing career had won him a reputation for bravery. Horatio Gates was chosen Adjutant General. "The colonies took up arms with only one general officer who drew to himself the love and trust of the country, with not one of the next five below him fit to give him efficient aid or to succeed to his place."

220. *The difficulties* to be surmounted were appalling. They were of two kinds :

First. In the colonial army there was no lack of valor, of patriotism, and, at first, of men. But the enthusiastic multitudes who rushed to the contest, although intelligent men and good marksmen, were ignorant of field movements and the whole art of war. They were to resist a disciplined force largely superior in numbers and trained on the battle-fields of Europe by the best generals of the age.

Second. The authority of Washington was greatly restricted. He could not choose his subordinate officers, he was dependent upon voluntary enlistments for his troops, and Congress more than once interfered with his plans. The colonies were not accustomed to unity of action. They were only united in the common impulse to resistance. The habit of subordination and the unquestioning obedience so necessary in war, were new.

From this source sprang those sad and almost fatal conflicts of authority which were continually arising. It is not at all strange that the friends of popular freedom in Europe regarded the issue with doubt, and welcomed success as an unexpected triumph.

221. An *invasion of Canada* was first planned to prevent a union of the British forces there with those on the coast. It was intrusted to Generals Richard Montgomery and Benedict Arnold. After a march of great

difficulty, Montreal was taken. An attack on Quebec was repulsed with heavy loss, including Montgomery. The remnant spent a miserable winter in fortifications of snow. When spring came they were driven back to the colonies. The expedition was a total failure.

222. *A postal system* was adopted by Congress during the third session, and Benjamin Franklin was re-appointed Postmaster General, with power to appoint deputies to carry mails from Maine to Georgia, with as many cross lines as might seem fit. He made a grand tour of the country in a chaise, maturing the plan. It took five months to make the trip, which could now be accomplished in as many days. This was the beginning of the mail service of the nation.

223. Each of the three Colonial Congresses had addressed petitions to their monarch, and now, for six months, Congress had been waiting for *the answer of King George* to their third and last appeal. There sat John Adams, Samuel Adams, Franklin, Patrick Henry, and Jefferson. The colonies were still loyal to the British Crown. It was a time of hesitancy and uncertainty.

At last the message came. It was such a reply as George III and his party would make to the petitions for human rights. He did not know any such a body as the Colonial Congress. He insisted on the right of taxation, spurned the idea of representation, and demanded disarmament and submission. Unconditional submission was the only passport to his favor. Congress and the nation saw that *the day of independence had come*.

REVIEW.

CHAPTER I.

Two great Charters issued by King James.—Jamestown is founded by a party of “gentlemen.”—They take the gold fever.—John Smith sets them to work.—Tobacco culture begins.—Slaves needed and bought to till the fields.—The young women come to make homes

for the colonists.—The people troubled by Indian massacres.—The Virginians pass some strange laws.

The Puritans come to Massachusetts.—They suffer greatly.—They are welcomed by the Indians.—Are very strict in religion.—Roger Williams makes trouble in the church.—Anne Hutchinson reasons well and is driven away.—The Quakers are persecuted.—Finally King Philip's War throws New England into alarm.—But the Indians are exterminated in the Swamp Fight.—The ministers quarrel, and Salem hangs twenty witches.

The Dutch found New York.—They set up the Patroons.—The English take possession in spite of Headstrong Peter.—The Negro Plot creates a panic.

New Hampshire finally becomes able to take care of itself.

The Catholics find an asylum in Maryland.—Its advancement is very rapid.—Till its affairs are deranged by religious quarrels.

Massachusetts sends out a colony to Connecticut.—Who are obliged soon after to wage the Pequod War.—They then live in peace.

Williams and his friends settle at Providence.—They set up the first democracy in America.

The Grand Model is tried in Carolina.—Rice is first cultivated.—The colony is finally divided.

The English found New Jersey.—It soon becomes a Quaker colony.—And has a peaceful career.

William Penn founds Pennsylvania.—He keeps peace with the Indians.—And the colony grows rapidly.

Delaware finally separates from Pennsylvania.

Oglethorpe brings a colony of paupers to Georgia.—And manages its affairs for ten years.—He prohibits slavery and rum.

The colonies furnish examples of five kinds of colonial government.

The period of colonial foundation varies from six months to sixty years.

CHAPTER II.

The rate of settlements is hindered.—Slavery flourishes in all the colonies.—The Indians are harshly treated from the beginning.—This produces endless trouble and bloodshed.—John Eliot, the Indian apostle, organizes thirty churches among them.—The character of the Puritans delineated.—The public-school system is founded.—Form of church service described.—Examples of the Blue Laws.—A lazy farmer greatly stimulates agriculture.—Character of the colonial productions.—The colonies use many kinds of money.—Their simple mode of life.—The people feel the weight of British oppression.—Whitefield and Wesley visit the colonies.

CHAPTER III.

Five powers struggle for America.—The war is caused by the rivaling claims.—Washington appears in history.—The colonies unite in the war.—The first year ends in failure.—The second does not better affairs.—The third results in some success.—And the fourth ends the war to the satisfaction of England and her colonies.—It becomes a training school for the Revolution.

CHAPTER IV.

During the interval the people study politics.—And begin to think of uniting in one government.—Sketch of progress in agriculture.—Origin of the cotton culture.—Sketch of colonial manufactures.—Postal accommodations.—Dress of the New Englander.—Introduction of new customs.—Freedom of the press is established.—Progress in printing.—Education flourishes in New England and languishes in the southern colonies.—Sketch of the nine colonial colleges.—Colonial libraries.—Sketch of Jonathan Edwards.—Of Benjamin Franklin.—Of James Otis.—Of Patrick Henry.

CHAPTER V.

The real causes of the Revolution enumerated.—Scope and effect of the Navigation Acts.—The Writs of Assistance give offense to the colonies.—The Stamp Act and the Quartering Act increase this feeling.—Patrick Henry makes a sensation in Virginia.—Political parties are first formed.—Acts of the First Colonial Congress.—Non-importation societies are formed.—The sale of stamps is very slow.—The act is repealed.—But a tax is placed 'on tea.—Boston has a tea party.—Convention of the Second Colonial Congress.—The colonies prepare for war.—What the Tories thought.—King George is evidently intent on crushing resistance.

CHAPTER VI.

Hostilities open at Lexington.—Whereat there is a great uprising.—And independence is declared in Carolina.—Battle of Bunker Hill is fought.—The Third Colonial Congress chooses Washington as commander.—He is assisted by four major-generals.—The soldiers are brave but undisciplined.—Montgomery and Arnold invade Canada.—The reply of the English king puts aside all idea of peace.

TABLE OF CONTEMPORARY EVENTS IN
EUROPEAN HISTORY.

1607-1776.

In Europe this was *a period of reaction*. There was a backward movement in both religion and government. The grand and successful struggle for republican freedom in the Netherlands was followed by the pitiless tyranny of the House of the Hapsburgs. The constitutional government of Queen Elizabeth, conceding important popular rights, was followed by the despotic reign of the Stuarts, in Great Britain. The long battle for religious freedom in France, ending in triumph with the Edict of Nantes, was followed by the intense absolutism of Richelieu and Mazarin. The Reformation had succeeded throughout Europe, except in Spain and Italy, where the Inquisition crushed out reform. But in the midst of its success Protestantism began to fall into formalism and to split into opposing factions. "Reformers sought the corrupting alliances of the state, and religion was made subordinate to politics."

On the other hand, there was an era of splendid intellectual progress. Bacon, Descartes, Locke, and Montesquieu in philosophy; Galileo, Kepler, Newton, and Leibnitz in physical science; Shakespeare, Milton, Johnson, Rollin, Racine, and Corneille in literature; and Jansenius, Pascal, Fenelon, Fox, Bunyan, Wesley, and Whitefield in divinity, pushed the sphere of knowledge far beyond the range of ancient thought, and prepared the way for still grander achievements in our own century.

In America the period was one of steady progress. The reactions and oppressions of Europe drove out many liberty-loving souls, who found here the freedom denied them beyond the Atlantic. "It was as if God, having matured the seed for a new civilization, had now permitted it to be rudely shaken from the European tree." During

this long period, as we have seen, the Atlantic coast was being lined with happy and growing colonies, eventually to be moulded into nationality.

- 1610. The thermometer invented in Germany by Drebel.
- 1611. Completion of the authorized version of the Bible by order of King James.
- 1616. William Shakespeare, the great dramatic poet.
- 1618. Sir Walter Raleigh beheaded. Beginning of the Thirty Years' War.
- 1626. Death of Francis Bacon, philosopher. His writings changed the current of human thought.
- 1628. The circulation of the blood discovered in England by Harvey.
- 1631. First French journal—the Gazette of France.
- 1640. The Long Parliament convened in England. Charles's reign was one long battle with his subjects.
- 1641. Coffee first brought to England.
- 1648. The Peace of Westphalia readjusted the map of Europe, ended the Thirty Years' War, and first promulgated the doctrine of "the balance of power," which became the basis of modern European politics.
- 1649. Execution of Charles I.
- 1650. Sect of Friends, or "Quakers," founded in England by George Fox.
- 1654. The air-pump and electrical machine invented in Germany by Guericke.
- 1660. Founding of the Royal Society in London, and the Academy of Arts in Paris.
- 1665. The Plague in London carried off 100,000 victims.
- 1666. A great fire in London laid waste two-thirds of the city. Tea first used in England.
- 1679. Habeas Corpus Act passed in England to protect citizens against illegal imprisonment.
- 1683. Discovery of the supposed Rye House Plot for the assassination of King Charles II.

1684. Rise of the two great parties in England, the Whigs and the Tories. The former was the party of popular liberty, denying the divine right of kings. Tories were the supporters of kingly authority. The contest between them was long and bitter.
1685. The Revocation of the Edict of Nantes let loose fresh terrors of persecution upon the French Protestants.
1694. Bank of England established.
1707. England and Scotland united under the title of Great Britain.
1720. Bursting of the South Sea Bubble.
1725. Stereotype printing invented by Ged, a goldsmith of Edinburgh.
1727. Death of Sir Isaac Newton, the great physical philosopher, who founded the modern system of philosophy and physics.
1729. Sect of the Methodists founded at Oxford by the Wesleys.
1753. British Museum founded.
1757. Lord Clive took Calcutta and laid the foundation of the English empire in India.
1763. End of the Seven Years' War.
1769. Invention of the spinning-jenny by Arkwright.
1770. Lord North became prime minister of England. He was the ready servant of George III.

PERIOD IV.

NATIONALITY.

FROM THE DECLARATION OF INDEPENDENCE TO THE
PRESENT TIME,

1776-1878

[AUTHORITIES AND REFERENCES.—Hildreth's "History United States" to 1820.—Bryant and Gay's "History United States" to 1878.—Lossing's "Field-Book of the Revolution."—Wilson's "Rise and Fall of the Slave Power."—Parton's "Jefferson," "Burr," "Greeley," "Franklin," and "Jackson."—Lossing's "Field-Book of the War of 1812."—Benton's "Thirty Years' View."—Mayer's "History of the Mexican War."—Moore's "Rebellion Record."—Greeley's "American Conflict."—Pollard's "Lost Cause."—Thayer's "Youth's History of the Rebellion."—Duyckinck's "American Literature."—Bancroft's "History U. S." to close of Revolution.—Appleton's, Johnson's and Chamber's Cyclopedias.—For the English view of the Revolution, see Stanhope's "History of England from Peace of Utrecht."—Irving's "Washington."—Parker's "Historie Americans."—Adams's "Life of John Adams," and "John Adams's Diary."—Spark's "American Biography."—Cooper's "History of the Navy."—Griswold's "Court of Washington."—Giddings's "Exiles of Florida."—Webb's and Redpath's "John Brown."—Dunlop's "History of Art and Design in America."—"Lewis and Clarke's Expedition."—Pierce's "Charles Sumner."—Draper's "American Civil War."—Story, Towle, or Alden on Constitution of the U. S.—Renwick's "Hamilton."—Rives's "Madison."—Mansfield's "Scott."—Colden's "Fulton."—Jenkins's "Calhoun."—Sargent's "Clay."—Curtis's "Webster."—Powell's "Taylor."—Hall's or Dawson's "Harrison."—Chase's "Administration of Polk."—Stowe's "Men of our Time."—Holland's and Raymond's "Lincoln."—Adams's "Life of J. Q. Adams."]

CHAPTER I.

INDEPENDENCE AND REVOLUTION.

1776.

1. It is important to understand the nature of the *Revolutionary government*. The Second Colonial Congress had resolved to remain in session, from time to time, till the odious measures were repealed. This was done. Delegates to Congress were voluntarily chosen by the colonies, some by the legislatures, and some by the people, and this irregular association of the States consti-

tuted the national government till near the close of the Revolution. The powers of Congress were nowhere defined or limited. It did whatever seemed best, and its acts were approved by the people. Of necessity it assumed arbitrary and revolutionary powers.

2. *The idea of independence* was of very slow growth. More than ten years had elapsed from the passage of the Stamp Act to the Declaration. It was not till blood had been shed at Lexington and Bunker Hill, that the popular mind welcomed separation from England. Thousands of additional troops and millions of money were voted by Parliament to crush the rebellion of the colonies. The people urged the general assemblies, and the legislatures urged Congress, to assert Independence.

3. *A Resolution* offered in Congress by Richard Henry Lee, on the 7th of June, embraced three subjects — a declaration of independence, a confederation of the States, and treaties with foreign powers. It was in the following words :

“Resolved, that the United Colonies are, and of right ought to be, free and independent States; that they are absolved from all allegiance to the British Crown; and that all political connection between them and Great Britain is, and ought to be, totally dissolved. That it is expedient forthwith to take the most effective measures for forming foreign alliances. That a plan of Confederation be proposed and transmitted to the respective colonies for their consideration and approbation.”

4. It was known that *Congress was not prepared* to vote such a radical sentiment. Many in that brave assembly could see nothing but calamity in declaring a separation from England. Beside, every man knew that in voting for it he was risking a swing on the gallows.

Congress sat with closed doors, and no report has ever been made of the grave and exciting debate during the time the resolution was pending. Not a single speech then delivered is now in existence; but the arguments in

favor of independence prevailed, and many doubters were convinced.

5. Meanwhile a committee of five was appointed to prepare a *formal declaration*, and be ready to report when Lee's resolution was brought up for the vote. Thomas Jefferson was made chairman, and the special labor of preparing the paper fell upon him. The original resolution was made the order for the 1st of July. The debate continued during the 2d, the 3d, and till five o'clock on the 4th of July. The Declaration of American Independence from the pen of Jefferson was then passed, with a few additions and erasures, by a unanimous vote. It still remained for the Thirteen Colonies to make good their claim of sovereignty by the labors of camp and court.

6. The *reception of the Declaration* was most cordial. It was commended by the general assemblies, cheered by every brigade in the army, welcomed by the people, and praised by the friends of freedom in Europe. "It was received more like a song of triumph than a call to battle." Its effect was to give a definite aim to the war, and to greatly increase the interest in the cause.

7. *Its reception in England* was very different. Parliament pronounced the Americans rebels and outlaws, prohibited all intercourse with them, ignored their civil existence, and placed the entire country under military law. All American ports were declared closed, and imprisonments, and irons, were to be the fate of all those taken in arms.

8. The *British forces* in the war were drawn from three sources:

First. Troops were voted for service in America to be taken from the standing army of England, and to be enrolled by voluntary enlistment.

Second. By a treaty with one or two small German States, seventeen thousand Hessians were hired to come across the Atlantic to fight in America.

Third. The English relied upon making allies of the

Indians. By the influence of British gold they were very successful, and the barbarous mode of warfare thus inaugurated was persisted in to the very end.

9. The *campaigns of the year* were three in number: The Siege of Boston; the Siege of Charleston; and Washington's operations in New York and New Jersey.

10. *The first* was successful. The British army had spent the winter, close prisoners, in Boston. With a view of forcing the enemy into battle or driving him out to sea, Washington fortified, one night, the heights commanding the city. The English general saw his danger. He hastily lifted his anchors and spread his sails for Halifax.

11. *The second* was favorable to the Americans. A British fleet attacked Charleston and its defenses. After a long bombardment the attempt was given up.

12. *The third* was a failure. Howe, who had superseded Gage, returned from Halifax to New York with largely increased forces. He now had thirty thousand men. General Putnam was sent to resist the advance to Brooklyn. The *Battle of Long Island* was fought, in which the Americans were defeated, with a loss of nearly two thousand.

13. The *retreat of Washington* was very skillfully managed. During a foggy night he silently withdrew his army to New York, thence northward, followed by the enemy. As soon as he saw Howe's plan to threaten Philadelphia, where Congress was sitting, he left seven thousand men under Lee, and retreated southward. The British, with heavy loss, took Forts Washington and Mifflin on the Hudson, and then a well-appointed detachment under Lord Charles Cornwallis, the ablest British general who took part in the war, started in pursuit of Washington.

14. On Christmas night Washington crossed the Delaware, marched to *Trenton*, and surprised a body of Hessians, who were sleeping off the effects of their holiday debauch. He took a thousand prisoners. A few days afterward, by a brilliant dash to the rear of Cornwallis's

army, he defeated a regiment at Princeton, and came off loaded with prisoners and military stores.

These sudden strokes were the only successes attending the operations of this critical time. They strengthened the Americans for future battle; they reversed the judgment of foreign nations on the prospects of success, and made it easier to gain allies to the patriot cause. They showed Washington to be a brave yet prudent general, and secured the confidence of the nation.

15. But the *result of the campaigns*, in most respects, was very unfavorable to the cause of independence. Beside the losses in battle, the soldiers were poorly fed and clothed, and large numbers, being discouraged by continual retreat, and allured by the pleasures of home, deserted the army. By the expiration of the term of enlistment many regiments were disbanded at the very time when their services were most needed. Questions of rank and precedence were continually arising, and no vigorous measures were taken by Congress to equip a force able to resist the attack of a single hostile division.

The flight of Congress from Philadelphia to Baltimore, at the approach of the British, had a very depressing effect. The paper money issued by Congress had so far depreciated that it was no longer acceptable as pay to the soldiers, and Washington, with other leading patriots, pledged his private fortune to raise specie to pay the suffering troops.

16. The *prisoners* taken by the British were carried to New York, and placed in loathsome prison-ships in the harbor, where they experienced intense suffering from want of fire, clothing, food, and medicine. Large numbers died in captivity, when they might have had freedom by accepting the pardon offered by the British commander and joining the royal party. These sufferings resulted partly from inhuman treatment, but chiefly from the neglect and rigor which is always a part of war. After Washington's victories in New Jersey it was agreed to exchange prisoners, man for man.

17. Washington's army went into *winter quarters* at Morristown. The British spent the winter at New Brunswick.

1777.

18. *The powers of Washington* were greatly enlarged by Congress during the winter. He had shown himself to be the proper man for the supreme command, and he was authorized to enlist men from the entire country. He could displace all incompetent officers and appoint new ones to the rank of brigadier general. He could arrest troublesome persons, and take supplies for the use of the army at a just valuation. He thus became in fact, what he had been only in name, Commander-in-Chief.

19. He was busily engaged, *during the winter*, in recruiting his army, and when spring came he had ten thousand men in his command. "Good news from the Jerseys," became an inspiring proverb. The timid became brave, and from all quarters armed men came flocking in.

The British ceased to sneer about the "mob of un-uniformed rebels," and began to dread the man who could play about and outgeneral their best commanders. British officers, who were held as prisoners in the American camp, wrote home: "It will be hard — yes, impossible — to conquer such men." Frederick the Great, of Prussia, said: "This young American general is opening a new chapter in the art of war. England has no man to match him."

20. During the winter session of the legislatures *State Constitutions* were adopted in all the States. These differed greatly, but they all embraced the essential principles of a republican form of government.

21. *Washington's policy* was now fully developed. He did not risk a battle in an open field, with a force superior to his own, where defeat would be ruinous, but he harassed the enemy by unexpected attacks, flank movements, countermarches, and ambuscades. In this he imitated the ancient Roman general, Fabius. He was therefore called the American Fabius.

22. The *campaigns of the year* were two in number: The invasion of northern New York by the British; and the operations of Washington in New Jersey and Pennsylvania.

23. *The former* was a brilliant success for the Americans. With a force of ten thousand the British general, Charles Burgoyne, invaded New York from Canada, with a view of holding the Hudson River, and thus separating New England from the Middle States. The Americans under General Gates fell back, abandoning their stores and fortified places, felling trees, and burning bridges, behind them.

24. Meanwhile a body of British, sent to destroy stores at *Bennington*, was totally defeated by a regiment of militia under the dashing, rough-and-ready Colonel John Stark. A saying of his, as he dashed into the battle, has become quite famous: "Boys, we conquer to-day, or Betsy Stark is a widow."*

On the same day another body was defeated by Colonel Seth Warner and his "Green Mountain Boys." Congress passed a vote of thanks to the soldiers thus engaged, and made Stark a brigadier general in the regular army.

25. A general engagement soon came on at *Stillwater*. The army of Gates was in excellent condition, and was the strongest American force ever collected in one command during the Revolution. The battle was severe, and both sides claimed the victory. Night closed the fight; and for two weeks the armies lay within cannon shot of each other.

26. The *second battle of Stillwater* then followed. Burgoyne fought bravely against superior numbers, but was every where repulsed. His personal bravery amounted almost to recklessness. After spending several days in attempts to escape, he surrendered his army, numbering six thousand men, beside seven thousand stand of arms, a fine train of artillery, and a large supply of tents,

* Stark's wife was named Elizabeth, and not Mary, or Mollie, as has been so often stated. She was the daughter of Caleb Page, and married Stark Aug. 20 1758.

clothing, and other stores. These were greatly needed by the Americans.

27. *The latter* was a total failure. Howe left his quarters at Brunswick with eighteen thousand men, and, embarking in his transports, sailed up the Chesapeake Bay. Washington anticipated his design, and went to the defense of the national capital. It was insisted by members of Congress that Washington should risk a general engagement. He therefore proceeded southward to *Brandywine* creek, where the armies met, and a battle was fought. The Americans were defeated with a loss of twelve hundred, and their retreat left the road open to Philadelphia. Congress adjourned to York, carrying all the public records, and the British marched into the city.

28. Soon afterward Washington formed a design to attack a portion of Howe's army stationed at *German-town*. After a stubborn contest, the Americans were again defeated, with about the same loss as before.

29. *The success of Howe* had cost dearly in time and men. It required all summer to take the capital, and he was detained a whole month, in a march of fifty miles, by the ceaseless strategy of Washington. He clearly saw that his tardy success would cost him his commission as commander-in-chief.

30. The armies now went into *winter quarters* — Howe at Philadelphia, and Washington at Valley Forge.

31. The *effect of the campaigns* was very marked. With the patriots the feeling was rather one of confidence, though good fortune and bad had been so evenly mixed. The Tories, who had been loud and numerous in the spring, now became silent and dejected. Men began to treat Toryism, not as a mere opinion, but as treason. In Europe, public indignation was aroused against the barbarous policy of forcing German peasants into the British service, to fight in a foreign land. Because France and Spain hated England, their sympathies were strongly enlisted in favor of independence.

32. The *Liberal Party in England*, although saddened at the slaughter of their countrymen, acknowledged a strong sympathy for the Americans. In a speech on the war, the Earl of Chatham uttered the memorable words: "If I were an American as I am an Englishman, while a single foreign troop remained in my country, I would never lay down my arms; never, never, never." Burke plead for "an agreement with the Americans on the best terms we can make." Fox said, "I do not fear the consequences of their independence."

33. *Offers of pardon* were published by Howe to all soldiers who would lay down their arms and take the oath of allegiance to England. Citizens were encouraged to accept his protection, or take the oath, and Toryism was cultivated to weaken the American cause. Thousands of people, all over the country, accepted these terms. When Washington saw his movements revealed to the enemy, and his operations hindered, he struck terror into the Tory heart by this positive order: "All persons who have accepted British protection shall withdraw within the enemy's lines, or take the oath of allegiance to the United States of America."

34. During the summer a young nobleman of France, titled *Marquis of La Fayette*, but whose real name was Gilbert Motier, came over and joined the American cause. The king withheld his consent to his plan, the British minister protested, and his friends pictured to him the brilliant career which his talents and large fortune would open to him in his own country. He procured a vessel, eluded the officers, and landed on the coast of South Carolina. Here he purchased horses, and, with six companions, rode to Philadelphia, and offered his ser-



LA FAYETTE.

vices to Congress. He joined the army as a volunteer, but was soon made a major general. Although only nineteen years of age, he soon became the trusted companion of Washington. He rendered invaluable service to the cause of independence, and was admired and beloved by the army.

35. The *winter at Valley Forge* was gloomy in the extreme — the darkest of the war. The army was discouraged by continual defeat and retreat. It was poorly clad, ill-fed, and unpaid. More than half the soldiers were barefooted; and bloody footsteps marked their route to the spot. The paper money had so far lost its value that the pay of an officer would not procure him the necessities of life, and it required six months' pay to enable a soldier to buy a pair of boots. It was the darkest day in Washington's life. Congress, in a measure, abandoned him, and many people blamed him. "It seems almost incredible that there could have been enough patriotism in the breasts of any body of men to stand by a cause so deeply and so sorely tried."

36. Meanwhile the *Conway cabal* was hatched in Congress. It was a shameless plot to remove Washington and to appoint Gates to the supreme command. When it became known, the indignation of the army and people was so great that those who were active in the scheme sank away into silence or denial.

37. No sooner was the Declaration passed and provision made for the immediate public safety, than Congress began to devise means for a permanent union of all the States under a general government. Thus far the States had voluntarily associated together in Congress under the cementing influence of a common cause. But it was foreseen that when independence had been attained and peace had returned, rivalries, and jealousies, and differing local interests, would soon sever the common attachment, and bring on a condition dangerous to peace and prosperity.

A plan for a "perpetual union" was proposed by Con-



UNION FLAG.

gress in the *Articles of Confederation*. This was immediately submitted to the States, when delays and objections arose; and as the government was not to go into effect till the consent of all the States should be obtained, the Confederation was not finally adopted till four years later — two years before the end of the Revolution.

38. Congress also adopted the *Stars and Stripes* as the national flag. It declared “that the flag of the thirteen United States shall be thirteen stripes of alternate red and white, and the union be thirteen white stars on a blue field.”

1778.

39. A joyful event was the *alliance with France*. Commissioners, headed by the venerable philosopher, Benjamin Franklin, had been in Europe, chiefly at Paris, for more than a year, endeavoring to conclude treaties of friendship and defense with the powers of the continent. France happened to be at peace with England, and, although very willing to see that country lose its provinces, it was regarded as a very serious thing to interfere in behalf of rebellious colonies, which, it was supposed, would soon be conquered, and thereby bring on a conflict with her ancient enemy. The entire French nation treated Franklin with the utmost respect and admiration. He was a man of most persuasive manners and great majesty of intellect. He was regarded in Europe as the greatest man America had produced.

It should always be remembered that one of the severest and most important battles of the Revolution was fought by Franklin in the cabinet of the French king. He won the victory. When the news of Burgoyne's surrender reached Europe, Franklin was informed that the nation was ready to aid the Americans. A treaty was made, recogniz-

ing the independence of the United States, providing for commercial intercourse, and binding the two nations not to lay down arms till the acknowledgment of American independence by Great Britain.

40. *Proposals of peace* were then made by England. It was urged by the liberal party in Parliament that another war with France should be avoided. Conciliatory bills were passed repealing all taxes, granting all the Americans originally asked, and appointing commissioners to negotiate for peace. But it was too late to talk of peace without independence. The envoys soon departed for home.

41. The *sympathy of other nations* was extended to the Americans. This was owing not to the love of republicanism among European monarchs, but chiefly to the jealousy which they entertained toward the power of England. It is believed that without this aid and sympathy the Revolution would have been a failure. Several military men came from Europe to assist the Americans. Besides La Fayette, there were two Polish patriots, Thaddeus Kosciuszko and Count Pulaski; and two Germans, Baron De Kalb and Baron Steuben. They were very competent men, and rendered valuable service.

Steuben was a veteran soldier and disciplinarian from the Prussian army. He was appointed inspector-general of the American forces. He drilled the army in the tactics of war as practiced in Europe. From that time the American regulars were never again beaten by an equal British force.

42. The removal of Howe as commander-in-chief occurred in the spring, and *Sir Henry Clinton* took his place.

43. The *operations of the year* were two in number — the Battle of Monmouth and the Massacre of Wyoming.

44. *The former* was an American success. Clinton left Philadelphia and started for New York. Washington followed, and at Monmouth succeeded in bringing Clinton

to battle. The causeless retreat of General Lee, at the beginning, came near bringing disaster, but Washington dashed to the front, sent Lee to the rear, and turned the course of the battle. The conflict lasted all day. During the night Clinton hastily retreated, leaving his killed, wounded, and sick. These were cared for by the Americans.

45. *The latter* was a British success. The Indians of the Six Nations, being bribed by gold, became English allies, and, together with a band of Tories, planned the destruction of the unsuspecting colony of Wyoming, Pennsylvania. They were led by a ruffian named Butler. They overcame the small force opposing them, burned every house in the valley, and killed by scalping or torture all who fell into their hands. This sickening story is useful for two purposes—to show the atrocities of war, and how merciless is despotism in its outrages on human rights.

46. *The French fleet*, carrying six thousand men, did valuable service on the coast, following and defeating the British fleet under Admiral Howe, brother of the general.

47. The *result of the year* was satisfactory to the Americans. The British were confined to two islands—New York and Rhode Island. The Americans held every other stronghold in the country.

48. The British found *winter quarters* in New York; the Americans at Middlebrook.

1779.

49. *Two campaigns* marked this year—one in the South and one in the North.

50. *The former* was advantageous to the British. The French fleet departed for the West Indies, to attack the English possessions there, and the fleet of the British went to oppose it. Clinton then transferred the war to the South, that he might be near his ships and co-operate with them. The operations were several in number: 1. The British took Savannah. 2. A body of Tories, on the march

to join the enemy, was defeated by Colonel Pickens. 3. A force of two thousand Americans, under General Ashe, were surrounded and beaten, with heavy loss. 4. The siege of Savannah, by the French fleet and General Lincoln's command, failed, with a loss of one thousand men. The gallant Pulaski was among the slain.

51. *The latter* went generally in favor of the British. Their moves were unimportant, being chiefly plundering



expeditions, in which villages and towns were burned, crops destroyed, houses robbed, homes desolated, and their inmates abused. The Americans sent out an expedition against the Indians in revenge of the massacre of Wyoming. They burned forty villages, destroyed the crops, and killed many of the people. It was a time of barbarous raids and butcheries. The sad policy of revenge prevailed on both sides.

52. The *naval operations* of the war do not occupy

a prominent place in history, but they resulted in remarkable success to the Americans. At the outbreak of the war, Congress authorized a regular navy of seventeen vessels, varying in force from ten to thirty-two guns. During the first year, over three hundred British vessels were captured, and many privateers were sent out to prey upon the British commerce. Expeditions fitted out in French sea-ports produced great alarm on the English coasts.

53. The first commander-in-chief of the navy was *Esek Hopkins*. He was succeeded by *Paul Jones*, a Scotch American. His little fleet, aided by his ceaseless activity, proved a match for "the mistress of the sea." His pluck was astonishing, and some of his encounters were the most desperate on record. He first hoisted the American flag at sea.

54. The *state of American finance* at this time was very low. The paper continued to depreciate. It took fifty and sixty dollars to buy one in specie, and yet it was considered as treason to refuse to accept the continental currency. One cause of this prostration of the public credit was the failing confidence of the world in the success of Independence. The French alliance, which promised so much, had resulted in but little real benefit, and the American armies were melting away by desertions, sickness, and defeat.

Another cause was the fact that England counterfeited the continental currency. These *fac-similes* were printed in England to the extent of many millions, brought to America, and scattered through the country. This was done by the British government, which was every month hanging men for committing the same crime against her own currency. People knew that if the Revolution proved a failure, not a dollar of the continental debt would ever be paid. To purchase army supplies with such money became very difficult, and finally impossible.

Two hundred million dollars of this currency had been issued, and it now became worthless and ceased to circu-

late. Strange expedients were used to obtain money; one of these being the establishment of a lottery "for defraying the expenses of the next campaign." Washington was obliged to take subsistence from the surrounding country.

55. The *results of the year* were very discouraging to the Americans. With all the desperate fighting, nothing definite had been accomplished. It seemed that, with reduced forces and universal destitution, a final triumph of arms was not to be hoped for. The soldiers of Washington were shivering in their huts at Morristown, while the resources of the British were unlimited.

Parliament voted one hundred and twenty thousand men and a hundred million dollars, to prosecute the war. The French fleet had sailed for home, and Congress was divided in angry disputes on questions of public policy. In bitterness Washington wrote: "It seems that friends, as well as foes, are combining to pull down the fabric they have been raising at the expense of so much time, blood, and treasure."

1780.

56. The *campaigns of the year* were again two in number—the Southern and the Northern.

57. *The former* resulted greatly to the advantage of the British. Clinton advanced to the siege of Charleston and surrounded the city. Lincoln was obliged to surrender his force of three thousand men. The British then spread over the State, and Clinton wrote to the home government, "South Carolina is English again." But it was the territory and not the people who were conquered. Such dashing officers as Francis Marion and Thomas Sumter came forward with hastily gathered militia, and kept up an irregular warfare. They harassed the enemy and kept down the Tories.

58. After the fall of Charleston the British forces concentrated at *Camden* under Cornwallis. Near this place they were met by five thousand Americans under General Gates. The battle was short but violent, and ended in the

complete defeat of the Americans, with a loss of nearly two thousand, beside stores and artillery. De Kalb fell with eleven wounds.

59. *The latter* is to be remembered for one infamous plot of treason. Benedict Arnold was a brave man, and had done effective service for the American cause. But being censured by Washington for misuse of public funds, his pride was wounded, and he resolved to betray his country. Being appointed commander at West Point on the Hudson, he offered to surrender this most important post, and had an interview with Clinton's adjutant-general, Major Andre, to arrange the details.

While returning to the British lines Andre was arrested by three patrolmen, and his papers were found concealed in his stockings. He was tried as a spy, found guilty, and hung. He was a young man of noble character, and his fate elicited much sympathy in both armies. Washington wept when he signed his death-warrant. Arnold escaped, and received the price of his treachery. A plan for his capture unfortunately failed on the eve of its success. He joined the British service, and led a desolating expedition against Virginia. He spent the rest of his life in England, a shunned and despised traitor.

1781.

60. A *mutiny at Morristown* occurred on the first day of the year. Extreme destitution still existed in the army; and fifteen hundred Pennsylvania soldiers rose in tumult, and threatened to march with arms in their hands into the hall of Congress to get their pay or end its sessions. La Fayette was much beloved, but when he attempted to prevent the mutiny he had to leave the camp. General Wayne entered the ranks, and, with a loaded pistol, threatened to shoot the first man that opened his mouth; but in an instant a hundred muskets were pointed at him. The mutineers were met on the way by a committee of Congress, who made some provision for their immediate

necessities, and gave pledges which were subsequently redeemed. The soldiers returned to camp.

61. A wealthy merchant of Philadelphia, named **Robert Morris**, was appointed financial agent of the government. His measures did much toward securing a successful ending of the struggle. His credit was unlimited, and on several occasions he used his private fortune to relieve the government.

62. **A French fleet** under Count Rochambeau, carrying seven thousand men, arrived during the year. They were sent chiefly through the influence of La Fayette.

63. **In the South** General Nathaniel Greene superseded Gates. He was a man of noble character, and a general of great energy and prudence. His troops met the British at **Cowpens**, and an obstinate battle followed, with victory for the Americans.

64. Another action soon occurred at **Guilford Court-House**. Ten thousand men were engaged, and the losses were fifteen hundred on each side. It was a severe but indecisive battle. The British had been so much harassed by scouting parties of the enemy that they ceased offensive operations in the South, and retired to Charleston, where they were watched by the Americans till the close of the war.

65. **In the North** the Americans were able to gain a victory which put an end to the war. Cornwallis received an order from Clinton to take a position with his army on the sea-coast, so as to be able to assist in case Washington should attack New York. It was true that Washington had spent the season in collecting forces, and had formed the very design anticipated by Clinton. But when Cornwallis centered his army at Yorktown he resolv'd to strike a blow in Virginia.

When his secret preparations were completed he made forced marches for Yorktown, arriving at the same time as the French fleet. The siege then began. Washington had the largest force he ever commanded, sixteen thousand,

of whom seven thousand were French. Cornwallis had an army of eight thousand, embracing the flower of the British forces in America. He stood the siege for three weeks. Finding all means of escape cut off, he surrendered his entire army.

66. The *end of the war* had evidently come. The wildest rejoicings prevailed in the army and with the people. Public sentiment had so changed in England that King George could no longer continue his warlike policy. Lord North, the leader of the Tory party there, and the obedient prime minister of the king, was forced into resignation, and the Marquis of Rockingham, the leader of the Whig party, took his place.

Clinton was superseded by Sir Guy Carleton, who was instructed to open the way for peace. The *soul* of the war was gone. Hostilities ceased and both sides waited for peace.

67. *In Parliament* a resolution passed to give up "all further attempts to reduce the revolted colonies." The city of London entreated the king to "put an end to this unnatural and unfortunate war." Spain and Holland had declared in favor of Independence. The stubborn monarch was obliged to submit to the voice of his people.

68. The American commissioners, headed by Franklin, met the delegates from England, France, Spain, and Holland, at Paris. The *Treaty of Paris* was drafted and signed. It acknowledged the political independence of the United States, secured to the Americans the free navigation of the Great Lakes and the Mississippi River, and granted the right to the cod fisheries of Newfoundland. The boundaries of the United States were declared to be the Atlantic Ocean, the Mississippi River, the St. Lawrence and the Lakes, and Florida. Florida, and all the territory west of the Mississippi, was declared to be the possession of Spain.

69. The *disbanding of the army* was attended with serious difficulty. The men had not been paid for a

long time, and the discontent from this cause was about to break out into another mutiny. Many of the officers had expended their private fortunes, and were fearful of being left without any provision for future support. A plot was made to march to the capital and demand satisfaction of Congress. But by great effort Washington averted the danger. Congress redeemed its pledges, and the army was quietly disbanded.

70. According to an estimate by Congress, *the cost of the war* to the country was one hundred and thirty million dollars and forty thousand men. It had cost England fifty thousand lives and five hundred million dollars. Beside this visible loss, there was great depression in business, and a serious decline in private morals.

71. *Washington's retirement* immediately followed. His work was done. In New York he assembled his officers and bade them an affectionate and tearful farewell. His journey to Annapolis, where Congress was in session, was a continual triumph. Old men crowded to the roadside to bless the chieftain; young men, to shout with enthusiasm; and young women, to strew his path with flowers.

In an address full of feeling, wisdom, and modesty, he resigned to Congress his commission as commander-in-chief, which he had received over eight years before. He soon after retired to his home at Mount Vernon, which he had seen but once during these years of warfare. He carried with him the benedictions of *a nation*.

CHAPTER II.

CONFEDERATION AND UNION.

72. The tardy adoption of the Articles of Confederation had left the prosecution of the war to the generalship of Washington and the assumed powers of Congress. These proved sufficient. The *success of the Confederation* during the last two years of the war, and the subse-

quent years of peace, was far from satisfactory. Though intended to serve as a bond of perpetual union, its principal provisions referred to a state of war, and were dormant in time of peace. The States had preferred to reserve to themselves nearly all the power, and regarded the least possible delegation of authority to Congress as quite sufficient for national purposes. There could be no such a thing as a strong central government. Foreign nations did not like to make treaties with such a loose and feeble compact of States. Washington said, "We are one nation to-day, and thirteen to-morrow; who will treat with us on these terms.?"

73. The *defects of the Articles* soon became apparent: 1. Congress could ascertain the sum necessary to defray the expense of the public service, but it could not collect a dollar. It could contract debts, but it could not raise money. Some of the States made the desired levy, some delayed, and others refused. 2. There was no power to regulate commerce, either foreign or domestic. State taxation of goods brought in from adjoining States, was very common, and produced endless disputes and bitterness. 3. Nearly all the powers of Congress were merely advisory. It could declare any thing, but it could do nothing. "The wonder is, not that such a scheme of government should fail; but that it should have been capable even of a momentary existence."

74. *The consequence* was that the government was often entirely without funds; and it is probable that, had Congress not had the good fortune to secure some foreign loans, this dilatory scheme of taxation would have been fatal to the cause of independence. The large fortune of Robert Morris was much reduced and he brought to want in the attempt to sustain a government which the States refused to support.

War between individual States was seriously threatened, agriculture languished, and trade fell off. Private debts were enormously increased and public ones were not paid.

Foreign nations saw our weakness, and proceeded to ruin our commerce. The Confederation had not only lost all its vigor, but it had even ceased to be respected; and it became evident to all that an important work was yet to be done or the great interests of the Union would fall in ruins. Washington said: "Thirteen sovereignties pulling against each other and all tugging at the Federal head, will soon bring ruin on the whole."

75. The idea of *remodeling the government* originated at Mount Vernon. The convention of revision met at Philadelphia in May, 1787. Washington was chosen chairman. The object which called these fifty men together was to devise better regulations for commerce between the States. The proposed amendments to the Articles were debated two weeks, when Edmund Randolph introduced a resolution to set aside the Articles of Confederation and adopt a new Constitution. This constitutional convention sat with closed doors, and its proceedings were never published. But James Madison, who was a ready penman, took copious notes of the speeches and deliberations, frequently submitting them to the speakers for revision. These valuable papers were afterward bought by the government, and were published in 1840, as a legacy to the nation.

At the end of four months the Constitution was completed and signed. The original draft was from the pen of Gouverneur Morris, of Pennsylvania. It was a work of the greatest difficulty. The interests of the various sections of the country were thought to be so opposite that the chances of a union were very small. A final adjournment was several times proposed, and it required all the tact of Washington, Franklin, and others, to hold the convention together till its work was done.

76. *The first slavery trouble* arose in that convention. The six hundred thousand slaves in the country at that time were mostly in the South, and violent disputes arose between the two sections concerning the ratio of representation. The northern members claimed that slaves

should not be counted in representation and taxation; the southern, that they should. A compromise was effected by which ever afterward during the existence of slavery in the country, five slaves were equal in political power to three white men. This power was exercised by the masters, and not by the slaves; and thus, in several States of the South a white man had twice as much political power as a white man in the North.

This over-representation enabled the slave interest to control the government most of the time till the abolition of slavery. It was also agreed that the northern States were bound to return fugitive slaves. It is believed that without these concessions on the part of the North, the Constitution would never have been adopted by the States.

77. Before this time there had been but little politics in the country; but questions of importance now came forward which divided the convention and people into two *political parties*. These were the Federalists and the Republicans. The former favored a strong, central, and united government, which would confer large powers on the President and Congress, and make a nation "one and indivisible."

The latter believed that the government should be strictly democratic, the power being more in the hands of the people and the States. This party favored "State Rights," meaning the right of each State to be independent of the others, with the agreement that all should unite for the common defense. Beside these, there were a few who thought that a limited monarchy and a system of institutions resembling the English, would be most suitable. The political parties remained thus for thirty-eight years.

78. In the new Constitution *the legislative power* was vested in Congress — a body composed of a Senate and a House of Representatives. The Senators are chosen by the State legislatures, and serve six years. Each State is entitled to two Senators. The Representatives are elected by the people, and each State is entitled to a number pro-

portionate to its population. They serve two years. Congress makes laws for the entire people, and no State can pass a law conflicting with them.

79. *The executive power* of the government was vested in a President, who is a native of the United States, and is chosen to serve four years by bodies of men called the electoral colleges. The people choose the electors, each State being entitled to as many as it has members in Congress. The chief duty of the President is to execute the laws which Congress may make. He may veto a bill passed by Congress; but a congressional majority of two-thirds may pass a law without his consent. He has the general appointing power, and is commander-in-chief of the army and navy. The Vice-President presides over the Senate, except when called to the presidency by the death, resignation, or removal of the President. This has occurred three times in our history.

80. *The judicial power* was vested in one Supreme Court and several inferior courts. The chief-justice and his associates hold office during life or good behavior. These courts have jurisdiction in all cases in which the government may be a party.

81. By *further provisions* the right of trial by jury is granted in all cases, except the impeachment of public officers. Treason consists only in making war against the United States, or in giving aid and comfort to their enemies. New Territories may be organized and new States admitted into the Union. Each State is guaranteed a republican form of government, and is protected against invasion and domestic violence.

Amendments may be made when sanctioned by a two-thirds vote of both Houses of Congress and ratified by the legislatures of three-fourths of the States. Fifteen amendments have been made since the adoption of the Constitution—most of them soon after it went into effect. These secure religious freedom; alter the manner of electing President and Vice-President; abolish slavery; and secure

the right of manhood suffrage without regard to race or color.

82. Within one year after the Constitution had been framed, eleven of the States had ratified it, being two more than was necessary to put it in operation. Senators and Representatives were elected in the several States thus ratifying, except New York, and presidential electors chosen. Soon afterward the *choice of a President* was made. There was but one voice in selecting the man for this high trust.

When the ballots of the electors were opened in the presence of Congress, George Washington was found to have been unanimously chosen President, and John Adams was made Vice-President. Washington's journey from Mount Vernon to New York was a continued triumph. The "more perfect union" was thus formed, and Congress ordered that the new government should go into operation on the fourth of March, 1789, a day since called Inauguration Day.

CHAPTER III.

WASHINGTON'S ADMINISTRATION.

1789—1797.

83. On the third of March the Continental Congress ceased to exist. The non-arrival of the members of the first Constitutional Congress deferred the *commencement of the new government*, and that event did not occur till the thirtieth of April. On the balcony of the Federal Hall in New York, the Chancellor of the State of New York administered to Washington the oath of office, which was in the following words: "I do solemnly swear that I will faithfully execute the office of the President of the United States, and will, to the best of my ability, preserve, protect, and defend, the Constitution of the United States." In all subsequent inaugurations this oath has been administered by the Chief-Justice.

84. *Five Departments of State* were soon after created. Thomas Jefferson was confirmed as Secretary of State; Alexander Hamilton, as Secretary of the Treasury; Henry Knox, as Secretary of War; Edmund Randolph, as Attorney-General, and Samuel Osgood, as Postmaster-General. These men became the chosen advisors and assistants of the President, and were collectively called the Cabinet. Later in our history two other departments of State were added — the Navy, and the Interior.

85. Many *constitutional amendments* were now proposed, and eleven of them were adopted. By this action on the part of Congress, which now for the first time sat with open doors, North Carolina and Rhode Island became satisfied with the Constitution, and ratified it accordingly. The thirteen States were thus united.

86. *The judiciary* of the nation was established soon afterward. The bill was the work of Oliver Ellsworth. John Jay became the first Chief Justice. The judiciary remains to this day, in substance, as it was first organized.

87. The *salaries of the public officers* were also fixed by the first Congress. The President was to receive \$25,000 yearly, the Vice-President \$5,000, and the cabinet officers \$3,500 each. Senators were entitled to seven dollars a day and mileage for their traveling expenses; Representatives, the mileage and six dollars per day.

88. With the wise and impressive sentiments of Washington's Inaugural Address before it, Congress gave its immediate attention to the subject of *revenue*. To pay the current expenses of the government and provide for the liquidation of the public debt, a tax was placed on goods brought into the country, and on the tonnage of merchant-ships entering the ports of the United States. This was called indirect taxation. A tax was also placed on spirituous liquors distilled in the country. This was called an excise.

Direct taxation was considered unwise in policy and

odious in practice; but by the method adopted, while the tax was really paid by those who bought and used the imported articles, its presence in their cost was often unsuspected and therefore cheerfully paid.

89. *The public credit* was still very low. The paper money of the Continental Congress was worth but twelve per cent. of its nominal value, although independence was achieved, the new Constitution was adopted, and the good wishes of the world were secured.

At the request of Congress, Hamilton presented a plan for the relief of the country. He proposed the funding of the National Debt, in which he included not only the fifty-four millions contracted by Congress, but also the twenty-five millions owed by the States. The interest was to be paid regularly, and the principal finally extinguished by the revenue derived from imported articles and from distilled spirits.

The warmest feelings were aroused by the debates on this scheme, and the excitement reached even a dangerous intensity. The financial policy of Hamilton prevailed. As a result of this legislation the paper money speedily rose to its par value, and the entire debt of the nation was finally paid.

90. A *National Bank* was also proposed, to regulate the currency by securing uniformity in the kind and value of money in the different parts of the country. The Republicans violently opposed the measure, saying that it was unnecessary, unconstitutional, and adverse to republican institutions. The bill became a law, and the bank was chartered for twenty years with a capital of ten millions. It was established at Philadelphia, where a mint was also put in operation.

91. *The seat of government* had always been at places which the Continental Congress had found most convenient for its sessions, chiefly New York and Philadelphia. It was now decided that Congress should hold its sessions at the latter city for ten years, or during the rest

of the century, and that the capital be then permanently established at some point on the Potomac.

Under authority from Congress, Washington selected the District of Columbia, which was ceded by Maryland and Virginia to the general government. The place was densely wooded, level, and wet, and, in the opinion of many, quite unsuited to the purpose. The capital city was named Washington, public buildings were erected, and Congress removed thither in 1800; and art so far overcame natural disadvantages that the city finally became prosperous and handsome.

92. Few of the States had any regular code, and *State legislation* was based on the Common Law of England. Independence made no violent changes in the institutions of the country, and in the law-books of this time were many quaint and strange regulations which would now excite a smile or awaken censure.

93. *The First Census* was taken, in obedience to the Constitution, in 1790, to determine the ratio of representation in Congress, and to obtain an official record of progress. When completed it was found that the enumeration amounted to nearly four millions (3,929,214), of whom seven hundred thousand were slaves. The ratio of representation in Congress was placed at one representative for every thirty-three thousand inhabitants.

94. *Foreign affairs* claimed much attention. Treaties were made with Spain, Algiers, and England, securing the navigation of the Mediterranean sea and the Mississippi River. In France, the French Revolution was in progress. Monarchy was overthrown in 1792 and a republic formed. Remembering their own recent struggles for independence, many people in this country sympathized with the movement. France was then at war with England, and as soon as the new French ambassador, Citizen Genet, arrived in the United States, he began to fit out privateers in American ports to capture British ships.

He also demanded an alliance between France and this country. In this course of conduct he was sustained by many

of the Republicans, who favored an alliance as a return for the aid rendered by France during our struggle for independence. But Washington and his cabinet resolved to remain neutral. The maxim adopted was, "Friendship with all, but entangling alliances with none." This has ever since been the settled foreign policy of our government.

Relying on the sympathy of the Republicans, Genet thought he could demand almost any thing, and he behaved very defiantly. But when he threatened to appeal from the President to the people, his adherents deserted him, and Washington secured his recall. The forbearance of the administration with Genet gave rise to the idea that the government was not strong enough to enforce its authority.

95. This quarrel was scarcely ended when another trouble, called the *Whisky Insurrection*, arose in western Pennsylvania. The excise on spirits had always been unpopular there, and meetings were called to condemn the tax. The collectors were threatened, and the marshal was resisted and fired upon while in the discharge of his duties. The mills and barns of those who paid the tax were burned. The insurgents numbered seven thousand, and matters remained thus for two years.

The President finally resolved that resistance to the laws should be ended. He therefore sent an army of fifteen thousand into the rebellious district, and the mob melted away before it.

This was a political rather than a social outbreak. The whisky-tax was a measure of the Federalists, and was supposed to bear heavily on the distilling districts. Genet and his partisans had carefully cultivated the discontent till it broke out into resistance.

96. A more serious work was before the President. *Troubles with England* had survived the treaty which ended the Revolution, and the newspapers in both countries continued to abound in irritating editorials and correspondence. Complaints were made in England that private debts contracted before the Revolution could not be collected in America.

On the other hand it was charged by the Americans that the British armies had carried off their slaves, that posts were still held on the western frontier in violation of the treaty, that Indians, having committed massacres, were protected by the British, and that American seamen were impressed into the marine service of England. All these complaints, on both sides, were true.

97. But the *immediate occasion* of the alarm was the secret issue of instructions by King George to British privateers to seize all neutral vessels found trading with the French in the West Indies. Before Congress had notification of this measure goods to the value of millions of dollars had been taken on American ships on the high seas.

Every thing was tending toward another war with England, when fortunately the American minister in London succeeded in concluding a treaty on the basis of mutual concession. Although it did not secure all that the Americans desired, it was admitted to be the best that was obtainable, and after a time of violent party warfare it was ratified by Congress and the best judgment of the people.

98. Three *new States* were added to the original thirteen during this presidency. New States were allowed to have at least one representative in Congress, and were required to adopt a State constitution, republican in form, and consistent with the Constitution and laws of the United States. They were then admitted, on application, by a vote of Congress.

99. *Vermont*, signifying green mountain, was settled



SEAL OF VERMONT.

by hardy woodsmen from New Hampshire. New York afterward claimed the territory and tried to drive out the settlers, but without success.

The volunteer militia aided greatly in the Revolution.

100. *Kentucky* was at first considered a part of Virginia, and was explored before the Revolution by the famous hunter and pioneer, Daniel Boone. The story of his remarkable life leads us to remember the proverb, "Truth is stranger than fiction." The



SEAL OF KENTUCKY.

long series of conflicts between the Kentuckians and the Indians caused the region to be called the Dark and Bloody Ground.



SEAL OF TENNESSEE.

101. *Tennessee* was first settled by people from North Carolina. At one time the settlers became dissatisfied with the laws of the parent State and

proposed to set up a new one under the name of Franklin, but it was changed to Tennessee, the Indian name of the principal river flowing through it. Both Kentucky and Tennessee, being settled from slave States, became slave States themselves.

102. Although the country needed quiet so much, *party spirit* was exceedingly bitter. The Federalists — called by their opponents High - Flying Feds — were accused of a desire to form an alliance with England, and of hostility to the growth of republican ideas in Europe. The private character of Washington did not escape the worst insinuations, and malicious satires were aimed at his policy.

On the other hand, the Republicans were charged with being friendly toward the bloody leaders of the French Revolution, with entertaining loose views of government, and even with a desire to introduce communism, by breaking up the foundations of the Republic and shattering the

structure of society. None of these charges were correct; but they show to what extravagance patriotic men may be led by the force of party strife.

103. In 1793 the country was visited by a calamity to which it had before been a stranger. *The yellow fever* broke out in Philadelphia with such fatality that, out of a population of sixty thousand, four thousand died. Terror seized all classes, and the city was nearly deserted. Among those who heroically remained to attend the sick was Dr. Benjamin Rush. His treatment was highly successful, and after a course of three months the pestilence was stayed.

104. The subject of *public education* received the attention of Congress even before the administration of Washington. In passing laws respecting the disposal of the public lands, it was ordered, in 1785, that section sixteen in every township be set apart for the maintenance of public schools. In justification of this national legislation, this sentiment was expressed: "Knowledge being necessary to good government and the happiness of mankind, schools and the means of education shall be forever encouraged."

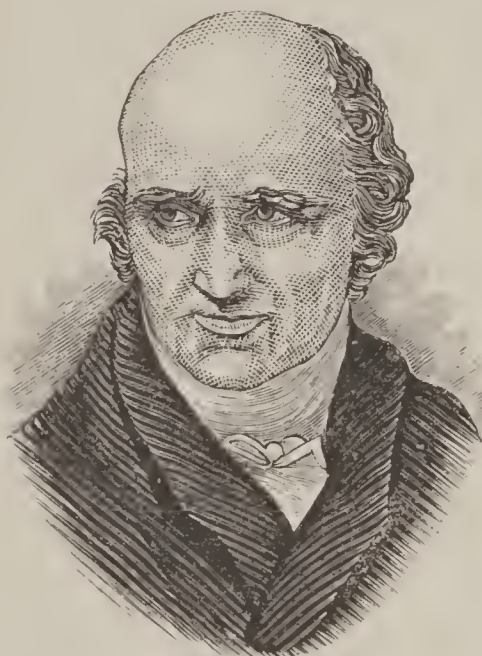
Two years later Congress further donated two complete townships of land perpetually to support a university in each State. Every State admitted into the Union has partaken of these bounties from the general government. The States also began to tax themselves to support universities, colleges, and common schools, and to authorize county and township taxation for educational purposes.

Thus the government undertook to provide for the education of the people, and from these provisions has come our system of public instruction. The little district school-house of the country, and the large ward-school building of the city, have resulted from this wise legislation of our forefathers.

105. The *literature* of the time was mostly of a political character, explaining legal and constitutional principles. We should remember that beside their political labors,

Washington, Jefferson, Adams, Hamilton, Jay, Franklin, and others, were laborious and voluminous authors. Dr. David Ramsay was the first American historian.

106. The *fine arts* were cultivated by few, but with



BENJAMIN WEST.

great success. John Trumbull, a member of Washington's staff, painted the scenes of the Revolution. The best of his pictures now adorn the rotunda of the Capitol at Washington. Benjamin West excelled in painting Bible scenes, and many of his pictures may now be viewed at the Academy of Fine Arts in Philadelphia.

107. *The Cotton Gin* was the name of a very important machine invented at this

time — 1792. The Southern States were well suited by nature for the production of cotton; but the labor of separating the seed from the fiber — called ginning it — was so great that a man would not gin more than a pound a day.



ELI WHITNEY.

A machine was greatly needed. So much was cotton-raising hindered, that after the Revolution "eight bags of cotton-wool" shipped to England were seized at the custom-house at Liverpool as being dishonestly entered, "*cotton not being a production of the United States.*" Finally, a young man from Massachusetts, named Eli Whitney, who had just graduated at Yale College, went South to teach school. He lived in the family of Mrs. Greene, widow of the revolutionary general, Nathaniel

Greene, widow of the revolutionary general, Nathaniel

Greene; and during his moments of leisure he had made many ingenious toys for her children.

One day she had a company of planters at her house, and, in their presence, she asked Whitney to try his skill in making a machine for ginning cotton. He secretly undertook the task. But he could buy neither tools nor materials in that region, and had to make the former before proceeding. He also spent weeks in making iron wire.

After much difficulty the rude machine was completed, and Mrs. Greene invited the leading planters to examine it. They were delighted to find that with Whitney's invention one man could gin as much cotton as five hundred men without it. The news flew rapidly, and multitudes clamored for a sight of the wonderful machine. One night the shop was broken open and the prize was carried off.

Before Whitney could complete his model and get his patent, many machines were set to work in the South, and it was a long time before he could get any compensation for his labor. The cultivation of cotton immediately assumed great importance, and through the invention of the gin the production increased from five thousand to five millions of bales yearly, being seven-eighths in value of all the cotton produced on the globe. It is a very moderate estimate to say that this machine was worth to the Southern States a thousand millions of dollars.

108. *The manners of society* at the capital were very formal and exacting, much resembling the manners then prevalent at the English court. The President held receptions every Tuesday at his own house. At precisely three o'clock the doors were thrown open, and the President was seen, surrounded by his cabinet and other prominent citizens, dressed elegantly in black velvet, with white waistcoat, yellow gloves, silver knee-buckles and shoe-buckles. He held a cocked hat and wore a sheathed sword. His hair was powdered and tied up in a silk bag behind. He never shook hands with his guests, but bowed when

introduced, and afterward exchanged a few words in conversation. The President was a master of etiquette, and never descended to familiarity.

When a title for the President was to be selected, "High Mightiness," was suggested, the words used to describe the president of the republic of Holland; but the more moderate title, "Excellency," was adopted. When Washington went to the sessions of Congress he used a fine stage-coach, which was usually drawn by four white horses, but on great occasions by six, and on Sundays by two. The drivers and footmen wore liveries of white and scarlet.

The President's birth-day was celebrated by dinners and public meetings, and poets often addressed odes to His Excellency. It was thought by the Federalists that these things were necessary to add dignity to the Republic; but the Republicans ridiculed them as a weak imitation of the habits of monarchy, and accused Washington of too much etiquette and love of display.

109. *In fashionable life* the style of dress differed much from the custom of the present day. Clergymen wore wigs and silk gowns in the pulpit and cocked hats on the street. "Gentlemen had a great variety of brilliant colors in their clothes, such as only ladies now display. When a well dressed gentleman went into company he appeared in a wig, white stock, white satin embroidered vest, black satin small-clothes, white silk stockings, and fine broad-cloth or velvet coat."

Pantaloon were worn occasionally as a business costume, but never when in full dress. A gentleman's snuff-box was as indispensable as a cigar is now, and courtesy was shown in taking the weed in this form with a friend. A snuff-box was a very popular kind of gift, and much expense was often lavished upon it.

"Ladies wore those beautiful silks and brocades which are still preserved as heirlooms in many American families. Their hair was dressed in powder and pomatum, and was often built up to a great height above the head. The hair -

dressers were kept so busy on the day of a fashionable entertainment that ladies had to employ their services as early as four in the morning, and sit upright all the rest of the day to avoid disturbing their head dress."

110. *In common life* the people were recovering from the losses of the war. The soldiers went quietly back to their farms and workshops, and very few beggars were seen in the country. Most people wore home-spun clothes; for, although cloth was woven by machinery, the threads must still be spun by hand. Silk worms were raised in Connecticut, and it became the custom to give the minister a home-made silk gown.

Carpets first came into use during this presidency, lying in a square in the center of the floor. The houses had spacious halls, wide stairs, and enormous "fire-places." The punch-bowl was always found in families of means, and its contents made a customary treat to company.

Hotels on such a large scale as our modern ones were unknown; but there were taverns and coffee-houses which afforded solid comfort to the traveler. The people had great, open fires of wood, and when the Philadelphians tried to use coal as fuel they gave it up as a failure.

111. Thus far the main *party issue* had been differences of opinion respecting the fundamental principles of the government; but now a new question came forward—whether it was the true policy to enter into intimate relations with the French Republic. The Federalists said, No! The Republicans said, Yes!

The force of party feeling was shown by a remark of Hamilton to Washington, that he should consider the head of every prominent Federalist in danger if a Republican were elected President. Washington and Jefferson broke a friendly correspondence which had existed for many years. Outside of party platforms and popular imagination our politics have had no golden age.

112. The question of foreign relations was the leading issue of *the presidential campaign*. Washington,

declining a third term, declared his intention to return to private life. The Federalists, desiring the continuation of his policy, brought forward John Adams as their candidate. The Republicans named the foremost man of their party, Thomas Jefferson. At the election Adams stood first, with seventy-one electoral votes, and, of course, Jefferson second, with sixty-nine. As the Constitution then read, the former was declared elected President and the latter Vice-President.

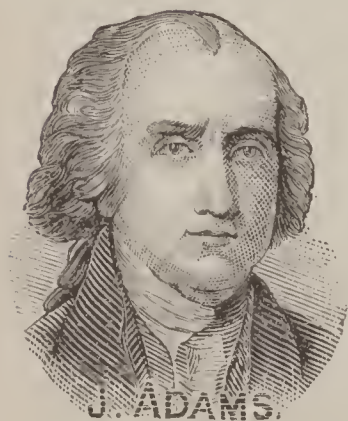
113. At the close of his presidency, Washington issued to the people of the United States his *Farewell Address*, a document full of political wisdom and lofty patriotism. It exhorts the people to cherish an unwavering attachment to the union of the States. It discourages the support of large military establishments, cautions against the ill-considered alteration of constitutional provisions, and especially depicts the violence of party spirit as hostile to the best interests of the nation. The Father of his Country was never again enticed from the retreat of Mt. Vernon to the performance of public duties.

CHAPTER IV.

ADAMS'S ADMINISTRATION.

1797—1801.

114. *The new President* was sixty-two years old. In the Colonial Congress he had nominated Washington as commander-in-chief, and had been a member of the first and second Continental Congresses. Jefferson wrote the Declaration, but Adams secured its adoption by his persuasive argument during the three days of debate. He was distinguished for his lofty patriotism. He was a good writer and an able lawyer. He was a ceaseless worker, and was said to have been the clearest-headed man in the nation.



Of him Jefferson said: "Not always fluent, not always graceful in his public addresses, he yet came out upon us with a power, both of thought and expression, that moved us from our seats." He was distinguished for the stately formality of his bearing. He was sometimes called "the Colossus of Independence" in the American Congress.

115. The presidential election had shown a *weak spot in the Constitution*, which declared that the candidate having the highest number of electoral votes should be President; and the one ranking next, Vice-President. It now became apparent that the heads of the two opposing parties would continually share the two highest offices of the nation between them. This would inevitably bring such differences among those high in authority as to endanger the stability of the government.

Few men could be found more unlike in mind and opinions than Adams and Jefferson; but they agreed in being true patriots, with a sincere wish for the good of their country. Mutual respect and concessions preserved them from any great misunderstanding.

116. The *trouble with France* did not end with the recall of Genet. The French people continued much displeased with the American neutrality, and especially disliked the dismissal of their minister. In retaliation for these supposed insults France declined to receive the newly appointed American minister to Paris, Charles C. Pinckney, and even ordered him to leave France. The French Directory authorized the capture of American vessels containing English goods.

117. When Congress convened at the call of the President, the matter was referred to that body. It was determined to preserve peace if possible, and to make one more attempt at negotiation. *Three special envoys* — Charles C. Pinckney, John Marshall, and Elbridge Gerry — were appointed to proceed to Paris and seek reconciliation.

118. *On their arrival* the envoys were informed that they could not be received by the Directory, but it was

hinted to them that the payment of a large sum of money would conciliate France. This was, in part, to heal the wounded French honor by bribing the members of the Directory. Insulted by these shameless proposals, Pinckney exclaimed, "Millions for defense, but not a cent for tribute." This became the American motto during the pending of these difficulties. The envoys soon left Paris.

119. *Hostilities began* on the sea. There seemed to be a prospect of another war; and General Washington was made nominal commander with General Alexander Hamilton as his acting first lieutenant. It was during these excitements that the National Lyric was written, beginning,

"Hail, Columbia! Happy land!"

120. *War was averted* by an unexpected change in the French government. Napoleon Bonaparte overthrew the Directory, and assumed control. He saw through the affair at a glance, and as he had nothing to gain by an American war, he concluded a satisfactory treaty of peace. Thus ended what is commonly called the "Quasi War." From that day to this, with the exception of one brief occasion, our intercourse with France has been marked by harmony and mutual confidence, through all the changes of that fickle government.

121. The *death of Washington* occurred in the midst of these troubles. In riding out to superintend the affairs of his plantation he was overtaken by a storm, and he returned home with a chill. Inflammation of the throat ensued, and being neglected a few hours till beyond medical control, the disorder terminated his life on the following day.

All classes remembered how much the country owed to his courage and wisdom. Funeral eulogies were pronounced in all parts. Congress wore mourning during the session, and inquired "the most suitable manner of paying honor to the man who was first in war, first in peace, and first in the hearts of his countrymen."

122. *Patrick Henry* died the same year. The venerated *Franklin* had closed his career nine years before. Thus the patriarchs of the Revolution were passing away.

123. *The Second Census*, taken in 1800, showed a population of nearly five and a half millions (5,319,762). During the ten years the annual exports had increased from twenty millions to seventy millions of dollars; and the revenue from nine to thirteen millions yearly. The seventy-five post-offices reported ten years before had now multiplied to nine hundred and three. Agricultural and commercial wealth was rapidly increasing.

124. *The Westward movement*, which began as soon as we became a nation, steadily increased in importance. Daniel Boone, the Kentucky pioneer, was the first man, well known in the nation who "went West;" but he was soon followed by others, who flocked into the valleys of the Ohio and Tennessee Rivers. These hardy pioneers among the western woods led lives of toil, danger, and privation. They went with their families to make their homes in the forests.

Their dwellings were log-cabins; their food was wild game and crushed corn and wheat; very often they had nothing to cook in but an iron kettle; their clothing was made of deer skins; their beds were the shaggy robes of the buffalo and the bear. Their struggles with the Indians would make volumes filled with adventures more thrilling than romance.

125. The great want in these homes in the wilderness was *salt*. It was made only on the sea-coast; and in Ohio and Kentucky was worth twenty dollars a bushel, being brought over the mountains of Virginia on pack-horses. Occasionally the settlers would find a salt spring, from which with great labor they would make a little home-made salt. It was treasured almost as though it were gold-dust.

126. *Social and domestic life* continued to make

gradual changes. Umbrellas were frequently carried to church, though for many years they were considered a mark of effeminacy, and those who used them were much ridiculed. Plates came into general use at the breakfast and tea-tables. Boots began to be worn instead of shoes.

Very few mechanical inventions had yet been introduced. The people still did not know how to use coal as fuel, but had great open fires of wood in their "fire-places." They used tallow candles of their own dipping, and wore garments of homespun cloth.

Even the cities were not far from the wilderness, and the gun and fishing-rod were in almost every house. "In the South there were scarcely any large towns, and the Far West was as yet unexplored by the English settlers, and was known only to the Canadian French."

The theater was just beginning to be tolerated. Private theatricals sometimes took place, and the President had entertainments at his own house. Musical concerts were allowed, and balls were sometimes given on a large scale. The guests often went to these in sedan-chairs, arriving between seven and eight o'clock, and going home at ten or eleven. The dances were minuets and contra-dances, the quadrille being but recently introduced.

127. The means of *public conveyance* were exceedingly imperfect in these times. On land the Flying Machines still made the best time. On water the sloops were much slower, were licensed to carry only a few passengers, and were by no means safe. As late as the administration of John Quincy Adams the President chose to make his annual visit to his home in Massachusetts on horseback, "to be sure that he should reach there in some decent season."

128. During this entire presidency *party spirit* ran very high. The exercise of extraordinary powers by Congress and the President during a time of threatened war, gave the Republicans reason for vehement opposition to the Federal rule. This party had now had control of the

government for twelve years, but during this administration it gradually lost support. This dissatisfaction was owing to four things:

First. The Alien Law, which was passed in 1798, was to be in effect for two years, and gave the President power to expel from the country any foreigner he might consider dangerous to the nation.

Second. The Sedition Law, which provided that those who falsely accused the President or Congress should be prosecuted and punished.

Third. An impression that the party entertained opinions less favorable to the liberties of the people than the Republican.

Fourth. A belief that it was partial to England and unfriendly to France. The Republicans chose to see in these things reasons for their advocacy of State Rights, and grounds for their fears that the Republic would become a monarchy and the President a king.

129. When the time drew near for the *presidential campaign* it became apparent that Adams had excited so much feeling against himself that his party had but little prospect of success. Adams and Pinckney became the Federal candidates. The Republicans nominated Thomas Jefferson and Aaron Burr.

At this time the germ of future party platforms appeared in "an inspired editorial" in a Richmond journal, explaining Jefferson's views. He was a warm friend of the French people, and reflected the sentiments of his party in his deep dislike for England. "Three hundred American vessels seized, and one thousand American sailors impressed," stood at the head of the Republican newspapers, and made the burden of Republican speeches. All the resources of argument and anger were exhausted in the heated passions of the day. A New England clergyman refused to baptize a child Thomas Jefferson, saying he would rather call it Beelzebub. Another lifted up his dying head to say: "I love the Savior, but hate the devil and Jefferson."

130. *The result* was the election of Jefferson and Burr by a small majority; but they both received the same number of electoral votes—seventy-three. By the provisions of the Constitution the choice between them was referred to the House of Representatives. A long and exciting struggle ensued, and it was not till the thirty-sixth ballot that by adroit management the friends of Jefferson induced Representative Bayard to break the lock. He received one majority and was declared elected to the first place on the ticket. Neither Jefferson nor Burr took a part in this contest. The Federal party thus passed from power never to be restored.

131. Thus was found *another weak place* in the Constitution, by which the candidate intended by the people for the second office within their gift might attain the first. It now became evident that this kind of tie, instead of being an accident, would be likely to recur at every election. Both of these defects were removed by the Twelfth Amendment, ratified in 1804.

132. Previous to this time the members of the *electoral colleges* had voted their own individual preferences, there having been no party nominations. Four years before, beside Jefferson and Adams, there had been as many as ten presidential candidates voted for, most of them the “favorite sons” of particular States. But now party caucuses were secretly held, and the electors were working in the harness of a regular nomination.

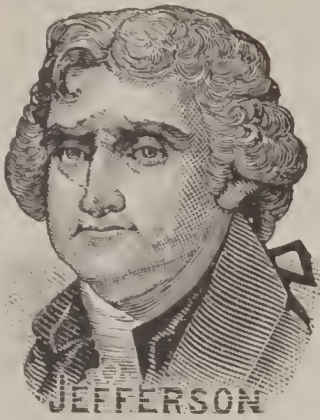
CHAPTER V.

JEFFERSON'S ADMINISTRATION.

1801—1809.

133. *The new President* was a ripe scholar, a bold reformer, the founder of the Republican party, and the author of the Declaration. He was an ardent supporter of the doctrine of State Rights, and led the opposition to the Federalists. He found great difficulty in managing

the government according to his theory, and became convinced that the Executive needed enlarged powers. Though not brilliant in oratory he had the reputation of "a matchless pen." Every man in his Cabinet was college-bred, and in some peculiar way identified with knowledge.



134. His administration began by *acts of reform and economy.*

The army and navy were reduced, and many government offices were abolished. These retrenchments enabled Congress to suppress the odious internal taxes, and still provide for the gradual payment of the National Debt. The violators of the Sedition Act were released from prison, and the period required for naturalization was reduced from fourteen to five years. These popular reforms kept him in the presidential chair for eight years. On re-election he received eleven times as many electoral votes as his rival, Pinckney.

135. *The purchase of Louisiana* was regarded



SEAL OF LOUISIANA.

by Jefferson as the greatest act of his administration. This territory belonged to France, and embraced that vast country west of the Mississippi

River to the Pacific ocean, and from New Mexico to British America. The purchase grew out of the French trouble of the previous administrations. By royal decree the port of New Orleans was closed against the commerce of the United States. This cut off the West from all access to the ocean, and it became evident that its commerce had nothing but ruin to expect. Alarm spread through the entire West, and Jefferson saw but one plan to pursue. He instructed the American minister at Paris to propose the purchase of the Louisiana territory.

Napoleon, who needed money to carry on his wars, entertained the idea, and a treaty was made by which, for the sum of fifteen million dollars, the area of the Union was more than doubled. This secured the entire control of the Mississippi River, which Jefferson foresaw would one day be a great commercial highway of the nation. After years showed the purchase to have been dictated by the wisest statesmanship.

136. *An Exploring Expedition*, under Captains Lewis and Clarke, was fitted out to visit the newly acquired territory. The President and the people wished to know what the value of the country was; what rivers, mountains, animals, plants, minerals, and tribes of Indians, were to be found there. They wished to see whether the people were peaceable or warlike, and whether they would sell the title to their lands.

The expedition carried provisions, camp-equipage, fire-arms, and presents to the Indians. They left St. Louis, then a small trading post, sailing up the Missouri River, and were gone nearly three years, encamping two winters in the wilderness. Finding a rivulet near the source of the Missouri, they followed it into the Columbia, which they traversed to the Pacific. They returned by a similar route, and safely reached St. Louis.

It was supposed by many that they had died of starvation or been killed by the Indians. They found buffaloes so abundant that a herd filled a river a mile wide, and the party stopped an hour to see the animals pass. They found Indians before unknown, the Dakotas and the Shoshones, and reported some of the tribes as being very poor and miserable, and others as having houses, guns, and horses. They knew nothing of civilized life, and one chief was so much pleased with dried squash that he said it was the best food he had ever tasted except sugar, of which he had once eaten a single lump.

137. *John Marshall*, who became Chief-Justice about this time and held the high office for thirty-five

years, was the founder of American law. Heretofore judicial decisions were based entirely on precedents established in English courts. It was Marshall's great work to adapt these principles of law to a republican form of government. He left a large number of important decisions as guides to the courts of future generations.



JOHN MARSHALL.

138. *The Barbary States* in northern Africa had long maintained a lawless supremacy in the Mediterranean sea by preying on the commerce of

other nations and claiming as slaves the crews and passengers of all the vessels they took. It was a common thing for notices to be read in American churches of the captivity of some member of the congregation in Algiers. A sum of money was then raised as a ransom — frequently as high as \$4,000 for a single individual. These sums were frequently paid by the government. As many as six thousand Americans had been held in captivity, and millions of dollars paid as ransom.

In common with the European powers, the United States, for seventeen years, paid an annual tribute of \$23,000 to buy exemption from the piratical attacks of these fierce little states. But when a dispute arose about the terms of payment, Jefferson resolved to endure the humiliation no longer. The people now saw that they had too long encouraged these exactions by unresistingly paying them.

139. *Military operations* began in 1801. The American navy consisted of six vessels. Four of these, under Commodore Preble, were sent to the Mediterranean, and the port of Tripoli was blockaded. Hostilities continued four years, and then the Bashaw, fearing defeat, proposed settlement. A treaty was made by which the com-

merce of the United States was to be exempt from tribute. This chastisement of a piratical nation was applauded by civilized countries, and gave a new impetus to our growing trade with the Mediterranean.

140. *Fresh troubles with England* arose during this presidency, and continued till they resulted in a destructive war. England and France were still enemies, and so intent were they in injuring each other that they had little regard for the rights and interests of other countries. While France was victorious on the land, England had made good her boast of being "mistress of the sea."

The American position of neutrality gave our merchantmen very profitable employment in carrying goods to European nations. In order to cut off these supplies to France, England declared the French coast in a state of blockade. Napoleon retaliated by proclaiming a blockade of British ports. The result was a nearly total extinction of American commerce.

141. *The tenure of allegiance* in the two countries had widely differed. The American doctrine was that a foreigner by a legal process could be naturalized and thus become an American citizen. The English idea was pithily expressed, "Once an Englishman, always an Englishman." European nations had always asserted that citizenship and political allegiance could not be voluntarily surrendered.

142. Because of this doctrine the *Right of Search* was a claim which had long been made by England, and had proved very irritating to the Americans. It was an assertion that English vessels had a right to overhaul and search American ships on the high seas, and take from them any seaman of English birth. England had not been able to man her fleets by voluntary enlistments, and had resorted to the policy of impressment by seizing persons of supposed English birth where ever found on the high seas.

Beside this, the higher wages offered by the Americans

was a great temptation to English seamen to desert the British service. In order to capture these deserters English men-of-war had repeatedly detained American vessels and impressed American seamen on the mere suspicion that they were British subjects. At one time there were six thousand names on the books of the State department as having been thus impressed. Presidents Washington, Adams, and Jefferson, had often protested against this pretended right, but without effect.

143. *An irritating event* soon occurred in consequence of these misunderstandings. In 1807 an American frigate, the Chesapeake, refusing to surrender four men, was fired upon by an English ship, the Leopard. After a loss of twenty men the Chesapeake struck her colors. The men were taken away. It was soon ascertained that three of these were native American citizens.

144. *Measures of retaliation* were often employed during these complications. The President issued a proclamation forbidding all armed British vessels to enter our ports until England should give satisfaction for the past and security for the future.

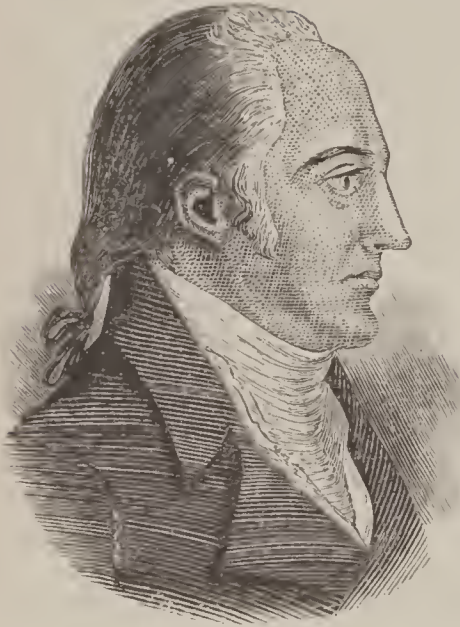
145. The famous *Orders in Council* soon came from the British government, prohibiting neutral vessels from trading with France, except on the payment of a tribute to England.

146. Napoleon immediately retaliated by his *Milan Decree*, confiscating all vessels which submitted to the search or paid the tribute.

147. *An Embargo* was passed by Congress, by which all American sailors and vessels were called home and detained, and foreign vessels forbidden to take cargoes from our ports. The enforcement of the embargo reduced the commerce of the country to a mere coasting trade. Sailors were thrown out of employment, and there was no market for our surplus products. Thus matters steadily drifted toward war.

148. *Aaron Burr* was one of the most brilliant men

of the period. But he was thought by many to be unprincipled and ambitious. When he became a candidate for the governorship of New York, Hamilton, believing him to be an unsafe man, was instrumental in securing his defeat. Burr took this as a personal affront, and challenged Hamilton to a duel. Popular sentiment did not then condemn this barbarous manner of settling differences, and Hamilton thought himself required to accept. They met on the Hudson a few miles above New York, and Hamilton was killed at the first shot.



AARON BURR.



ALEXANDER HAMILTON.

By this false, cruel code of honor, the nation was robbed of one of its ablest and most popular citizens. The matter created intense excitement throughout the country. Hamilton was the leader of the Federalists, and his death rolled upon Burr the odium of a great party. The press was mostly in the hands of his enemies, and it completely swept away his political influence.

149. *His subsequent career* was gloomy and disastrous. Finding himself shunned and distrusted in the East, he purchased boats with the professed object of descending the Ohio River and founding a colony in the newly-purchased Louisiana. But careless disclosures by his associates, and dark hints given by himself, led to the

suspicion that he aimed rather to seize New Orleans and establish a separate government in the southwest, or to make an armed invasion of Mexico, overthrow the Spanish authority there, and set up a republic. He was watched and arrested; but, there not being sufficient proof, he was discharged, though never acquitted in the minds of his political opponents.

150. The *estimates of historians* differ much respecting this wonderfully gifted man. The quarrel seems to have been the work of the partisan press. The bitterness of newspaper controversy surpassed any thing known in later years. It is asserted that Burr was goaded to desperation by malicious assaults made under the garb of superior virtue claimed for Hamilton. Many writers at the present day do not believe that Burr's design was to divide the Union, but that it was his own silence, misinterpreted by enemies, that led to the treasonable supposition.

151. **Ohio** was first settled in 1788 by a company of forty-seven New England pioneers. They sailed down the Ohio River and settled at Marietta. It was a part of the Northwest Territory, organized in 1787, and including all the country between the Ohio and Mississippi



SEAL OF OHIO.

Rivers and the Lakes. The next year another company began the village of Losanteville, a name afterward changed to Cincinnati. Indian hostilities prevailed for five years. But emigration soon poured over the mountains, and 20,000 people settled in Ohio in one year.

At that time the country seemed very far west, and the man who had seen Lake Michigan or the mouth of the Missouri was considered a great traveler. In 1802 Ohio had a sufficient population (60,000) to entitle it to admission as a State.

152. *The Foreign Slave Trade* had existed during the entire history of the American colonies. For nearly two hundred years vessels had sailed to the coast of Africa, bought negroes whom the native princes had taken captive in war, and brought them in loathsome holds to the United States to be sold into perpetual bondage. It is estimated that a quarter of a million of those who had been purchased on the African coast for transportation died under the horrors of the "middle passage," and were buried in the waters of the Atlantic.

It had been agreed when the Constitution was framed that there should be no interference with the slave-trade for twenty years, which time expired January 1, 1808. A year before that time, the President, in his annual message, congratulated Congress that the time was so near when it would be possible to "forbid a traffic which the morality, the reputation, and the best interests of the country, had long been eager to proscribe."

153. *An exciting debate* then arose in Congress, but no legislation was accomplished for some time. All parties seemed willing to abolish the foreign slave-trade, but they could not agree how to do it. At last, under the leadership of Josiah Quincy, a law was passed forbidding the importation of slaves from any foreign country after the year 1807. Only a few months before, a law making the slave-trade illegal received the royal assent in England.

Slavery had continued to exist in all the American colonies, except Massachusetts, till the Revolution; but during the next forty years it was abolished in all the northern States. The slave-trade between the States, not being included in this prohibition, continued to flourish in the South until slavery was abolished during the war of the Rebellion.

154. This legislation respecting the importation of slaves did not bring the *end of the traffic*. British and American subjects continued the trade, sailing under Spanish or Portuguese flags. The slave-ships were more

crowded than before, and it often happened that the miserable negroes were thrown overboard when the risk of capture seemed great.

In 1811 the United States joined with England in making the slave-trade a felony and punishable with long imprisonment at hard labor. In 1822 it was declared to be piracy, and the traders were made punishable with death. The navies of the leading civilized nations finally united in breaking up the traffic.

155. A bill authorizing the *Coast Survey* was passed late in Jefferson's term. This was a vast and important work, and although it has been prosecuted for sixty years it is still incomplete.

156. *The Steamboat* was the most important invention made during this administration. The first person to make one was William Henry, before the Revolution. The poet Darwin had prophetically said,

"Soon shall thy arm, unconquered steam, afar
Drag the slow barge, or drive the rapid car."

A few years later James Ramsay built a vessel which reached a speed of three miles an hour against the current of the Potomac. John Fitch built one which ran on the Delaware, and he predicted that steamships would one day cross the Atlantic.

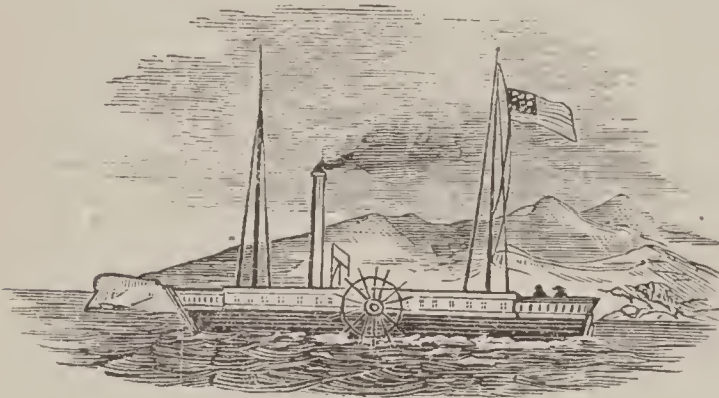


ROBERT FULTON.

157. But the first steamboat constructed on the plan of those used at the present day was built at New York by *Robert Fulton* in 1807. He provided his rude boat with machinery, mostly of his own invention. When it was being built it was called "Fulton's Folly," and every one laughed at the idea. Many persons gravely declared that,

even if successful, steamboats would destroy the business of sloops, coaches, and stages; and that they would make the water in the rivers so muddy that all the fishes would die. Fulton bitterly wrote in his diary that during the construction of his boat no one had ever made to him a single encouraging remark about it.

158. When *the day of trial* came, the boat left the pier, which was crowded with people. It moved a short distance and stopped. Hisses and sneers came from the crowd. Fulton went below, re-adjusted the machinery,



"FULTON'S FOLLY."

and again the vessel moved onward. Before it had gone a quarter of a mile doubters were convinced, and shouts of applause arose. The boat was named Clermont. It made the trip from New York to Albany, against wind and current, at the rate of five miles an hour. Showers of sparks flew from the smoke-stack; the noise of the paddles was great; and when it passed other vessels in the night their crews sometimes hid themselves below deck, and turned pale in fear of the monster! Such was the beginning of steam-navigation in our country and the world.

159. **Noah Webster** was one of the truly great men of America. At the age of twenty-four he conceived the idea of preparing a series of books for use in American schools. Nothing of the kind had been attempted this side of the Atlantic, and in literary matters, aside from theological and political writings, the country was entirely dependent on England.

As early as 1783 Webster published the American Spelling-Book, which immediately went into general use. He obtained a home copyright. This was the beginning of our copyright system. The history of this book is truly

wonderful. Though humble in form and modest in its



NOAH WEBSTER.

pretensions, it has sustained a remarkable celebrity through all the changes in our history. It taught the art of spelling to whole generations of girls and boys; and to this day about a million copies are sold annually. Its total sales have been more than seventy million copies.

160. *His Dictionary* was first published in an abridged form in 1806. At the close of the Revolution his friend, Dr. Goodrich, one of the professors

of Yale College, suggested to Webster the compilation of a dictionary which would instruct the people in the pronunciation, orthography, and meaning of all the words in the language. The thing was seen to be very desirable in order that we might become a nation of one uniform language, as well as of one government; but the magnitude of the undertaking deterred him from attempting its execution. Finally he began; and his Unabridged Dictionary of the English Language is the rich result of his forty years of labor. It, with its later though powerful rival, Worcester's Dictionary, has aided us in escaping differences in spelling and pronunciation, and in becoming a nation of one language.

"The peasant of the Apennines drives his goats home at evening over hills that look down on six provinces, none of whose dialects he can speak. Here a journey of three thousand miles changes not the sound or meaning of a word." The book has gone wherever the language is spoken, and its mission is probably only just begun.

161. *The first Foreign Missionary Society* was formed in Williams College, at Williamstown, Massachusetts, in 1806. A student named Samuel J. Mills met

four of his fellow students in a grove for meditation and prayer. A thunderstorm arose and drove them to the shelter of a haystack. At this meeting the conversation turned to the moral condition of Asia, and the thought occurred to Mills that they might carry the gospel to the people in that ancient land. Four of them agreed to the suggestion, and they separated filled with the great idea. They talked with their fellow-students, formed a society, and sent delegates to other colleges to excite a similar spirit. Four years afterward, as the result of the haystack prayer-meeting, the American Board of Commissioners for Foreign Missions was formed.

Mills and his companions went to Asia, and two of them died in the work they had undertaken. Before long the missionary spirit pervaded all classes of religious people. At the present time the American Board has five hundred and eighty-seven missions under its charge, in nearly all parts of the world. From them a knowledge of the gospel and the blessings of civilization are spreading through heathendom.

162. The manners of *society at the capital* were greatly changed when the Republicans came into power. Having opposed empty display, they now introduced severe simplicity. Jefferson abolished court etiquette and every thing resembling it. This endeared him to the common people, and he tried hard to retain their favor. Instead of going to the Capitol in a coach-and-six, he rode to Congress on horseback, unattended. He hitched his horse to a post, and went to the chamber dressed in plain clothes to make his address. He afterward did not do even this, but sent a "Message" to Congress by a secretary, as has been the custom ever since. He did away with the Presidential levees, which were afterward re-established by Mrs. Madison; but on New Year's Day and the Fourth of July he threw open his doors to all who chose to come. He refused to allow his birth-day to be celebrated, conceal-

ing the date for that purpose. This simplicity at the capital was felt throughout the nation.

163. *Party spirit* was exceedingly bitter during this entire presidency. The Federalists sneered at his "leveling system." The decided views of Jefferson made him many enemies. It was charged that his want of official dignity brought contempt upon the country. His wish to extend the right of voting excited the alarm of the Federalists, who believed that suffrage should be carefully limited. Newspapers teemed with irritating editorials; and partisan journals descended to the vilest slander and abuse.

Jefferson removed twenty-six Federalist officers, but it was not because they were opposed to him in politics. He declined to make an official tour. The legislatures of fourteen States requested him to run for a third term. The wisdom of much that he did has been questioned to the present day; but he went out of office with a treasury replenished, an army and navy reduced, the public debt diminished, and the sanction of the nation on his labors. He had the rare reward of seeing his popularity with his party greater on leaving office than it was on entering it.

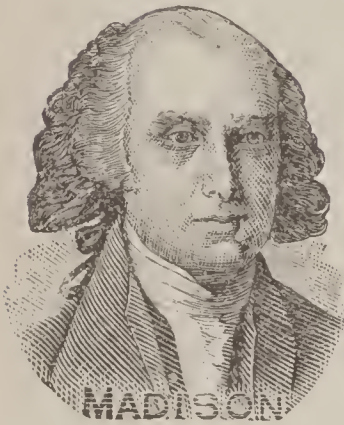
164. The leading issue in the *presidential election* was the question of war with England. The Federalists opposed a declaration of war and the Republicans favored it; and the election-day was to decide whether the second war with Great Britain should have an existence. The Federalists nominated Charles C. Pinckney. The Republicans named the intimate friend of Jefferson, James Madison, who was committed, though unwillingly, to the policy of no longer submitting to the wrongs from England against which we had been protesting for fifteen years. Pinckney received forty-eight electoral votes, and Madison one hundred and twenty-two. George Clinton was elected Vice-President.

CHAPTER VI.

MADISON'S ADMINISTRATION.

1809—1817.

165. *The new President* had been a leading advocate of the Constitution, a senator from Virginia, and the Secretary of State during the whole of the previous administration. He had laid up a great store of learning which he used with much skill; and he always exhausted the subject upon which he wrote or spoke. His success was not so much owing to great natural abilities as to strict accuracy and intense application.



166. *The Indians* residing in the Indiana Territory had long shown signs of hostility toward the settlers on the frontier. They complained of the encroachments of white men, that their hunting grounds were taken without their consent, and that their tribes were forced by the government to deed away their lands for a trifling consideration. Injuries done by the chief, Tecumseh, and his followers, induced the government to send General William Henry Harrison with a small force to obtain satisfaction or to fight. Having arrived at their principal town near the present city of Lafayette, he was met by a deputation of chiefs, and it was decided that no hostilities should be commenced before the next day, when a conference was to be held.

167. In violation of this contract Harrison's camp was furiously attacked before daylight. The soldiers, fearing bad faith, had slept on their arms, and were prepared for resistance. A bloody battle was fought, mostly in the night. The Indians were defeated and scattered and their country was laid waste. This *Battle of Tippecanoe* broke up the confederacy of Tecumseh, and ended the apprehensions of an Indian war.

168. The difficulty with England continued to increase. The *prospects of peace* were very slight. British cruisers had already captured nine hundred American vessels for violation of her "Orders." Compromise was talked of, but it could never be made out in a manner consistent with the supposed honor of the parties. George III, though still on the throne, was very old, and the British ministry would not surrender their "ancient and well-established right" of search. On three separate occasions the opportunity of a peaceable settlement was wasted by listening to the suggestions of that very sensitive thing, national pride. The elections had plainly shown the drift of public sentiment, and the people clamored for war.

1812.

169. A *proclamation of war* was accordingly made, and General Henry Dearborn, of Massachusetts, was appointed commander-in-chief. The regular army was ordered to be increased from ten thousand to twenty-five thousand, and the President was authorized to call out the militia of the states to the number of one hundred thousand. Only five days after this declaration of war the British government, unaware of this hostile decree, repealed the famous Orders in Council, thus removing the immediate occasion of hostility. For a fourth time the diplomacy at Washington had missed the opportunity of peace, and the nation again entered into the whirlwind of war.

170. *The plan of operations* was to garrison and defend the sea-board, and to attack and conquer Canada.

171. The *land operations* of this year near the Canadian border resulted in total defeat and heavy loss to the Americans.

172. *The navy and the privateers* were highly successful in defending the coast, making about three hundred captures of British merchantmen and men-of-war.

173. *The opposition of the Federal party* to the prosecution, as well as the declaration, of war, was

strongly felt. They said it was unconstitutional to call out the militia for offensive warfare, and greatly blamed the administration for not concluding peace on the basis of admitting the English right of search. Many even thought the offenses of England were not so great as those of France, and that the war was the result of party movements at home, rather than of injuries received from abroad. But Congress voted money and men, and the contest went forward. The people supported the war policy by the re-election of Madison.

1813.

174. At the beginning of the year the American forces were divided into *three armies*—the Army of the West, under General Harrison; the Army of the Center, under General Dearborn; and the Army of the North, under General Hampton.

175. The *Army of the West* was to recover Michigan, lost the year before. Having succeeded in this, it joined the forces of Dearborn.

176. The *Army of the Center* directed every energy toward the invasion of Canada. Dearborn took several fortified places on the St. Lawrence and Niagara Rivers; but he soon withdrew his troops, and the British regained all they had lost, and made several raids into New York, plundering and burning.

177. The *Army of the North* was ordered to join Dearborn in an expedition against Montreal. This it failed to do, and the campaign was abandoned.

178. Engagements on *lake and sea* were frequent during the year. A severe naval battle on Lake Erie resulted in a complete victory for the Americans, which Commodore Perry announced to General Harrison in these short and modest words: "*We have met the enemy and they are ours.*" The sea-fights resulted in about equal success to the two navies. In one of these encounters the American captain, Lawrence, as he was being carried

below mortally wounded, uttered the words which have ever since been the motto of our navy: "*Don't give up the ship.*"

179. Being angered by the injustice of some bad white men, and stirred up by Tecumseh, *the Creek Indians* in Alabama made an assault upon the settlers, and butchered several hundred of them, including women and children. "Blood for blood!" was the cry that arose at the news of this massacre. General Andrew Jackson was sent against the Indians. He cooped them up in the bend of a river, slew fifteen hundred warriors, and nearly exterminated the nation.

1814.

180. During this year the celebrated *Hartford Convention* was held. It was composed of leading Federalists, who thus convened to protest against the war, and to propose constitutional amendments respecting restrictions on commerce, the declaration of war, and the admission of new States. It first resolved that the President should serve but one term. The war party hastened to condemn the objects of this convention as treasonable, and it became the final step in the decline and downfall of the Federal Party.

181. The plan of operations embraced *three campaigns* — the northern, the central, and the southern.

182. *The Northern*, under Generals Scott and Ripley, was along the Canadian borders. The Americans were successful in battles near Niagara Falls, and in a severe naval contest on Lake Champlain.

183. *The Central* was directed against an army recently arrived under General Ross and advancing against Washington. The city was taken without difficulty, and the capitol and most of the other public buildings were burned in retaliation for similar acts by the Americans. It was during one of the bombardments of this campaign that the Star Spangled Banner was written by Francis S.

Key, an American detained on the enemy's ships and an eye witness of "the rocket's red glare, the bomb bursting in air."

184. *The Southern* was laid at New Orleans. The bloody battle there fought by a newly arrived British army under General Packenham and the American forces under General Jackson, resulted in complete victory for the latter. Jackson's army was behind breastworks, and his loss was so small that it may be called "our tearless battle." The British loss was twenty-four hundred — the heaviest England has ever sustained in America. It is interesting to note that this battle was fought two weeks after the treaty of peace was signed, which was then crossing the Atlantic in a sailing vessel. Now it would be flashed under the ocean in an instant!

185. *Proposals for peace* had long been under discussion by commissioners of the two governments assembled at Ghent, in Belgium, and now that England's troubles with France were about ending with the overthrow of Napoleon, no motive existed for the continuation of the war.

186. *A treaty of peace* was accordingly ratified, by which conquests were restored and matters placed as they had been before the war. The absurd treaty only signified that the two countries, having been at war, now agreed to be at peace. Not one of the questions about which all this blood was shed, was settled, *or even mentioned*. It was a struggle without results, and ended because of mutual weariness. In fact, a better treaty could have been secured before the war than after it. Then the British government was willing to disclaim any intention to commit arbitrary impressment, leaving the subject open for debate and settlement after the close of the war with France.

The *act* of impressment was discontinued, but the *right* was not surrendered. The war was full of disaster to both countries, ruinous to American commerce, and extremely unpopular with large numbers of the people.

187. On the *return of peace* the country was filled

with joy. All parties looked forward to a time of prosperity and growth. Since the French and Indian War the country had had but little real peace. Exciting questions tending toward war agitated the public mind even when the musket and the cannon were not heard in the land. The thirty years since the Revolution were little more than a protracted armistice, and not till 1814 did we secure a permanent peace.

188. *The Third Census*, taken in 1810, showed a population of over seven millions (7,239,881), of whom one million were slaves.

189. The *finances* of the country were in a deplorable condition when peace returned — no money in the treasury, a debt of one hundred and twenty millions, commerce ruined, and all kinds of industry depressed. Banks had stopped payments, coin was scarce, and there was no currency that commanded the public confidence. Bills, small notes, and tickets were issued by private banks, towns, and even single individuals. At length Congress was obliged to step in to bring order from all this monetary confusion.

190. The charter of Hamilton's *National Bank* had expired in 1811. Near the close of the administration another Bank was chartered for twenty years, with a capital of thirty-five millions. It began operations at Philadelphia, and, with its branches in other cities, supplied the people with paper money redeemable at all times with gold and silver. It performed all the financial business of the government without charge, receiving as its compensation the use of the national deposits.

191. In honor of Louis, the king of France, the French had given the name of *Louisiana* to the whole of their vast possessions in the valley of the Mississippi. Soon after the Louisiana Purchase the area now included in the State of Louisiana was organized into the Territory of Orleans. The rest of this vast acquisition was called the District of Louisiana. Numerous French settlements already existed in the Territory. The city of New Orleans was founded in

1718, and remains to the present time a flourishing city with French peculiarities. Louisiana entered the Union in 1812.

192. *Indiana* was first settled by Frenchmen at



SEAL OF INDIANA.

Vincennes. In 1800 it was organized as the Indiana Territory. William Henry Harrison, afterward President of the United States, was the first

governor. Like Ohio, it became involved in warfare with the Indians. It was admitted as a State in 1816 under a wise and liberal constitution.

193. *Immigration* into the United States steadily increased in times of peace. For the first twenty years after the Revolution the average foreign immigration was about six thousand annually. Then for about ten years, in consequence of the difficulties with England and France, it nearly ceased. But during the last year of Madison's term twenty thousand foreigners arrived. This seemed an immense number then. The pioneers penetrated the deep forests, planted settlements, and laid out towns. The fur trade led to the settlement of the northwest Territories. The whole country was about to witness a state of growth and activity.

194. Several *great names* should be mentioned here. Among the orators noted for their eloquence were John Randolph of Virginia, and John C. Calhoun of South Carolina. Henry Clay of Kentucky made his first great speeches in Congress on public improvements and domestic manufactures. Daniel Webster first appeared in Congress in 1813. Josiah Quincy was celebrated for his legal attainments, and De Witt Clinton for his patriotism and perseverance in securing internal improvements. Washington Allston was probably the greatest historical painter, and William E. Channing the greatest ethical writer, that America has produced.

195. Several *literary men* of ability flourished. Philip Freneau was the first American poet of note; Joel Barlow, the author of the *Columbiad*; William Wirt, the biographer; Charles Brockden Brown, the first American novelist; and John Marshall, the biographer of Washington. In the half century ending in 1815, the literature of America is to be found chiefly in newspaper essays on political topics, some of them being of great ability; "but the editorial portions of the paper, and no small part of the communications consisted of declamatory calumnies expressed in a style of vulgar ferocity." The epithets, rogue, liar, and villain, were bandied about between editors without any thought of their coarseness. Yet the newspapers of that day had an influence on the minds of their readers far beyond that of much abler journals in after times.

196. At this time *manufactures* had become important; but the power employed, with the exception of saw-mills, was nearly entirely that of men and animals. Shops were small, and nowhere was a large force of hands employed. It was not till the present century that the mode of manufacturing was inaugurated by using the power of falling water. In 1813, Francis C. Lowell was so strongly convinced of the practicability of cotton manufacture by water-power, that he put in operation at Waltham, near Boston, the first mill in the world that converted raw cotton into finished cloth.

Years before this, spinning by machinery had been introduced into England by Arkwright, the power-loom for weaving cotton cloth by Cartwright, and calico-printing by Peel. These inventions were used by Lowell. His experiment was a success, and his example was followed by others. Gradually New England abandoned agriculture and engaged in commerce and manufacturing. When steam came to be used as a motive power, this movement was greatly hastened.

197. The *American Bible Society* was founded in 1816, in the city of New York, by sixty men of learning

and philanthropy. The object was "to establish a general Bible Institution for the circulation of the Holy Scriptures without note or comment." Before the invention of printing, when the Bible was produced only by copyists, it was the most expensive book in the world. A single copy cost the entire wages of a laboring man for fifteen years. At the time of the Revolution the cheapest edition cost two dollars. At the present time the entire Scriptures can be had for forty cents, and a Testament for ten cents, so that the Bible has become the cheapest book in the world.

The Society has had a period of unbroken prosperity for sixty years, during which time it has circulated thirty-seven million copies of the Scriptures in over two hundred different styles of type and binding, and in sixty different languages. Over fifteen million dollars have been donated to it for publishing purposes. Its publishing house—called the Bible House—on Broadway, New York, is an imposing structure.

198. *The first Savings Bank* was established in Boston in the same year. The object was to collect by deposit the surplus earnings of poor and laboring people, though the banks were soon patronized by the rich. The funds were received in any amount, put at interest, and could be withdrawn by the depositors at any time. Every depositor, however poor, thus became a capitalist, for there is no capital except the savings of labor. The plan was found to be a great promoter of industry and thrift among the people. Millions of dollars were thus saved for future use, that would otherwise have been squandered in idle pleasures or in unwise investment. Banks flourished and increased in numbers. There are now about eight hundred of them in the country, with about four million depositors and about one thousand million deposits. Recent failure of some of these banks has occasioned much suffering and distrust.

199. *The American Colonization Society* was

also formed near the close of this presidency. Henry Clay was one of its presidents. Large tracts of land were obtained on the western coast of Africa, and inducements were held out for the emancipated slaves and free colored people of the United States to migrate thither, where they could have happy homes and free governments.

The Southern States entered earnestly into the scheme, in order to clear their country of the free-born and emancipated colored people. It was proposed to build up a great community, which would send out its colonies along the coast and into the interior to civilize and enlighten Africa and to break up the foreign slave trade.

It was a philanthropic, as well as a political, scheme, and, though Clay and other prominent men in Congress gave it their support, it was without much patronage from the government. A republic, holding an honorable place among the nations, was thus built up with churches, schools, and free institutions modeled after our own. Its capital was called Monrovia, in honor of President Monroe. After several years the philanthropic feeling of the country was diverted to other objects, and the scheme of colonization was abandoned. The present population of the colony is seven hundred thousand.

200. *The attitude of parties* remained as in former years. For the last time as a distinct party the Federalists attempted to gain control of the government. Reduced to a hopeless minority by its support of the Alien and Sedition Laws, by division among its leaders, and by its opposition to the war, it had no chances of again rising into power. There was no issue before the country, except the strong desire of the party out of power to get in, and the party in power to stay in.

201. The Republicans nominated as their *candidates* James Monroe, of Virginia, for the first, and Daniel D. Tompkins, of New York, for the second, place on their ticket. The Federalists despondingly named Rufus King, who received thirty-four electoral votes. The Republicans

swept the country, electing Monroe with one hundred and eighty-three votes.

CHAPTER VII.

MONROE'S ADMINISTRATION.

1817—1825.

202. *The new President* had been a Revolutionary officer, governor of Virginia, a foreign minister, and a member of Madison's cabinet. In politics he was a moderate Republican, and he carried out the general policy of his predecessor. Like him he was more prudent and painstaking than brilliant. His integrity was proverbial.



203. His administration was called the *era of good feeling*. Quietness in politics was a new thing in the country, and only existed now because one party was so strong as to have everything its own way. Monroe traveled in the eastern and northern States, visiting the military posts to become acquainted with the capacities of the country should fresh troubles arise. The old issue of war-time having passed away, there was but little politics in the country. The nation grew.

204. *The Seminole Indians* in Georgia had become odious to the people of the South by providing an asylum for fugitive slaves, and by making hostile raids into the surrounding settlements. The chief cause of the complaint and campaign against them was the hope of getting their land for the use of white men. General Andrew Jackson followed them to their retreat, defeated them in several skirmishes, and destroyed their villages. He then proceeded to Pensacola, where some of the Indians had obtained provisions. On the plea that protection had thus been furnished them, he took possession of the town and sent the Spanish garrison to Havana.

This act of hostility toward a foreign and friendly power

excited much unfavorable comment throughout the country. The President and Congress justified the act, but ordered that the town should be given up whenever the Spanish should demand it.

205. The *acquisition of Florida* resulted from this raid of Jackson. Seeing that the defense of the province would cost more than it was worth, the king of Spain proposed to cede it to the United States. It was accordingly bought for five million dollars.

206. *The National Debt* was a subject that had engaged the attention of statesmen for many years. The payment of the principal was too remote for much consideration, but the question was how to raise a revenue to pay the annual interest. Direct taxation of the States was earnestly advocated; but this method was opposed and defeated, as being odious to the people. The discussion became violent and bitter. Many wise men believed it would result in the dissolution of the Union.

At last John C. Calhoun, then a young congressman, introduced a petition signed by the merchants and planters of South Carolina for the passage of a bill providing a revenue by a high tariff on imported goods, protection to domestic industries, and the encouragement of home production. The plan was adopted in spite of the opposition of New England.

207. Thus the so-called *American System of Protection* had its origin. Henry Clay became the chief advocate, and Daniel Webster the chief opponent, of the system in Congress. It has usually been favored by the eastern States, which are devoted to manufacturing, and opposed by the southern and western, which are chiefly agricultural.

The tariff has always been a great subject of debate in Congress, and the arguments which bear upon it are very numerous and complicated. There has never been a question in the whole circle of American politics, upon which our statesmen, basing their opinions upon the same facts,

and viewing it from the same standpoint of local interests, have arrived at such exactly opposite conclusions.

Our legislation respecting it has been continually changing. In our history since 1816, when the first protective tariff was enacted, we have had twenty protective tariffs, extending over a period of thirty-eight years. We have had four tariffs for revenue, extending over twenty-four years. We have never had entire free-trade.

208. Within a few years after the system of protection went into operation, public sentiment was completely reversed. New England ceased to oppose the tariff, and became its strongest advocate, while the South regarded herself as the originator of a system which had become the source of all her calamity. *The cause of this change* is one of the curious things in our political history.

New England was a commercial section, and had grown rich in carrying cotton to England to be manufactured and in bringing back the manufactured articles. The South conceived the idea of cutting off this profitable business by building up manufactories of her own, under the protection of a high tariff. The carrying trade was ruined, and for a few years business was stagnant in New England.

But the people were led to the reflection that if the South could prosper by building manufactories, they could also. They very soon found it more profitable to manufacture southern cotton than to carry it to England. Slave labor could not compete with the skill and enterprise of New England, and the southern cotton-mills soon fell into the hands of those for whose ruin they had been intended. To use a homely saying, "The slaveholder shook the tree and the Yankee caught the apples."

209. *The fever for internal improvements* overtook the country in 1817. The country was growing fast, and there was a general desire to hasten its development. This feeling pervaded every branch of the govern-

ment. People desired to have canals cut every where, and to have the States traversed by great roads. All this was to be done at government expense. President Monroe admitted the desirability of these improvements, but opposed the scheme as being unconstitutional. The States finally undertook the work of improvement. Surveys were made and state roads were laid out in all directions. The people were determined to have better means of travel and transportation.

210. One of the most important of these public works was the *Erie Canal*, joining the waters of the Great Lakes and those of the Hudson River. It was first proposed by Jesse Hawley, and was carried into execution by the State of New York, under the influence of its great and progressive governor, De Witt Clinton. For half a century it has been a channel for the commerce between the East and the West.

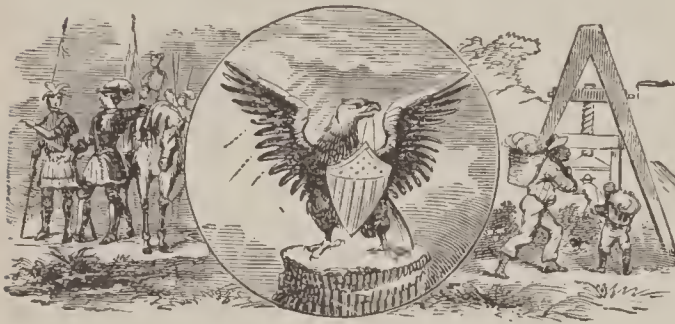
211. *The National Road*, leading from Cumberland, Maryland, to St. Louis, Missouri, was planned at this time. When Ohio came into the Union one of the conditions was that the government should build a road across the mountains, to connect the State with the Atlantic border. Part of it was macadamized, part was graveled, part was planked, and part was only graded. Before it was finished, other and better means of inland transportation were in use, and the government refused further appropriations. It became the property of the States in which it lay, and afterward of private companies. It was projected to St. Louis, laid out to Vandalia, Illinois, graded to Plainfield, Indiana, and completed to Indianapolis. It is still maintained in admirable order.

212. *Ocean steam navigation* was first attempted in 1819. A company of merchants of Savannah built an ocean steamer in the city of New York. When completed, passengers were advertised for, but none applied. The vessel made a trip to Liverpool in thirty-one days, using pitch-pine as fuel. Twenty years more elapsed before the

first regular line of steamers—the Cunard—crossed the Atlantic. At present over two hundred steamers regularly sail from American to European ports.

213. *The Fourth Census*, taken in 1820, showed a population of nine and a half millions (9,638,453).

214. In 1800 Georgia ceded to the United States its



SEAL OF MISSISSIPPI.

claim to the country west of it, including the present States of *Mississippi and Alabama*. It was

organized into the Territory of Mississippi.

It remained under this

form of government till 1817, when it was divided, and the western part entered the Union as the State of Missis-

sippi. Two years later the Alabama Territory sought and obtained admission as a State.



SEAL OF ALABAMA.

215. The first white men to see *Illinois* were French explorers, and the first settlement

was made by French traders and missionaries at Kaskaskia, in 1682. The deposits of lead at Galena were known and worked while it was a French province. In 1818 it was

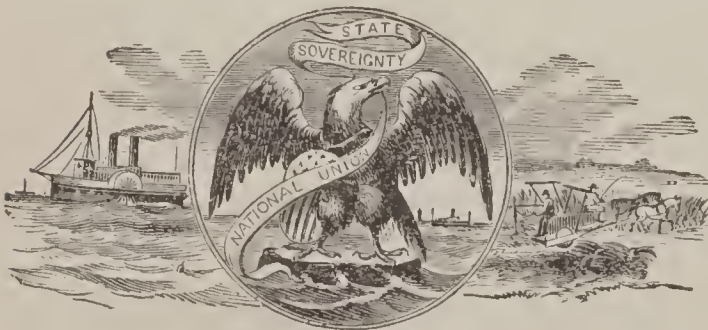
admitted as a State.

Its rich agricultural lands quickly attracted a large population.

It took a prominent part in the construction of railroads, and

has more miles in

operation than any other State in the Union. The rapid growth of Chicago is one of the miracles of the age.



SEAL OF ILLINOIS.

216. *Maine* remained a part of Massachusetts until 1820, when it was admitted as a State. Settlement was slow and confined to the southern part and the coast.



SEAL OF MAINE.

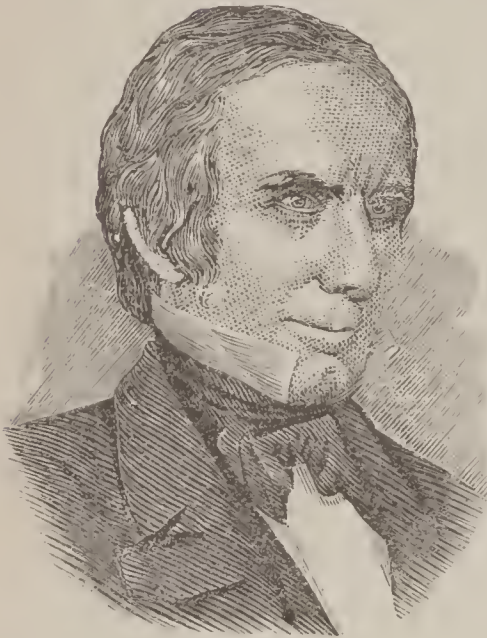
217. *The question of slavery* had long claimed

the attention of Congress and the country, and had now become the chief topic of debate. The northern and the southern sections of the country alternately acquired a State, and thus the balance of political power was preserved. When the Constitution was formed it was supposed that slavery would soon die out, and that the main source of dispute would be jealousy between the large States and the small ones. This was a great mistake. The hostility that arose was a sectional one, between the free and the slave States.

218. When a bill for the *admission of Missouri* came before Congress a long and memorable debate arose. The members from the South denied that Congress had a right to control the institutions of individual States, and urged that each State should decide for itself whether slavery should or should not exist within its borders. The members from the North opposed on moral, economic, and political grounds, the admission of another slave State into the Union.

All the States previously admitted, except Louisiana, had been composed of territory which the original thirteen had ceded to the general government; and it was agreed by all sections that new States seeking admission should have institutions similar to those States to which they had originally belonged. The territory of Missouri was a part of the Louisiana Purchase; and hence the question of the extension of slavery did not come prominently before

Congress or the people till the year 1821. The country was now intensely agitated. The aged Jefferson said:



HENRY CLAY.

“From the battle of Bunker Hill to the treaty of Paris, we never had so ominous a question.”

219. *The Missouri Compromise* brought, for the time, an end to this angry dispute. The bill, introduced by Jesse B. Thomas, of Illinois, and supported by Henry Clay, provided that Missouri be admitted as a slave State. Slavery was to be prohibited in all territory west of the Mississippi River and north

of 36° 30' north latitude; the territory south of that line being open to freedom or slavery, as the people residing in it should decide. It



SEAL OF MISSOURI.

was a political scheme to preserve the balance of power. The bill became a law; and the Compromise was observed by both sections for thirty years.

It is one of the great landmarks of American history.

220. *The re-election of Monroe* and Tompkins was quietly effected at a time when new issues had not come forward to take the place of those which had been settled by the lapse of time and the course of events. Party strife seemed to subside. In reality Monroe had no opponents; and he received every electoral vote but one, and that was cast by Plumer, of New Hampshire, for John Q. Adams, on the ground that it was dangerous to give a unanimous vote. A large meeting was held in Philadelphia to take measures for putting in the field an Anti-Slavery ticket; but this was not done.

221. In his annual message to Congress the President proclaimed the so-called *Monroe Doctrine*. The republics in South America had long been struggling with Spain for their independence; and the people of the United States desired to recognize them as sovereign nations. The President declared that "the American continents are not to be considered as subject for future colonization by any European powers." He said that "any attempt by European powers to control their destiny would be the manifestation of an unfriendly disposition toward the United States." He declared the true American policy to be, "neither to entangle ourselves in the broils of Europe, nor permit the powers of the Old World to interfere with the affairs of the New."

This novel idea was equivalent to saying that the United States forbid the nations of Europe to acquire territory this side of the Atlantic. Though seemingly a very haughty pretension, it has ever since, in a modified form, been the settled policy of the government.

222. *The education of the Deaf and Dumb* received the attention of Congress during this administration. Mr. Cogswell, of Hartford, having a daughter who was deaf and dumb, proposed to found a school for the education of those similarly unfortunate. Rev. T. H. Gallaudet was sent to Europe to learn the manner of teaching in such institutions there. On his return the school was opened at Hartford in 1817, with seven pupils. Within a year there were thirty-three, and Congress donated a township of land, expecting that one school would be sufficient for the entire country. This was soon found to be a mistake, and before many years had passed away every State in the Union had made provision for the care and education of its deaf and dumb. The instruction appeals chiefly to the eye, and extends through a period of seven years.

223. *The American Sunday School Union* was formed in 1824. An Englishman named Robert Raikes was the originator of Sunday Schools. During the Revo-

lutionary war he collected poor children on Sunday afternoons, and gave them religious instruction. Such schools became very numerous in this country. The first Sunday school of the United States was held in Hanover County, Virginia, by Bishop Asbury, in 1786, at the house of Thomas Crenshaw.

Progress in Sunday schools was very slow till about the year 1830. Finally it was seen that they would be useful to the children of the middle and upper classes as well as to the poor, and they were started in nearly every city. At first the exercises consisted in repeating Scriptural texts and singing hymns. The object of the union was to publish question-books, to organize schools in destitute places, and to advance the knowledge of the Scriptures among the people. From these beginnings have arisen all the Sunday-schools of the land. At the present time, there are about seventy thousand schools, and 5,790,000 pupils attending them, in our country. Since 1872, a uniform series of Bible lessons has gone into use throughout the world.

224. At the invitation of Congress, *General Lafayette* re-visited this country, near the close of Adams's administration. He was now an old man, near the end of a career full of important and stirring events. Nearly half a century had elapsed since he aided in the Revolutionary struggle; but the people well remembered the services of the generous Frenchman. From the moment of his arrival he became the nation's guest, and wherever he went he was received with the utmost respect and affection. Everywhere the cry was, "Welcome! welcome! thrice welcome, Lafayette!"

He received a public reception at New York, and then passed through the various states, being present at the founding of the Bunker Hill monument, participating in the ceremonies on the Fourth of July at the fiftieth anniversary of independence, and visiting the tomb of Washington. The Government voted him \$200,000, and a township of land, which he located in Florida. He spent

over a year in the country, "encompassed," as he said, "in an unexpected whirlwind of popular kindnesses," and he was sent back to his country in a frigate — the Brandywine — built expressly for this service.

225. The "*olden times*" were fast passing away. Monroe was the last of the Revolutionary statesmen, and great changes were constantly occurring. The time is within the memory of men still living, when the Mississippi valley had no markets and no good roads. Live stock was driven over the mountains to market at Baltimore, and grain was laboriously conveyed in huge wagons, with two, four, or six-horse bell-teams, over almost impassable roads, and in the middle of winter.

A whole neighborhood near the river would join together, build a raft, and float their entire produce — corn, wheat, pork, feathers, ginseng, Indian turnips, and whisky — to the New Orleans market, and afterward spend a month in walking home again. "Many of the words most familiar to our grandfathers, such as chimney-lug, hominy-block, hunting-shirt, spinning-wheel, bee-coursing, log-rolling, and latch-string, have become obsolete, or else are used only in a figurative sense."

226. *The growth of the West* surpassed any thing known before. Along the National Road an endless stream of pioneers poured over the mountains into the Ohio and Mississippi valleys. The cry was "Westward, ho!" In 1800, St. Louis was a collection of log cabins, containing Creoles, Indians, half-breeds, boatmen, and Yankee traders; Cincinnati was a little settlement, protected by stockades; and Chicago was a few shanties on a wet prairie. Now all this was changing, and on rafts and flat-boats great numbers floated down the Ohio River, with their household goods and live stock, to settle the wild but fertile frontier, and to convert it into the busy homes of men.

227. Near the close of this presidency, three questions — the national bank, the tariff, and the extension of slavery — began to assert themselves as *the issues* then coming

to the front. But the new party lines were not yet clearly drawn, and the election was more a choice of men than of political measures.

228. Up to this time, *the Presidential candidates* had been determined in caucuses held at Washington by members of Congress. After this they were selected by a national convention of delegates, chosen by the people. On this occasion, four well-matched rivals entered the field, — Andrew Jackson, Henry Clay, John Q. Adams, and William H. Crawford. These men all occupied prominent positions under the Government, and they all claimed to be Republicans. As had been clearly foreseen, no one of them received a majority of all the electoral votes cast. The House of Representatives, therefore, for the second and last time in our history, was called upon to elect a President. The friends of Clay and Adams united and elected the latter, though Jackson had received the highest number of both popular and electoral ballots. The electoral vote had already chosen John C. Calhoun, as Vice-President.

CHAPTER VIII.

ADMINISTRATION OF JOHN QUINCY ADAMS.

1825—1829.

229. *The new President* was a son of John Adams.



He was a scholar, an orator, a diplomatist, and a model statesman. He had served as a Senator, and as minister to Berlin and St. Petersburg. He had helped to conclude the treaty of Ghent, and had served as Secretary of State under Monroe. Though receiving the best early advantages, and having great ability and a stainless reputation, he was never a popular President. He had a majority against him in both Houses.

He wished to be considered the republican successor of Monroe, and tried to strengthen himself by assuming the championship of internal improvements and protection to domestic industry. He spent the last seventeen years of his life in Congress, where he became the leader of that small but determined band who regarded slavery as both a moral and a political evil. He was familiarly known as "the old man eloquent."

230. Several *Indian treaties* were made during this and the two following administrations, by which the tribes exchanged their lands east of the Mississippi for territory west of that stream. These treaties were usually made with a few chiefs, who did not represent the wishes or the interests of their tribes.

Though the Indians received annuities for a certain number of years, they were in reality forced to abandon the soil upon which the advancing settlements of white men were encroaching. Some of these tribes were civilized and had printed laws, farms, and schools. When about to be sent into exile by military force, they exhibited the deepest dejection of mind and a most pathetic consciousness of their wrongs. This method of extinguishing Indian titles was assailed as unjust and inhuman.

231. Since 1816, the attention of Congress was directed, from time to time, to *the protective tariff*. As yet the system had been carried no further than to a small protective tax on coarse cotton cloths. Since the close of the last war, manufactures had increased greatly, especially in New England and the Middle states; but, owing to the cheaper labor in Europe, goods from that continent could be sold in our markets at a lower price than American productions. To enable the latter to compete with the English goods, it was thought necessary to raise the price of the foreign articles by placing a high import tax upon them.

232. *The argument* was made that this would bring new and extensive manufacturing establishments into existence, build up home industries, give employment to more

laborers, create a home market for agricultural products, prevent our money from flowing to foreign countries, greatly increase the public revenue, and bring general and immediate prosperity.

On the other hand, it was argued that this tax would, in reality, be paid by our own people, and not by the foreign nation; that, by raising prices, the manufacturers alone would be benefited, and the consumers—who are the mass of the people—would be injured; that it would diminish the exportation of our goods; that the country was not prepared for the forced establishment of manufactures, on account of the high price of labor; that it would really lessen, instead of increase, the revenue; and that it was legislation in favor of one section and opposed to all others.

In those days, such phrases as, “clogging the wheels of trade,” “diversifying our occupations,” “protection to industry,” and “the pauper labor of Europe,” were very common.

233. *The result* of all this discussion in Congress and among the people was, that in 1828 the President and his party secured the passage of a bill—called by its enemies the Bill of Abominations—providing for a high protective tariff on cotton, woolen, and silken fabrics, and on goods made of iron, lead, and hemp. The duty on these was placed at an average of thirty-eight per cent. of their value. The law was commended in the manufacturing North, and condemned in the agricultural South.

234. In the early part of this administration, *an anti-Masonic* excitement broke out in the country. Freemasonry, an old and secret fraternity in Europe, originated by architects and builders, found its way to America in 1730. Lodges had been formed in many parts of the country. A man named William Morgan, residing in western New York, having threatened to expose the secrets of the order, suddenly disappeared, and was not heard of again. It was suspected that the Masons had abducted and murdered him; and the report of an investigating committee, appointed by the New York Legislature, confirmed

the suspicion. Though the charge was never proved, a great outcry was made against the fraternity, and a party was formed with the object of suppressing Masonry as dangerous to freedom and society. The excitement thus became a political issue, and many prominent men were involved in the controversy. The anti-Masonic party acquired great power in several states, bringing forward candidates and carrying the elections. It was many years before the excitement passed away.

235. For the first forty years after the adoption of the Constitution, the vast power of dismissal from office which was conferred on the President, was sparingly used. It was exercised only to prevent the public from suffering through faithless or incompetent officials, and not to gratify party or personal ambitions. In conducting *the civil service*, Washington dismissed nine officers, and Adams, ten. Jefferson adopted as his test, respecting applicants for office, these queries: "Is he honest? Is he capable?" He found the offices filled by Federalists, yet he removed but twenty-six during his term, twelve of whom were judges appointed by Adams on the very eve of his retirement, and called in derision, "the midnight judiciary."

Madison removed eight, and Monroe, nine. J. Q. Adams dismissed but two, and declared his resolution to remove no man on account of his opinions, saying, "If I can not administer the government on these principles, I am content to go back to Quincy." In those days, office-seekers did not speak of their "claims," and the civil service was removed from the accidents of politics by making the tenure of office depend upon a faithful and competent performance of duty, and not upon the triumph of parties.

236. *Invention* became a necessity to the people, from a lack of hands to do the labor. They could not wait till population sufficiently increased. The growth of wealth was found to depend far more upon labor-saving machinery than upon increase of population. An invention that greatly stimulated agriculture was the cast-iron plow, by Jethro

Wood, in 1814. Previously the plow was a mere stick of wood, plated with iron.

237. The *improvements in land travel* did not keep pace with the means of water communication. Steamboats had increased rapidly in numbers on rivers and lakes from the time of Fulton's success; but there had been no application of the steam engine to land travel. Inventors seemed slow in putting the idea into practice.

238. *The first railroads* were at mines. It was so much labor to draw carts of coal from the mines to the market that some one suggested planked roads with wooden rails. These were called tramways. The first road of that kind in this country was built in 1826 by Gridley Bryant. It was only four miles long, reaching from the stone quarries at Quincy, Massachusetts, to the tide-water. The cars were drawn by horses, and the wooden rails were strapped with flat iron.

239. For many years, ingenious men had been making *experiments on the locomotive*. They tried to make one with wheels; they tried to make one with legs like a horse. Oliver Evans, of Philadelphia, invented a steam road engine; but he was ridiculed, and his project was deemed a very wild one. Richard Trevithick, in England, made the first successful locomotive; but the man who first made land traveling by steam possible was the English collier, George Stephenson.

240. Soon afterward, we introduced *locomotives in America*. The train was expected to make a speed of



THE FIRST RAILROAD TRAIN.

fourteen miles an hour, and was regarded as a great curiosity. Many people said the engine would never be able to draw the weight of the train, but its wheels would spin

round and round on the rails; others said that, even if successful, it would injure the country by rendering wagons and coaches useless; others, that it would destroy the value of farming land near the road, by frightening the draft animals so that the soil could not be cultivated! None of these calamities followed.

The first true railroad in this country was the Baltimore and Ohio, begun in 1828. The railroad fever immediately took possession of the popular fancy; and there has been little abatement of this feeling to the present time, when there are 80,000 miles of road in this country, and 182,000 miles in the world.

241. On July 4, 1826, *a striking event* occurred. On this fiftieth anniversary of independence, John Adams and Thomas Jefferson both died. The many coincidences of their lives were completed in this remarkable coincidence of their deaths. It struck the people with awe and astonishment. They had now grown old, and their political differences had been many years forgotten. They spent much time in writing each other friendly letters. The day was being celebrated in the village where Adams lived, and he sent the toast, "Independence forever." As he lay dying at sunset, the watchers could hear the shout of the people as they received the old man's message. Thus there was sorrow, as well as joy, on this semi-centennial day. Ex-President Monroe died on the same day a few years later, and again sadness was mingled with the celebration.

242. *The American Tract Society* was formed in 1825 by a company of gentlemen in New York. Its object was to print and distribute cheap books and tracts of a moral and religious character. Since that time its average annual publications have been half a million volumes and ten million tracts. In 1874, seventy million pages of matter were gratuitously distributed. Its publications are printed in one hundred and forty-three different languages, and are sent to nearly all parts of the earth.

243. In 1828, the *American Peace Society* was formed at New York by a number of humane reformers, headed by William Ladd, of Maine, who has been called the Apostle of Peace. Fourteen years before this, Rev. Noah Worcester, of Massachusetts, appeared as one of the first advocates of the cause of peace, on moral grounds, in this or any other country. His volume, *Serious Review of the Custom of War*, produced a deep impression on many thoughtful minds, and many peace societies sprang up in New England. Mr. Ladd wrote and lectured in advocacy of the reform, and edited the *Harbinger of Peace*. He secured promises from clergymen to preach a sermon at least once a year in the interests of the cause.

The society proposed that a congress of nations should be convened to arrange a code of international law, by which every difficulty and question of right between nations could be settled without resort to war. This code was to be administered by a high court of nations, composed of a few men from all civilized countries. A scheme similar to this was originally proposed by William Penn, as early as 1693; but it was lost sight of till revived by Mr. Ladd. The plan was pronounced practicable by leading reformers in Europe and America. In its support the world's peace convention assembled at London in 1843, and again in Paris in 1849.

244. It is interesting to note the *changes in domestic life*. Some time before this, the people learned how to use coal as fuel, and gas was introduced into Boston. Percussion locks took the place of the old flint-locks in muskets. India-rubber began to be used for overshoes and other useful articles. A new vegetable, the tomato, formerly cultivated as a curiosity, and called the love-apple, was sparingly eaten. People began to throw away the old tinder-box with flint and steel, and to use friction matches—then called lucifers or loco-focos—when they desired to make a fire or light a candle. Steel pens came into use about this time, and were worth twenty-five cents each. Gold pens,

letter envelopes, and postage stamps were not in use till about 1844.

245. These four quiet years gave opportunity for attention to the great interests of agriculture, commerce, and manufacturing; yet the bitterest feeling toward the faction in power continued throughout *Adams's administration*. The friends of Jackson and Crawford were very indignant at what they called "the base coalition" between Adams and Clay, and they organized a determined opposition both to his administration and re-election, even before he was inaugurated. The cry of extravagance was made, though the public expenses scarcely amounted to \$13,000,000 a year. Not so much from disapproval of his policy as from hatred of the man, every measure of his administration was doomed even before it was developed. Though he was so revengefully assailed, we have, perhaps, never had a purer or more economical administration than that of J. Q. Adams. He left to the nation a greatly diminished debt and a legacy of unexampled prosperity.

246. Early in this administration the question arose, *Who shall be the next President?* Up to this time the Chief Executive had been a resident of Massachusetts or Virginia. Originally settled by different people,—the Puritans and the Cavaliers,—these sections were still far from being alike. The former was manufacturing and commercial, fostering schools, loving political equality, abolishing slave labor, advocating a strong federal government. The latter was agricultural, the population being scattered, education not being generally diffused, politics tending to "state rights," slave labor forming a landed aristocracy. The West had now grown into importance, and it began to be seen that the next President would come from the new country beyond the mountains.

247. As usual, *the campaign* was a heated one. So violent was party strife during the contest that the country seemed on the verge of civil war. Adams, supported by Clay and his faction, became the candidate of the East, as

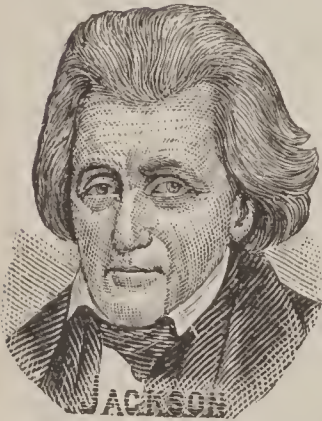
had been well understood for the last four years. "The hero of New Orleans" again became the candidate of the South and the West. Adams received eighty-three electoral votes; and Jackson and Calhoun achieved an easy victory with one hundred and seventy-eight. The excitement immediately abated, and public attention turned to other subjects.

CHAPTER IX.

JACKSON'S ADMINISTRATION.

1829 — 1837.

248. *The new President* was a man of strong will and great energy. His mind was powerful but unpolished, and his integrity undoubted. He did what he thought was right, without asking who would be displeased. He was familiarly called Old Hickory. Perhaps we have never had a President who was so heartily hated and so heartily loved. He had a stormy and adventurous career—the exact opposite of Adams's. His love of country was a master passion. He was a military hero; and his availability as a presidential candidate was due chiefly to his military successes.



249. Among his first official acts was *the re-organization of the civil service*. Adopting the cry, "to the victors belong the spoils," and believing that public affairs would be best managed by those of the same political views, he removed from office many of those opposed to him, and appointed his supporters to the places thus vacated. He went into office pledged to reward his friends and punish his enemies. Thousands of applicants for office thronged the capital and clamored all over the country. Heretofore it had been the custom in cases of removal, to furnish the officer with a copy of the charges against him, and to listen

to his defense; now persons were dismissed not only without trial, but without charges.

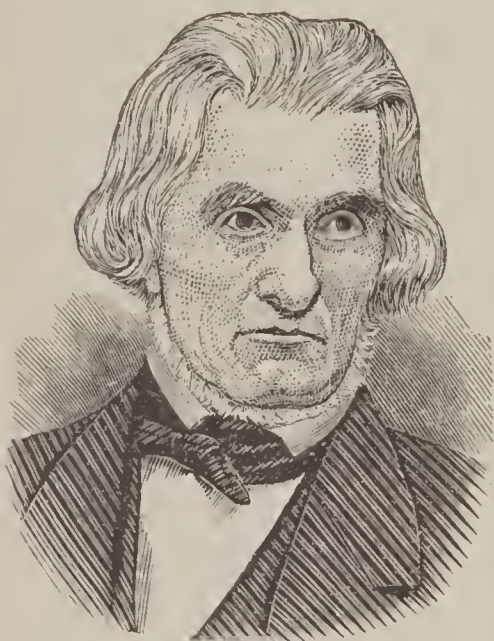
When Jackson came into the Presidency, he did not find a single man belonging to his party in office. During his eight years he removed six hundred and ninety officials—more than ten times as many as during the entire previous history of the government; and yet, among the thousands of removable officers, he never had a majority on his side. His course created a storm of abuse, but it was steadily persevered in, and his example has been followed to some extent by all our later Presidents. Van Buren, during the trying times of his presidency, held the party together by official patronage; and Tyler, with an eye to re-election, undertook to steer a middle course between Whigs and Democrats, distributing appointments right and left to strengthen his chances.

250. *The National Bank* has been already mentioned. As its charter was about to expire, the question of its renewal came before Congress. The President took strong grounds against this proposal, believing that such a gigantic moneyed corporation was not safe in a republic. It was asserted that Nicholas Biddle, its president, had boasted that he could make war or peace, and that no man could be elected President or Governor without his consent. On the other hand, the benefits of the reliable and uniform currency which it provided, were undeniable. The bill to re-charter the Bank passed Congress. Jackson vetoed it; and, as Congress did not pass it over his veto, the charter was not re-issued. The excitement was great; and the press, large numbers of his friends, and nearly all his cabinet officers, deserted him. But the people sustained him.

251. *The operation of the tariff* was not so satisfactory as had been expected. It was found that the manufacturers were enriched, since the price of their goods was increased. The government was enriched, since the tax on imported articles went into its treasury. The factory-laborers were enriched, since their employers were

able to pay them better wages. But the mass of the people were obliged to pay more for their goods than before.

252. From this cause *discontent in the South* had been arising for several years. It is a strange fact that the first protective tariff law in 1816 had been proposed and supported by the very man and the very state that now led the opposition to protection — John C. Calhoun, of South Carolina.



J. C. CALHOUN.

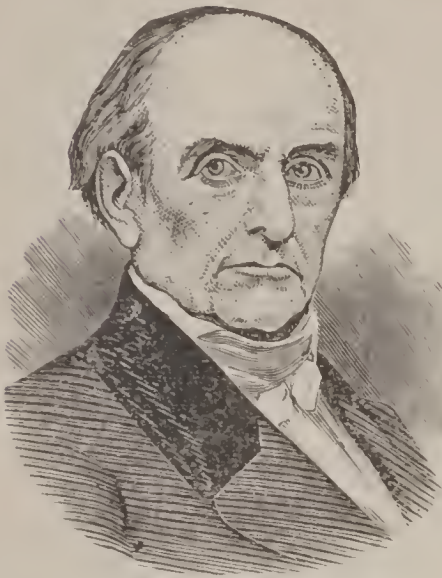
Now the South said to Congress: "We have tried protection for fourteen years, and find it does us no good in Virginia and Carolina. We do not sell our cotton at any better price on account of it; and when we wish to buy cloth or shoes, we pay high for the American article.

Beside, the foreign goods which we could buy cheap but for this odious tax, are better than the American goods, which are dear. If Massachusetts, which makes cloth and shoes, and Pennsylvania, which produces iron, want a protective tariff, let them have it; but give us free-trade, or a tariff for revenue only."

253. During the agitation of this subject, *a noted debate* arose in the Senate. In a discussion about the disposal of the public lands, Robert Y. Hayne, a brilliant orator from South Carolina, affirmed in an elaborate speech that any state had the right to declare null and void any act of Congress which it should consider unconstitutional. He plainly asserted that the Union was a compact of states, from which any of them could withdraw at pleasure. This idea had never before been publicly expressed.

Daniel Webster replied in a very eloquent speech, denying the right of secession, arguing that the Constitution was the work of the people as a nation, and not as separate states, and asserting that secession was treason, and that

differences between the government and states were to be settled by the Supreme Court. Thirty years afterward, this question came up again, to be decided by one of the bloodiest wars in all history.



DANIEL WEBSTER.

254. At a *free-trade convention* in South Carolina it was declared that the tariff was injuring the agricultural interests of the South, that Congress had usurped a power not granted in the Constitution, in legislating in the interests of a particular class; that the tax was "null and void;" that no more duties should be paid on imported goods; and that, if the government should attempt collection, the state would secede from the Union. Calhoun, having resigned the Vice-Presidency, was placed at the head of the movement, and medals were struck, bearing the inscription, "John C. Calhoun, First President of the Southern Confederacy."

255. All this was called *nullification*. The Congressmen from South Carolina boldly threatened secession, and the Legislature called for twelve thousand volunteers to fight the United States. When President Jackson read this news, he leaped from his seat, exclaiming: "*The Union! It must and shall be preserved! Send for General Scott!*" He issued a proclamation, announcing his determination to enforce the laws, and declaring these acts to be treasonable, and that "to say that any state may at pleasure secede from the Union, is to say that the United States are not a nation."

Bloodshed was happily avoided. Congress soon passed the compromise bill of Henry Clay, providing for the gradual reduction of the odious duties, and limiting the existence of the protective tariff to ten years. This was the last that was heard of nullification and secession during that generation.

256. The *re-election of Jackson* was not accomplished without the greatest opposition. His rivals were Henry Clay, a man of the greatest ability, and William Wirt, the anti-Masonic candidate. Jackson's veto of the Bank and Public Improvement bills created a strong party against him, but he was re-elected over Clay by an electoral vote of nearly five to one. Martin Van Buren, of New York, became Vice-President. Jackson was lauded by his friends as a second Washington. His re-election was bewailed by his enemies as a public calamity, greater than war, famine, and pestilence combined.

257. After his re-election the President ordered the *removal of the Government deposits* from the National to the state banks. He had no law for such a course, but believing himself to be in the right, he did not hesitate. If Jackson had declared himself a military dictator for life, there could scarcely have been a greater uproar. He believed that the money was being used for two irregular purposes—to effect his own overthrow, and to create an injurious spirit of speculation.

When the ten millions of public funds were deposited in the state banks—called “pet banks”—matters were not much improved. The removal caused the failure of the National Bank, and brought on much financial distress. It became easy, from the abundance of money, for any one to borrow. Wild speculation followed, especially in western land. New cities were laid out in forests and on prairies, and fabulous prices were paid for building-lots which existed only on paper. Every one had some scheme for making a fortune. The evil results of this were severely felt during the next administration.

As yet the country was so prosperous that the national debt was extinguished, and a surplus revenue had accumulated. It is a singular fact in our history that \$28,000,000 of this surplus was surrendered to the people, and distributed among the several states.

258. *The Seminole Indians* in Georgia and

Florida were again the source of trouble. They refused to leave their homes at the command of the government, and force was employed against them. Osceola, their chief, was a leading character in the war which followed. It resulted in the defeat and removal of the Indians, and was an expensive contest. Expedition after expedition of veteran soldiers was sent to Florida, and the war was continued in the everglades for seven years. The cost in money was forty million dollars — eight times as much as had been paid to Spain for the whole of Florida.

259. Numerous *anti-slavery societies* were formed during Jackson's term of office. The object was to persuade the country that freedom was better than slavery. As early as 1816, a Quaker minister, named Charles Osborne, published, at Mount Pleasant, Ohio, a little paper, called the *Philanthropist*, devoted to the cause of emancipation. A few years later, another Quaker gentleman, named Benjamin Lundy, published, at Baltimore, a newspaper, called *The Genius of Universal Emancipation*, advocating the idea of gradually freeing the slaves.

No one gave much attention to this; but when a young man named William Lloyd Garrison started in Boston a weekly paper called *The Liberator*, advocating immediate and unconditional emancipation, there quickly arose a great excitement all over the country. The Governor of Massachusetts, in his message, gave his opinion that the abolitionists might be prosecuted in the courts. Garrison was repeatedly pelted with eggs by excited mobs, and the Legislature of Georgia offered five thousand dollars for his head. When warned to stop his paper, he came out with this flaming motto: "*I will not equivocate; I will not excuse; I will not retract a single inch; and I will be heard.*"

260. An *insurrection of the slaves* soon arose in Virginia, headed by a slave named Nat Turner, who, with a mob, went from house to house, putting whole families to death. He was finally arrested, tried, and executed. It

was charged that this was the result of Garrison's teachings. The excitement became fiercer than ever. In order to quiet the public mind, Jackson urged Congress to pass a law to exclude abolition publications from the mails. But, as this would have been equivalent to restricting the freedom of the press, it was not done.

261. *The fifth census*, taken in 1830, showed a population of nearly thirteen millions (12,856,165)—three

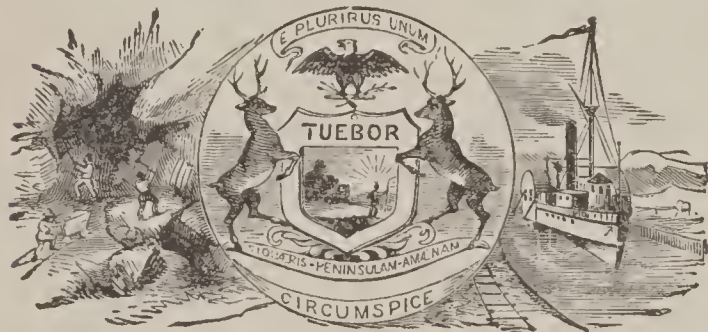


SEAL OF ARKANSAS.

times the enumeration under the presidency of Washington.

262. *Arkansas* was, for a long time, a part of the Missouri Territory; but in 1819 it was set off as a distinct territory, and so remained till 1836, when it entered the Union as a state.

263. *Michigan* was organized as a territory in 1805, and it remained so for thirty-two years. It was invaded by the British in 1812. A dispute with Ohio about its boundaries was settled in 1837, when it was admitted as a state.



SEAL OF MICHIGAN.

and it remained so for thirty-two years. It was invaded by the British in 1812. A dispute with Ohio about its boundaries was settled in 1837,

264. In 1832, the country was visited by a fatal pestilence, *the Asiatic cholera*. The disease originated several years before in the marshes at the mouth of the Ganges. From India it spread westward to England and America. Appearing first in Canada, it traversed the Union in a southwesterly direction, defying medical skill, and swiftly carrying thousands to the grave. Wherever the plague went, the people were panic-stricken; and the cities and towns were abandoned by nearly all who could leave them. In its subsequent visits to our country the disease

seemed to be more manageable, and to have lost much of its original terror.

265. Near the close of this presidency, *two destructive fires* occurred, which were regarded as national calamities. 1. A fire broke out among the large mercantile houses of New York, and, before it could be stayed, thirty-five acres in the center of the city were laid in ashes, and property worth eighteen million dollars was consumed. A few failures occurred, but "the burned district" was soon covered with buildings, more magnificent than before. 2. A fire destroyed the United States Patent Office, in Washington, with seven thousand models and ten thousand designs of inventions.

266. To the other calamities must be added the *death of our great men*. Ex-President Madison died at the age of eighty-five, and Charles Carroll, the last surviving signer of the Declaration, at the age of ninety-six. Chief-Justice Marshall closed his labors at the age of eighty. To these may be added the names of William Wirt and the eloquent John Randolph, of Roanoke.

267. While engaged in public matters, the nation did not forget the care of its unfortunate citizens. *The first asylum for the blind* was founded in 1832, chiefly through the labors of John D. Fisher. The idea had been prevalent that the blind were incapable of education; but, from the success of European institutions, the idea of doing something for these unfortunates occurred at the same time, but without concert, in many places in this country.

A company of blind pupils from one of the early asylums, with their teachers, visited seventeen states, and exhibited before the Legislatures and the people. Great interest was awakened, and soon many institutions for the education of the blind were founded, some by private benevolence, but generally by the state. The instruction was mostly oral; and at first books were printed for the use of the blind in sunken characters. But the raised letters soon came into use; and in 1836 a New Testament was printed in raised

characters. At present the blind in our country are able to read about fifty different books. These include history, geography, geometry, and astronomy. Pilgrim's Progress, Milton's Poetical Works, and Dickens's Old Curiosity Shop are also thus printed.

268. The night of November 13, 1832, is remarkable from the occurrence of a wonderful natural phenomenon — a great shower of “*shooting stars*.” These meteors varied in size from a mere point of light to globes equaling the moon in brightness. This display was witnessed with astonishment and even alarm throughout the United States.

269. In 1833, a great advance was made in the construction of the first effective *reaping and mowing machines*. For many years, attempts had been made to devise means to cut grain by machinery. At first the idea was to do it by revolving knives, in imitation of the hand-scythe. The experimenters were numerous, and the honor of final success belongs to no one man.

In 1833, Obed Hussey, of Cincinnati, invented and patented a reaper with saw-toothed cutter and guards. This machine cut one hundred and eighty acres of oats, and was favorably noticed by the press. During the next year, Cyrus McCormick made a reaping machine, using a sickle-edged, sectional bar, with guards, such as are still in universal use.

At the same time that McCormick was making his reaper, Frederick Ketchum, of Buffalo, was constructing the first mowing machine. He also used sectional knives with guards. It did its work well, but was a very crude affair in comparison with the mowers of the present day. These inventions laid the foundation of vast improvement in farm machinery. Our improved drills, planters, sowers, cultivators, and threshing machines have all come into use since that day.

270. For some years a gradual *re-organization of parties* had been going on; and now public opinion on the issues of the day had ranged the voters of the country

in two great parties, the Whigs and the Democrats. The Whigs, named in remembrance of the revolutionary fathers, included nearly all the old Federalists, and were understood to favor protective duties, the National Bank, and the policy of internal improvements. The Democrats included most of the old Republicans, and opposed all these measures. The question of the extension of slavery was one upon which the parties had not yet taken sides.

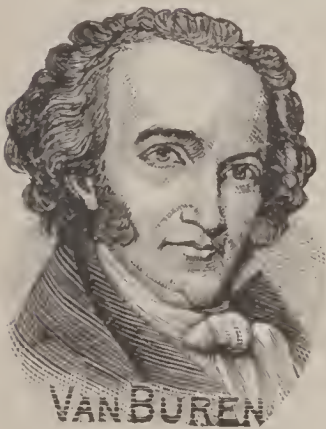
271. In the *presidential election* of 1836, the Whigs brought forward Gen. William Henry Harrison, of Ohio. The Democrats named Martin Van Buren, of New York, the intimate friend of Jackson, and a strong supporter of his policy. He was elected by a handsome majority.

CHAPTER X.

VAN BUREN'S ADMINISTRATION.

1837 — 1841.

272. *The new President* had been United States Senator, Governor of New York, Minister to England, Secretary of State, and Vice-President with Jackson. He held the usual Democratic views of the tariff and the National Bank. His presidency was therefore a continuation of Jackson's policy. He was a man of more than ordinary ability. His private character has never been impeached, and, though a shrewd, he was not a dishonest, statesman.



As President he was the subject of much censure, but he retained the confidence of his party to the last. He was brought forward as a candidate in three presidential campaigns after he became President.

273. *The panic of '37* was brought on by speculation and over-trading during the previous administration. The banks had made large issues of paper money, based on the government deposits. Money was plenty, and the

country was apparently rapidly increasing in wealth. Banks had so increased in number that there were then about eight hundred in the Union. Trading was done on credit, and men gave up steady business for speculation. Not many saw that the general rise in prices, and the apparent prosperity, were fictitious and liable to result in disaster at any moment.

At length it began to be seen that nearly every one was in debt. A feeling of uneasiness arose; then several extensive failures occurred in the principal cities. The alarm spread, and caused a general flood of notes to the banks for redemption in coin. Many of these banks had three or four times as many bills in circulation as they had specie in their vaults, and they were quite incapable of continuing specie payments.

The banks in New York and New Orleans refused to redeem their notes, and their example was followed by all the banks in the country. Within two months, failures in those two cities occurred to the amount of a hundred and fifty million dollars. Mercantile houses failed; public works were stopped; manufacturers closed their shops; and thousands of poor people were thrown out of employment. A session of Congress was called; but legislation could do but little to correct the evils of public extravagance. It was only by industry and economy that the nation finally *grew* into prosperity.

274. *The foreign credit* of the government was also seriously affected. Bonds for one hundred million dollars of state indebtedness had been issued, with the pretense of carrying on internal improvements. For many years the states were on the brink of bankruptcy; but the bonds were finally all paid, except those of Mississippi and Florida, which refused payment of the interest, and repudiated the debt. As the bonds had been sold chiefly in Europe, a great outcry arose there; and when, in 1842, the government tried to negotiate a foreign loan, not a bidder could be found in all Europe.

275. *The Sub-Treasury scheme* was the measure proposed by the President to avoid extravagant speculation and its attendant evils in the future. It was violently assailed, but became a law. It provided that all government dues should be paid in gold or silver, and that the public funds should be taken from the state banks and deposited with certain persons called sub-treasurers, appointed for the purpose, who should give security for the proper discharge of their duties. Thus an independent treasury was established.

The law was passed in 1840, repealed in 1841, re-enacted in 1846, and still remains in force. Its wisdom and usefulness are now generally admitted. It compelled banks to limit operations, by keeping specie in the vaults of the government. The unpopularity of this measure ruined Van Buren's hopes of re-election.

276. At this time *a Canadian rebellion* broke out. A portion of the people of Canada opposite New York rose against the British Government, and attempted to establish independence. Many people in the United States sympathized with the movement, and crossed the border to render assistance. For a short time there was danger of war with England; but the President issued a proclamation of neutrality, and sent a military force to the frontier to forbid interference and punish disturbers. The insurrection was soon suppressed.

277. *The slavery agitation* increased in bitterness, and often, resulted in mobs and violence, even in the free states. A slave girl, who had been taken by her master to Boston, was declared free by the Supreme Court of the state. A meeting of the Boston Anti-Slavery Society was broken up by a mob, and the mayor of the city said he was unable to protect it.

Mr. Garrison, who tried to address a meeting, was dragged through the streets with a rope around his body, till saved by the police, who put him in jail for protection. Schools for colored children were broken up, and the teachers driven

away. At Alton, Illinois, Rev. Elisha Lovejoy, the editor of an anti-slavery newspaper, was killed by a mob. The anti-slavery, or abolition party, was gradually growing; but Congress, by large majorities, declared itself unable to interfere with slavery, either in the states, the District of Columbia, or the territories.

278. *The sixth census*, taken in 1840, showed that the population had increased to seventeen millions (17,068,665).

279. *The temperance reform* had interested large numbers of the people for many years. During the Revolution, and till the war of 1812, the use of intoxicating drinks among the people greatly increased. There was scarcely any odium attached to the practice, and but little was done to arrest its progress. An occasional sermon was preached, but the minister was generally thought to have meddled in a matter which did not concern him.

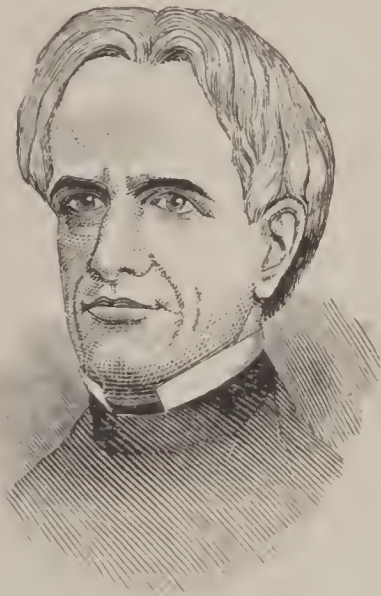
In 1811, through the influence of Dr. Benjamin Rush, the New England clergymen resolved to abstain from wine at their entertainments, and to scatter among the people information respecting the effects of strong drink. Soon after, societies for the suppression of intemperance, called "moral societies," became very popular. It became the custom to show the evils of intemperance by ridiculing the drunkards and mimicking their manners. Of course, the societies did but little good. The intemperate were offended by these assaults, but they were neither convinced nor reformed.

In 1817, forty farmers pledged themselves to gather their harvest without whisky. This was then thought a very strange thing; and, in order to secure laborers on this condition, they were obliged to offer much higher wages than were usual. The American Temperance Society was formed in Boston in 1826, composed of those who were pledged to observe and promote total abstinence. This gave a new aspect to the reform. Popular lecturers were sent out, societies were multiplied, and great interest was excited.

In 1840, a little company of six drunkards, in Baltimore, having emptied their glasses one night, resolved to abandon their drinking habits. They formed a society called "The Washingtonians," whose object was to feed, clothe, employ, and encourage reformed drunkards. Such societies were formed all over the country. They sent out lecturers, and the people never wearied of listening to the appeals of these reformers. The noted temperance lecturer, John B. Gough, first appeared at this time. License laws were first discussed in these meetings. Prohibition was scarcely thought of.

280. ***Education*** continued to receive the attention of Congress and the people. The grants of land made by Congress had resulted in the establishment of a system of public schools in most of the states. Colleges and academies became numerous, and sent out many well-trained minds.

In 1826, the first educational paper was started at Boston.



HORACE MANN.

It was called *The Journal of Education*. Soon after, Josiah Holbrook prepared educational apparatus for schools, delivered educational lectures, and held the first teachers' institutes and conventions ever assembled in the country. The first normal school was opened in 1839, at Lexington, Massachusetts, by Edmund Dwight. Horace Mann, the great educator, contributed more to the success and popularity of our public school system than any other

man the country has produced.

281. Near the close of this presidency, the ***attitude of parties*** indicated a violent political contest. Though the President really had nothing to do with causing the financial distress which was prevailing, he was assumed to be responsible for it, and the public confidence in his administration and in the Democratic party was greatly weakened. Financial questions constituted the issues of the

campaign, and the luckless administration of Van Buren called forth the bitterest denunciation of the opposition.

282. *The candidates* were well known. To vindicate his policy, the Democrats re-nominated Van Buren. Again the Whigs named General William Henry Harrison. Since his contests with the Indians, thirty years before, he had dwelt in a common frame house on the western frontier, and lived like a pioneer and a plain farmer. The Abolitionists now came forward asking the votes of the people for their candidate, James G. Birney, of New York.

283. *The campaign* was the most exciting known in our history. Some of his opponents had sneeringly said: "Give Harrison a log-cabin and a barrel of hard cider, and he will never leave Ohio to be President." From that time, the "log-cabin candidate" and the "hard-cider campaign" became popular expressions. Log-cabins were built and drawn on wagons in political processions, with the latch-string out, a coon-skin nailed over the door, and a barrel of hard cider with a gourd for a drinking-cup lying beside it. Many a loud hurrah went up at the witty hits of stump orators. Barrels of hard cider were rolled from one town to another, followed by hundreds of men and boys, who turned out to see the fun. "Tippecanoe and Tyler too," became the rallying cry of the Whigs. Many stirring songs were composed and sung by the glee-clubs at the political meetings.

284. *The result* of all this was the defeat of Van Buren with sixty votes, and the triumphant election of Harrison with two hundred and thirty-four. With him was chosen John Tyler, of Virginia. The Abolitionists, who favored the entire extinction of slavery, were comparatively few. Birney received no electoral votes, and only 7,600 popular ballots. Thus, after controlling the government for forty years, the Democratic party passed temporarily out of power, and the party which claimed to represent Washington and the elder Adams once more took command.

CHAPTER XI.

ADMINISTRATIONS OF HARRISON AND TYLER.

1841—1845.

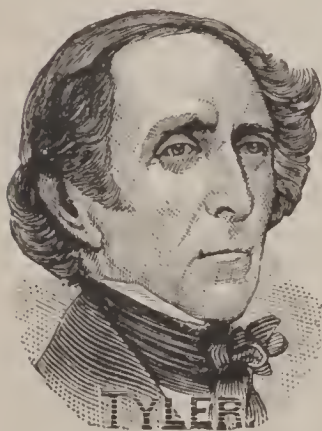
285. The presidential *labors of Harrison* were short. He was an old man of sixty-eight, and worn out with the excitements of the campaign. Even before his inauguration he was beset by office-seekers; and he desired to gratify the political friends who flocked about him. He gave himself incessantly to the public business, taking neither rest nor sufficient sleep. In less than a month he was sick with pneumonia.



His illness lasted but eight days.

His death caused profound and universal grief. "Out of consideration of his expenses in removing to the seat of government, and the limited means he left behind," Congress appropriated to his widow the equivalent of one year's presidential salary. It was the first time the country had lost a President. Two other instances of the kind have occurred since. Tyler took the oath of office, and became the first "accidental President."

286. *The new Executive* was a Virginian and a graduate of William and Mary College. He had served as a Representative, as a Senator, and as Governor of his native state. He retained the members of Harrison's cabinet. He was the most unpopular President the United States have ever had.



287. *His policy* proved a great disappointment to the party which had placed him in power. The Whigs had expected to establish a National Bank to afford relief to the country. But the President promptly vetoed two bills passed for that purpose, the latter being drafted according

to his own suggestions. His former political friends then denounced him as having deserted his party. But the fact was, that he had long been known to be hostile to the National Bank, and he had been put on the ticket for no other purpose than to secure the Southern vote. All his cabinet officers resigned, except Daniel Webster, Secretary of State, who retained his office till he had completed some important public plans, which would have suffered by his resignation.

288. The panic had left great numbers of men financially embarrassed. To afford relief to these, a general *bankrupt law* was passed, early in this presidency, by which bankrupts could be freed from their debts on the surrender of their property to their creditors. This law was afterward repealed.

289. For fifty years, *two grave questions* had remained open between England and the United States. 1. The northeast boundary, between Maine and New Brunswick, had never been definitely located. The people in that region threatened to take up arms in support of their respective claims.

2. It will be remembered that Great Britain had never surrendered the right of search. It was thought necessary in order to carry out her commercial policy, and it had long been a favorite idea with her statesmen. It had continued to be the source of long and irritating debates and diplomatic correspondence, entering every international question, and threatening to close the way of friendly negotiation. But, in 1842, Daniel Webster and Lord Ashburton, on behalf of their respective countries, satisfactorily settled these questions in the celebrated treaty of Washington. The right of search was abandoned, and the two countries were to unite in the suppression of the foreign slave trade.

290. Serious *difficulties in Rhode Island* arose at this time. According to the old colonial charter, which even under the Constitution had remained as the fundamental state law, no citizen could vote unless he had a

certain amount of property. It was proposed to alter this law and other offensive provisions; but a difference of opinion about the manner of doing it created two parties, the one called the "suffrage party," and the other, the "law and order party."

Each faction elected a governor, and prepared to support its claims by arms. The leader of the suffrage party, Thomas W. Dorr, made an unsuccessful attack upon the state arsenal. The government then sent troops to keep the peace. Dorr was arrested, convicted of treason, and sentenced to imprisonment for life; but he was afterward pardoned. A more liberal constitution was adopted in 1843.

291. At this time much excitement arose about *the Mormons*, a religious sect, headed by Joseph Smith. Smith was a native of Vermont, and seems to have been of questionable character. He claimed that divine aid enabled him to discover certain golden plates, covered with a sort of Egyptian characters, and to translate them, and thus to produce the Book of Mormon. He and his followers removed in 1831 from New York, where he founded his first church, to Ohio, thence to Missouri, and thence to Illinois. Here they founded Nauvoo, which became a flourishing city of ten thousand inhabitants.

The practice of polygamy among them rendered them odious to their neighbors. Robberies and murders committed near the city were attributed to them, and they passed ordinances thought to be at variance with the state laws. The anger of the people was increased by the belief that the Mormons controlled the county courts, and defied attempts to bring them to justice.

Their prophet was assailed by a mob and killed in 1844. Some time after this, their city was attacked and bombarded for three days, when the inhabitants fled and migrated to the wilderness beyond the Rocky Mountains. There they founded Salt Lake City, and industriously overcame the difficulties of their location, and made a prosperous settlement. Brigham Young was their leader after the death of

Smith until his own death in 1877. The sect call themselves the Latter Day Saints, and their highest law is the Book of Mormon.

292. But the great question of this administration was the *annexation of Texas*. For a long time it had been the policy of Mexico, to which Texas belonged, to keep it uninhabited, that the more vigorous Americans might not encroach on the feeble Mexicans. As early as 1819, a certain James Long, with seventy-five lawless adventurers from Mississippi, invaded the country, and issued a proclamation calling upon the native Spaniards to unite their territory to the United States. Long pompously styled himself "President of the Supreme Council of Texas." His party was speedily dispersed.

In 1821, Stephen F. Austin, of Connecticut, obtained from the Spanish authorities permission to establish a colony of three hundred Catholic families in Texas. He took slavery with him, and so rapidly did his colony grow, that at the end of one decade, ten thousand citizens of the United States had found homes in Texas. After some years, Mexico passed a decree freeing every slave in Mexican territory. This did not suit the slave-holding colony in Texas, and hence, as there was no pretext for war, propositions were made for the purchase of the country by the United States. At first President Jackson offered one million dollars, and then five millions. Both offers were promptly rejected.

Then the government encouraged immigration into Texas; and soon the American settlers found themselves in full possession. They immediately issued a declaration of independence. Of the fifty-seven signers of this document, fifty were from the slave-holding states, and only three were native Mexicans. There was much sympathy with the Texan colonists in this country, and especially in the South, and many adventurers, including a few men of ability, went to Texas to assist in securing independence. After some sharp fighting, this was achieved, and it was acknowledged

by the United States, England, and France. The new nation immediately sought admission into the Union, and its application was welcomed by many.

293. It was frankly admitted by Calhoun that *the object of annexation* was "to uphold the interests of slavery, extend its influence, and secure its perpetual duration." The South saw that the rapid growth of the Northwest would take the control of the government out of their hands unless they could add more slave territory to the southern border. Texas was about five times as large as New York. It was believed that freedom would there be outvoted, and that slavery would prosper. From the North, petitions adverse to annexation, and signed by thousands, poured into Congress. Efforts were made to exclude them; but ex-President Adams, then a Congressman, spoke an hour a day for twelve days in behalf of the petitioners and amid constant interruption. But a rule was adopted—and it remained in force ten years—to exclude all petitions on the subject of slavery.

294. But *the act of annexation* was not to be prevented. The bill passed Congress in 1845, but only by the artifice of voting on a resolution of annexation, requiring merely a majority of the votes, instead of



SEAL OF TEXAS.

the ratification of a treaty, which would have required two-thirds of the members. The United States assumed the debts of Texas, amounting to seven million dollars. "This seemed at the time a vast sum to pay for a doubtful advantage, and it was said that the word 'Texas' was only 'Taxes' with the letters differently arranged."

295. The development of *postal affairs* was slow but wonderful. When Washington became President, there were only seventy-five post-offices in the country, and the mails between New York and Boston were carried on horse-

back, and only twice a week, occupying five days in the transit. The rate of letter postage during whole generations was twenty-five cents, and was reduced to ten cents in 1845, and to three cents in 1851. Postal cards came into use long afterward—in 1873. In 1878 there were over thirty-eight thousand offices, from which seven hundred million letters were annually sent.

296. *The magnetic telegraph* is a modern invention, for which scientific minds on both sides of the ocean had long been preparing. The identity of lightning and electricity had been known for ninety years; but, though this strange power had been carefully studied, it had not been brought into the service of man. Lightning-rods had only disarmed it.

297. The first of the *early experimenters* was Franklin. He sent lightning across the Schuylkill River on a wire. As early as 1798, some Spanish experimenters sent a signal on a wire twenty-six miles long. One man discovered that the impulse passed instantaneously; another, that the current could be instantly broken and instantly re-united; and another, that it was possible to record at one end of the line a message sent from the other. It took a great many years to make these discoveries.

298. Almost at the same time, *three men*—an Englishman, a German, and an American—began to invent a system of telegraphing by electricity. No one of them knew about the labors of the others. The Englishman was William Wheatstone. He completed his invention and put it in operation in 1837. His method is still in use in England. The German was Professor A. C. Steinheil. His method was much superior to Wheatstone's. The American was Samuel F. B. Morse, of Massachusetts. With remarkable generosity Steinheil admitted the superiority of Morse's method, but Wheatstone never did.

299. *The story of Morse's invention*, which is now used nearly exclusively over the world, is as follows: In 1832, Morse, who had visited Europe to study and

practice painting, took passage on a French ship for America. One day, at the dinner-table, the conversation turned upon the recent discoveries in electromagnetism. During the talk Morse remarked: "If the presence of electricity can be made visible in any part of a circuit, I see no reason why intelligence may not be transmitted instantaneously by it." This one idea took complete possession of his mind. He spent the remainder of the voyage in inventing his instruments and planning the



SAMUEL F. B. MORSE.

details of his invention.

300. *His labors* began at once. But he worked with small means and with but little encouragement. At the end of five years his instruments were completed. He put half a mile of wire in coils around his room, and sent through it a message which was correctly recorded at the other end. Next year he asked Congress to aid him in the construction of an experimental line from Washington to Baltimore, a distance of forty miles. But Congress would not listen to him. He went to Europe, and was no better appreciated. Returning home, he labored on, encouraged by the good wishes of his friends, but unaided by the politicians at Washington. A bill in his behalf was brought before Congress, but it was sarcastically amended so as to include a line to the moon, and to provide pay for experiments in witchcraft and mesmerism. Session after session he renewed his application for national aid, but he met only rebuff and defeat.

301. But *success* came at last. On the last day of the session of 1843, there was still no prospect of aid. Morse left the chamber in deep disappointment at eleven o'clock at night; but next morning at the breakfast-table he was startled by the announcement that, ten minutes before

adjournment, Congress had voted him thirty thousand dollars to set up his proposed line. His long struggle was over. The line was constructed the following year, and was completely successful.

The first message sent was the words, "*What God hath wrought!*" suggested to Morse by his young friend, Miss Annie Ellsworth, who had brought him the tidings of his success. The first news sent was a notice to Silas Wright, in Washington, of his nomination for the office of Vice-President, by the Democratic convention in Baltimore, and his reply declining the honor. On the same day the news of the nomination of James K. Polk, as candidate for President, was sent to Washington. These dispatches were published next morning in the papers, but were not believed, the people preferring to wait for more reliable news. In commemoration of this great advance in useful invention, a popular poet wrote:

"What more, presumptuous mortals, will you dare?
See Franklin seize the Clouds, their bolts to bury.
The Sun assigns his pencil to Daguerre;
And Morse, the Lightning makes his secretary!"

302. *The honors of the invention* are shared by several men. Wheatstone put the first line in operation; but his invention was not so early as that of Morse, and he borrowed most of his ideas from a young Englishman named William F. Cooke. Morse was greatly aided by the investigations of Prof. Joseph Henry, and the inventive genius of Alfred Vail, of New Jersey.

303 *The value of the invention* was immediately acknowledged throughout the world. Seventeen years before, the British government, when asked to aid the early experimenters, replied: "Telegraphs are of no use in times of peace, and during war the semaphore answers all required purposes." But now telegraphic lines were rapidly erected on both sides of the ocean. In 1874 there were in America 250,000 miles of wire, and in foreign countries 600,000. The

total telegraphic receipts throughout the world are about \$40,000,000 per annum, and the total number of messages about seventy-five millions. Morse's apparatus is used nearly exclusively in America, and in sixty per cent. of all the offices in the rest of the world.

304. The principal *improvements* applied to the apparatus of Morse are three in number: 1. *The Repeater*, by which messages may be sent over distances ranging from five hundred to ten thousand miles without re-writing. 2. *The Duplex Apparatus*, invented by Joseph B. Stearns, of Boston, by which as high as sixteen different messages have been faithfully transmitted in opposite directions over the same wire at the same time, eight passing in one direction and eight in the other. 3. *The Telephone*, invented in 1876. The honor of this invention has been contested by Professor A. Graham Bell, of Salem, and Mr. Elisha Gray, of Chicago. By it, sounds, tones, and musical notes are communicated over long distances in the electric current. A



CHARLES GOODYEAR.

gentleman in Portland talked with his friends in Boston, recognizing them by their voices. A lady in Boston talked with her friend in Salem *in a whisper*. A ball in Chicago has been supplied with music by wire from Milwaukee.

305. In 1839, Charles Goodyear discovered the process of *vulcanizing rubber*, by the accidental mixing of a bit of rubber and sulphur on a red-hot stove. This simple

discovery was the basis of the present great rubber industries throughout the world.

306. Soon after the purchase of *Florida*, it was organized as a territory. It contained the oldest settle-

ments in the Union. On the last day of his administration Tyler signed a bill for its admission as a state.



SEAL OF FLORIDA.

307. In 1842, an announcement was made of the discovery of the *antarctic continent*. Four years be-

fore, the government had sent out an exploring expedition into the antarctic seas. It was attended by a strong scientific corps. It made many important discoveries in the far south, and coasted along the antarctic continent a distance of about two thousand miles.

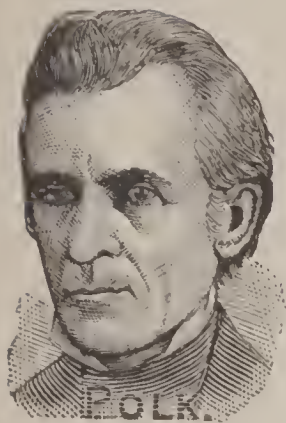
308. When the time for *the presidential campaign* came again, Congress and the country were violently agitated by the Texas question. It was the main issue dividing the parties. The Whigs, who opposed the annexation, nominated Henry Clay, the idol of his party. The Democrats, who favored it, nominated James K. Polk, of Tennessee. The Abolitionists again nominated James G. Birney. The canvass was a zealously contested one. Clay was in a trying place. He was not pro-slavery enough for the South, nor anti-slavery enough for the North. Just before election he disgusted his friends and ruined his chances by writing: "Personally, I could have no objection to the annexation of Texas."

309. *Election day* decided the contest in favor of Polk, who received a large electoral, and a small popular, majority. Birney, as before, did not receive a single electoral vote; but he was supported by sixty-five thousand popular ballots. The result was to be the Mexican war, as had often been foretold. Thus the Democrats assumed control again; and, the Texas bill having passed three days before, the presidency of Tyler ended amid the hurrahs of the Democrats and the curses of the Whigs.

CHAPTER XII.

POLK'S ADMINISTRATION.

1845 — 1849.



310. *The new President* had served in Congress, as member or Speaker, for fourteen years. He had served as Governor of Tennessee, and at the early age of forty-nine was called to the presidential chair. His election united the Democratic party, which had been disturbed by political differences during Tyler's term of office. He was pledged to the one-term principle, and hence was not a candidate for re-election. He died of the cholera three months after his retirement.

311. A question relating to the *northwestern boundary* was settled at this time. Oregon had long been claimed by the United States from the discoveries of Lewis and Clarke, but the region had really been under control of the British fur companies. Many Americans settled there, but no definite boundaries had been established. The United States claimed as far north as $54^{\circ} 40'$; and the mottoes, "Fifty-four forty or fight," and "All Oregon or none," became popular electioneering cries. But it was finally decided that the line should be drawn at 49° . This reflected credit on Polk's administration, and finally gave satisfaction to all.

312. No sooner was Texas annexed than the country found it had *another question of boundary* to settle,—this time in the southwest. The Texans claimed the country southward to the Rio Grande; but Mexico declared that the so-called republic of Texas extended no further than to the Nueces. The disputed country was small and unimportant. The United States took up the quarrel of Texas, and both parties marched to get possession of the contested territory by force of arms.

313. The Americans built Fort Brown, on the Rio Grande. This the Mexicans attacked. On the march to relieve the garrison, the American commander, General Zachary Taylor, met and defeated six thousand Mexicans at **Palo Alto**. Such was the beginning of the Mexican war.



TO ILLUSTRATE THE MEXICAN WAR.

defended by ten thousand men. The siege lasted three days; and then the Americans rushed through the streets and alleys, under a destructive fire from the roofs and windows, dashed into the houses, and thus compelled the Mexicans to surrender.

316. At **Buena Vista**, Taylor's army was attacked by twenty thousand of the best troops of Mexico, under their best general, Santa Anna. The battle lasted till night, and closed in favor of the Americans. Taylor's work was

314. The *plan of the war* was to invade Mexico on three different lines. 1. General Taylor was to advance southward from the Rio Grande. 2. General Kearney was to cross the Rocky Mountains and conquer New Mexico and California. 3. General Scott was to advance from the gulf coast against the Mexican capital.

315. *General Taylor* advanced to Monterrey, a city surrounded by mountains and deep ravines, its streets barricaded and

now done. He simply held the country, sending most of his troops to aid General Scott.

317. *General Kearney*, with 2,700 men, started from Kansas, and marched nearly a thousand miles to Santa Fe. He took the capital of New Mexico without bloodshed, and then started on to the conquest of California. On his march he met the noted hunter and mountaineer, Kit Carson, who informed him that California was already in American possession.

318. A few years before, a young surveyor, named *John C. Fremont*, had been sent with sixty men to survey a southern route to Oregon. He learned that the Mexican commander in California was organizing a force to drive out the American settlers. He resolved to protect them. They flocked to Fremont's standard, and in every engagement they defeated their Mexican enemy. By Fremont's advice, the people declared themselves independent, and Mexican authority in California was at an end. No discoverer since Lewis and Clarke had done so much as Fremont in extending the knowledge of the far west.

319. *General Scott* landed with twelve thousand men at Vera Cruz, which surrendered after a bombardment of four days. Its defenses were the strongest in America, except those of Quebec. The army then began its march toward the interior, over mountains, sand-hills, and ravines. Several obstinate engagements occurred, in which the Americans were always successful, though opposed by superior numbers. With an army of 6,000, Scott then entered the city, containing a population of 140,000.

320. The *opposition to the war* was very great from the beginning. When hostilities began, the Whigs declared that war was not begun by Mexico, but by General Taylor. The eastern states gave but little support or sympathy, the volunteers coming chiefly from the South. It was apparent to all that the war was fought in the interests of slavery, the object being to increase slave territory on the South, which had been limited on the North by the

Missouri Compromise. It was therefore against the judgment and the conscience of a large body of the people.

321. A treaty of peace, called the *Treaty of Guadalupe Hidalgo*, was ratified, by which Mexico surrendered New Mexico, Utah, and California to the United States, and acknowledged the Rio Grande as the boundary of Texas. In return, the United States were to pay Mexico eighteen million dollars. Thus enough territory was added to the Union to make seventeen states as large as New York.

322. *A summing up* of the contest showed that, though brilliant in a military view, it was far from a success in a financial one, having cost one hundred million dollars, which was forty times as much as the contested territory was worth. In two respects it was a peculiar conflict. 1. It was the only war the United States ever waged for the acquisition of territory. 2. The Americans never lost a battle. They are now believed to have been the aggressors in a hasty and unjustifiable war.

323. Peace was no sooner concluded than the discovery of *gold in California* was announced. Captain Sutter, a Swiss settler in the valley of the Sacramento, employed an American, named Marshall, to erect a saw-mill on the American River. The water, in rushing through the race, deposited a bank of sand; and one day Marshall saw, glittering in this heap, small particles which he knew to be gold. He told Sutter, and they resolved to keep the matter secret.

But the news became noised abroad, and the American settlers in California came flocking to the spot. The whole surface of the country for miles around the saw-mill was torn up by the eager seekers after wealth, and sometimes gold to the value of a thousand dollars was picked up by a miner in an hour. Gold dust was used instead of coined money, and the price of all kinds of provisions became enormously high. For a time there seemed no end of discoveries.

324. Soon the news reached the Atlantic states, and around the world. Then *the gold fever* broke out, and a rush for the diggings set in. Men in every station and business in life left their homes and started for the land of gold. Many took the long, desolate route across the plains, rendered dangerous by Indians, famine and thirst. Some doubled Cape Horn, and others braved the deadly climate of Panama. Within a year San Francisco grew from a village of clay huts to a city of fifteen thousand people, living in caves, tents, wooden shanties, and unpainted hotels. Four million dollars were obtained the first year. It is estimated that a thousand million dollars have been added to the wealth of the world by the mines of California.

For several years the state of society among these adventurers was very bad. Lawlessness and disorder prevailed; but finally the best citizens took matters into their own hands, organized vigilance committees, and administered a rough but prompt justice, which soon brought respect for the law. Within a few years the "gold fever" subsided, and left only disappointment and failure to thousands. But the movement populated the western coast, led to the construction of a railroad across the continent, and opened with the East a commerce greater than that which inspired Columbus to meet unknown dangers on his new route to the Indies.

325. The honor of having invented *the sewing machine* belongs to one man, Elias Howe, of Cambridge, Massachusetts. As early as 1832, Walter Hunt, of New York City, had made a sewing machine, using the shuttle in forming the stitch. *But it could not be made to sew a seam.* Howe was laboring on daily wages as a machinist, when the great idea was suggested to him by a conversation between his employers. He had no knowledge of Hunt's attempts. He used to spend his evenings in searching through books on mechanics, and in watching his wife sew, absorbed in thought. For a long time he tried to

make a machine to imitate the movements of the human hand, but with no success at all. On abandoning this idea,



ELIAS HOWE, JR.

he hit upon those contrivances ever since used in all sewing machines — the shuttle, the needle with the eye in the point, the holding surfaces, and the feed mechanism.

Stealing every possible moment from the labor necessary to support his family, he made a machine *that did the work*, receiving pecuniary aid from his friend and only convert, George Fisher. The machine

was tried in a clothing house, and did more work, and of a better quality, in a given time, than six of the best seamstresses. Strangely enough, no one would buy; and Howe turned to England, where he was swindled out of his invention by a man named Thomas, who afterward made from it an ill-gotten fortune of two million dollars. In order to get money for his passage, Howe left his machine in a pawnbroker's shop, and sadly returned to America.

He toiled on in poverty years longer, till, through the persistent effort of a noble American, Anson Burlingame, his "dear little instrument" was found and brought back. Then, in 1846, he applied for his patent. He was able to prove clearly that the invention was his own, and that it was earlier than all others. His patent was issued. He was able to command money now, and years were spent in discouraging law-suits and contests with infringers, before his claims were affirmed by the courts and his rights secured.

326. *The reception of the invention* was peculiar. In this country it was at first looked upon as a great curiosity, very ingenious, but far too complicated and expensive to come into actual use, except, perhaps, in the largest clothing establishments. In England it met with

actual opposition, where it was argued that it would take employment from the sewing women. More than ten years elapsed after the issue of the first patent before the machine became popular, and was seen outside of large tailoring houses or in the homes of the people.

327. The first machine carried the invention well on toward perfection; but many *improvements* have since been made. Almost two thousand patents have been issued in this country for alleged improvements; but the *great* improvements are not more than ten in number, and were made in the infancy of the machine. The highest place among the improvers belongs to Allen B. Wilson, who invented an effective machine without having seen one, or known of Mr. Howe's labors. Instead of the shuttle he used a revolving hook—a most ingenious device.

I. M. Singer was another of the early improvers. William O. Grover, a Boston tailor, invented the exquisite contrivance by which the famous Grover and Baker stitch is formed. "No successful sewing machine has ever been made which does not contain some of the essential devices of the first attempt;" and every manufacturer in America has paid to Mr. Howe a royalty on every machine, for using the contrivances employed in his "dear little instrument."

328. *The results of the invention* are already vast, and its usefulness has only just begun. The first inventor soon had an ample income as some compensation for his early struggles with poverty; and the large manufacturers of machines made fortunes which can only be counted by millions. The sale of machines has been enormous, as high as one million of American manufacture having been sold in 1872. The chief glory of Elias Howe's achievement consists in emancipating woman from the slavery of the needle.

329. In 1848, the first *asylum for idiots* was set up in Boston. Previously this unfortunate class had been regarded as incapable of improvement. They had been neglected and abused. It was soon shown that they could

be raised from a state of low degradation into a better condition. Many became able to converse in sign language, and about one-fourth of those admitted were enabled to perform the simple duties of life with tolerable ability. There are now ten such schools in the Union, mostly supported by state patronage.

330. **Iowa** was a part of the Louisiana Purchase, and

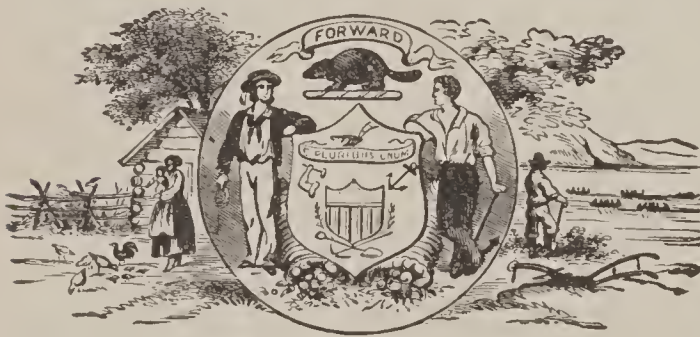


SEAL OF IOWA.

was settled as early as 1788 by a Canadian Frenchman, named Dubuque, who came to mine lead and trade with the Indians. It was organized as a

territory in 1838, and in 1846 was admitted into the Union. Since that time it has had a very rapid development.

331. Like several other states, **Wisconsin** was first



SEAL OF WISCONSIN.

explored by French traders, priests, and trappers. The first settlement was made at Prairie du Chien. It was not much settled by Americans till 1833. It remained

a territory twelve years, and entered the Union in 1848.

332. Both political parties made efforts to secure the control of the territory acquired by the war. For this purpose, *the Wilmot Proviso*, so named from its author, David Wilmot, of Pennsylvania, was introduced into Congress, excluding slavery from the whole of the new acquisitions. It was long discussed, but finally defeated.

333. The subject of slavery, being thrown prominently before the people, led to the formation of a new party, whose object was to oppose the further extension of the system. It was called *the Freesoil party*, and advocated the Wilmot Proviso. It took an active part in politics,

although it was, for many years, small and extremely unpopular. But it was composed of determined men, and it gradually increased in numbers and influence. The Abolitionists joined the Freesoilers. At a later period, under the name of the Republican party, it obtained control of the government.

334. When the time came to nominate *presidential candidates*, the Democrats brought forward Lewis Cass, of Michigan; the Freesoilers, ex-President Martin Van Buren; and the Whigs, General Zachary Taylor. The Freesoilers fought for a principle, and did not expect victory. Van Buren received no electoral votes, but was supported by 290,000 of his countrymen. The real contest lay between Cass and Taylor; and, as the position of their parties respecting slavery in the territories, was not yet clearly made out, the election was decided by the personal popularity of the candidates. The recent military success of General Taylor made him a public favorite, and he was elected by a large majority. Millard Fillmore, of New York, was chosen as Vice-President. Thus the Whigs again came into power.

CHAPTER XIII.

TAYLOR'S AND FILLMORE'S ADMINISTRATIONS.

1849—1853.

335. *The new President* had served with distinction in the Mexican war. He was extremely popular with his soldiers, and they admirably called him "Old Rough and Ready." But he knew nothing of civil affairs, and had taken so little interest in politics that he had never voted in his life. He felt his lack of qualifications, and expressed regrets that he had accepted office. He had nothing but a successful battle to recommend him to the North, and nothing but his slaves to win him the support of the



South. Personally, he was highly esteemed for his patriotism and intense honesty of purpose.

336. Soon after the inauguration, *California*, which had suddenly assumed great importance from the discovery



of gold, called a convention, adopted a constitution prohibiting slavery, and asked to be admitted into the Union. At this, there arose in Congress the old agitation respect-

ing slavery, which had been reasonably quiet at Washington for the last thirty years, since the passage of the Missouri Compromise. The South bitterly opposed the petition, on the ground that California was south of the line of $36^{\circ} 30'$, and therefore open to the introduction of slavery. The North replied that the argument, such as it was, could apply to only a part of the new state, that the Compromise had reference only to the Louisiana purchase, and that the people had chosen freedom, as they had a right to do. Such was the issue about which arose a controversy so bitter that the stability of the Union was endangered.

337. In a spirit of mutual concession, compromise measures were brought forward by Henry Clay, who has been called The Great Pacificator. He had been appointed chairman of a committee of thirteen, to whom all the questions under discussion were referred. He and Webster used all their eloquence in urging the necessity of forbearance and conciliation. This bill—called *The Omnibus Bill*, from the number and variety of its provisions—proposed five things. 1. The admission of California as a free state. 2. That the territories of Utah and New Mexico should be formed without any provision respecting slavery. 3. The formation of not more than four states out of the Territory of Texas, without provision concerning slavery. 4. The abolition of the slave trade in the District of Columbia.

5. The enactment of a more rigorous law for the recovery of fugitive slaves.

338. These proposals only added point to *the debate*. It was urged that the advantage of the last provision should make the compromise acceptable to the South, whence slaves in large numbers were continually escaping. By others it was argued that the bill conceded much to slavery and little to freedom; and that to permit slaveholders to re-capture their escaped slaves in any part of the free states, and to carry them back without proof of ownership or trial by jury, was unconstitutional as well as inhuman. The measure was opposed by the Abolition party all over the country, and by the leading anti-slavery orators, as Horace Mann, Charles Sumner, W. L. Garrison, and Wendell Phillips. But it was acceptable to the South, was supported by Clay, Webster, and other statesmen in the North, and *became a law*.



339. While this contest was going on, the *death of the President* occurred, after an illness of five days. He had served sixteen months. His last words were: "I have tried to do my duty." He was immediately succeeded by Mr. Fillmore.

340. By *the seventh census*, taken in 1850, the population of the whole nation was twenty-three millions (23,191,876).

341. At this time much interest was felt in *arctic exploration*. An English explorer, named Sir John Franklin, had sailed to the arctic seas in 1845. No tidings had been received from his party, and it was feared they might be suffering for help. To discover new lands and to do a deed of humanity, Henry Grinnell, a wealthy merchant of New York, fitted out an expedition for the North. A few years later, another party sailed under Dr. Elisha Kent Kane, a resolute and scientific explorer. No record of Sir John and his men could be found; and no doubt was left

that they had perished in or near the northern seas. Still later voyages to the frozen zone have been made for scientific exploration. One of these was led by Captain Charles F. Hall, and another by Captain Isaac I. Hayes.

342. During this administration the *Department of the Interior* was formed to relieve the Secretary of State of a part of his duties. Thomas Ewing, of Ohio, was the first incumbent, and was charged with the management of public lands, the care of the Indians, and the issuing of patents to inventors.

343. After a trial, it was found that the *operation of the Fugitive Slave Law* only tended to disturb the country still more. In Ohio, a woman named Margaret Garner killed two of her children rather than see them carried back to the South. State troops were called out to aid in the arrest of a fugitive slave named Anthony Burns. Private citizens were obliged by law to assist the slaveholder in arresting and binding his slaves. It was also found that many free colored people in the North were unjustly claimed and returned. In the North these things were regarded as outrages; and in several states laws were passed to restrict or wholly defeat the operation of the Fugitive Slave Law.

344. *The underground railroad* was an anti-slavery invention. Abolitionists near the border of the slave states received runaway slaves into their homes, concealed them from their pursuers, and sent them northward to their friends. These too cared for them and sent them on to another station as before, carefully disguised or concealed. The object of the fugitives was to reach Canada, from which they could not be returned into slavery. Many of them escaped across the Ohio River on floating ice or by lying concealed in vessels. On the coast many hid themselves in the hold of ships, or were sent north in boxes as merchandise. The story of the U. G. R. R. is full of pathetic and tragic interest. The Abolitionists believed that they were justified in opposing and thwarting an unholy law for the sake of oppressed humanity.

345. During this administration the country was called upon to mourn *the loss of distinguished men*, as well as the death of a President. John C. Calhoun died at the age of sixty-eight. Two years afterward, Henry Clay and Daniel Webster closed their careers. Thus within four years America lost her three greatest orators and statesmen.

346. When the next President was to be elected, the *attitude of parties* was peculiar. The question at issue was the Compromise Act of 1850. But both Democrats and Whigs were agreed on the wisdom of that measure, and stood by the provisions of the Omnibus Bill. The Freesoilers doubted its wisdom, and declared that all the territories should be free.

347. *The candidates* were Franklin Pierce, of New Hampshire, representing the Democratic party, who was nominated on the forty-ninth ballot — “a man whose previous obscurity served at least to shield him from personal attack.” General Winfield Scott represented the Whigs; and John P. Hale, of New Hampshire, the Freesoilers. Pierce was elected by a large majority, Scott receiving the vote of only three states.

CHAPTER XIV.

PIERCE'S ADMINISTRATION.

1853 — 1857.

348. *The new Chief Magistrate* was a lawyer of prominence and a statesman of considerable ability. He



had been a member of both houses of Congress, and had served with distinction as a general in the Mexican war. He was one of that large class called northern men with southern principles. His term of office was one of the stormiest in our history. He came into office pledged to suppress the slavery agitation, and his sympathies and influence were always in

favor of the South. But afterward, when the civil war

broke out, he espoused the cause of the Union, and urged a support of the government at Washington.

349. In the early part of this presidency, an acquisition of territory was made in the purchase of a strip of land on the Mexican border. At the time of the treaty of Guadalupe Hidalgo, the maps were so imperfect that the lines were not drawn with sufficient exactness. Both countries claimed the Mesilla valley, which was said to be very fertile, and which was important to the United States as affording what was regarded as the best route to California. For ten million dollars Mexico surrendered its title to the disputed territory, and guaranteed to the United States the free navigation of the Gulf of California and the Colorado River. This acquisition was called the *Gadsden Purchase*, from the name of the minister who negotiated it. It was afterward organized into the Territory of Arizona.

350. Very soon the President was called upon to take a part in the opening ceremonies of the *World's Fair*, an exhibition of all nations. Two years before, England had erected a costly building of glass and iron, and had invited the different nations to put on exhibition samples of their manufactures, inventions, agricultural products, and works of art. Now a similar enterprise was started here. A Crystal Palace was built in New York, and filled with the choicest products of all nations. Thousands visited it from all parts of the land; and, though not a financial success, it diffused correct ideas of the advance of the world, and cultivated a mutual acquaintance and respect between the nations. International fairs have been an expensive but fashionable luxury with the leading nations ever since.

351. The acquisition of California made a *treaty with Japan* very desirable. The jealousy of that empire toward other nations had closed its ports to foreign commerce, and seamen shipwrecked on the coast were treated with the greatest cruelty. When the fleet of the United States appeared in the waters of Japan, the authorities, amazed at such boldness, warned the Americans to depart.

The order was disregarded, and a plan for a commercial treaty unfolded. On a stated day the expedition landed and delivered the letter of the President. The procession was received with great pomp, and informed that an answer would be returned in the spring. The treaty which followed opened the ports of Japan almost for the first time in history, and secured to American merchants the rich commerce of the East.

352. The construction of a *Pacific Railroad* had been proposed for several years. As early as 1846, a Mr. Whitney proposed to make a road from Lake Michigan to the mouth of the Columbia River, if Congress would vote him a strip of land ten miles wide on each side of the track. This bill was lost through indifference rather than opposition. Three years later, P. F. Degrand proposed to construct from St. Louis to San Francisco a double-track road, if Congress would vote one hundred million dollars and the same amount of land as was demanded by Whitney. The Panama Railroad was completed by American capitalists in 1855. In 1853, the first corps of engineers was sent out to survey the various routes to the Pacific. The enterprise was at first pronounced an idle dream, then considered possible, and finally begun and finished, though not till many years after the work was projected.

353. *The slavery agitation* took the form of a contest about the territorial organization of a vast region west of the Missouri River. The friends of slavery claimed that the Omnibus Bill, by admitting California as a free state, had broken the Missouri Compromise; but the friends of freedom insisted on its validity.

354. In order to secure a temporary settlement of the matter, Stephen A. Douglas, a Senator from Illinois, introduced a bill, known as the *Kansas-Nebraska Bill*, providing for the organization of two territories, to be called Kansas and Nebraska. It was proposed to leave the question of slavery or freedom to the people of these territories for decision when they should seek admission as

states. Immediately the violent debates in Congress and the stormy scenes among the people broke forth again. The doctrine of popular sovereignty, sometimes nicknamed "squatter sovereignty," was violently denounced in one section, and praised as the very essence of republicanism in the other. Three thousand clergymen of New England petitioned Congress against the bill; but all efforts to defeat it failed, and it became a law. It was a virtual repeal of the Missouri Compromise.

355. *The effect* was immediately apparent. The law increased rather than allayed the excitement. In the North it was said that an attempt was made to introduce slavery everywhere; and the story was told of a Senator from Georgia who had boasted that he would yet live to "call the roll of his slaves from Bunker Hill." The anti-slavery party was greatly strengthened, and a struggle ensued between the champions of slavery and the friends of freedom to secure possession of the new territories. From both North and South emigrants rushed to Kansas to out-number and out-vote each other.

This was especially the case with a class of Missourians, who could cross the border, commit depredations, vote at elections, and retreat undisturbed. These invaders were called Border Ruffians. They took possession of the Missouri River, and prevented settlers from the North from entering Kansas, except by a circuitous route through Iowa. The United States officials supported sometimes one party and sometimes the other, and governor after governor, sent out from Washington, was removed or resigned in despair. Two separate constitutions, two rival Legislatures, and two capitals were chosen by the settlers. Civil war was apparently inevitable, and it came in its worst form.

356. "*Bleeding Kansas*" was the universal talk. The ruffians sacked and burned the town of Lawrence, lately settled by men from Massachusetts. Frequent conflicts between the military parties occurred. Stealing horses and cattle became very common, so that men would

speak of a pro-slavery horse or an anti-slavery cow, according to the political views of the owner. Outrages of all kinds were committed, and neither life nor property was safe. Peace was not restored till the President sent a governor backed by a strong military force.

357. *A memorable incident* of this contest in Congress was the election of Nathaniel P. Banks, of Massachusetts, as Speaker of the House of Representatives. This was accomplished on the 133d ballot, after a contest of about two months, and was regarded as a victory for the anti-slavery party.

358. A very exciting event in these troublous times was the *assault on Charles Sumner*, the Senator from Massachusetts. The occasion of this outrage was a speech delivered by Mr. Sumner a short time before, on *The Crime against Kansas*, in which he had denounced slavery, its champions, and its measures, in the severest terms. Preston S. Brooks, a Representative from South Carolina, with a heavy cane assaulted the Senator in his seat, and beat him over the



CHARLES SUMNER.

head till he fell bleeding and senseless to the floor. This ruffianly personal assault, in the midst of the bitterness of partisan debate, created a still wilder storm of excitement in the land.

359. The old *party issues* between the Whigs and Democrats had gradually disappeared as the old leaders passed away. The slavery question now overshadowed every other issue. The Freesoilers, the free-soil Democrats, and nine-tenths of the Whigs united into a new party under the name of Republicans. The exclusion of slavery from all the territories by action of Congress was the main feature

of their platform. The Democratic party preserved its organization, and re-affirmed the doctrines of the Kansas-Nebraska Bill. Besides these, there was an American, or Know-Nothing party, opposed to foreign, and especially Roman Catholic, influence in national legislation. It desired to ignore the slavery question, and held as a leading proposition, "Americans should rule America."

360. At the *presidential election*, which was preceded by a very exciting canvass, the Americans, with Millard Fillmore as their nominee, carried one state — Maryland. The Republicans, with John C. Fremont at the head of their ticket, carried eleven states. The Democrats, favoring the extension of slavery wherever it found its way by the will of the people, were victorious in the election of James Buchanan, of Pennsylvania, as President, and John C. Breckinridge, of Kentucky, as Vice-President.

CHAPTER XV.

BUCHANAN'S ADMINISTRATION.

1857 — 1861.



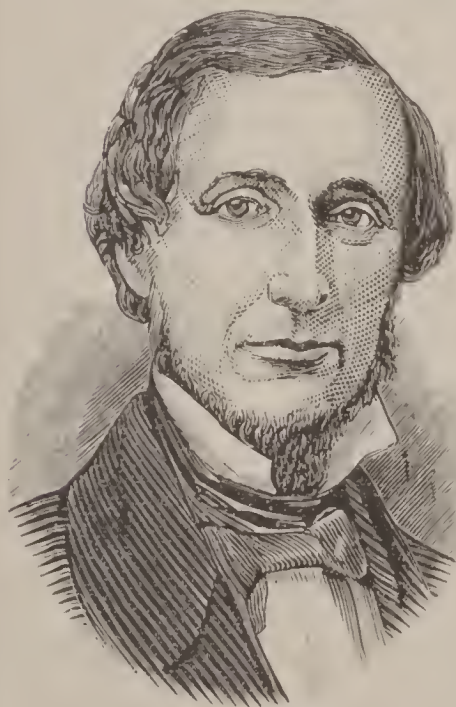
361. *The new Executive* had been styled the Bachelor President. He had been a Senator, Secretary of State, and Minister to Russia and England. He came into power at a critical time, and declared the object of his administration to be "to destroy every sectional party, whether North or South, and to restore, if possible, that fraternal feeling between the states that had existed during the early days of the republic."

362. During his first year, *the Mormons* in Utah assumed a defiant bearing, refusing to acknowledge any governor but Brigham Young, and even compelling a United States judge to adjourn his court at the point of the bowie-

knife. A force of twenty-five hundred was sent to bring them into subjection. They then concluded to come to terms. The troops remained in Utah two years to maintain order and enforce the laws.

363. It is pleasing to turn from political quarrels to the history of *the Atlantic cable*. As early as 1845, Mr. Morse had ventured the wild prediction that "telegraphic communication on the electro-magnetic plan will be established across the Atlantic ocean." But no message was ever sent through a submerged wire till John J. Craven, in the employ of Morse, in 1846, after many persevering experiments, made a cable by protecting a wire with gutta-percha. He laid it across the Hudson River, and sent messages through the water. To him belongs the honor of being the pioneer in submarine telegraphy. When the fact was established that messages could be sent under water, experiments multiplied in this country and in Europe, and it was not long before several short lines were laid. None of them were longer than one hundred and fifteen miles.

364. The *origin of the enterprise* was in the



CYRUS W. FIELD.

dining-room of Cyrus W. Field, a wealthy merchant of New York, in March, 1854. Seven enterprising and prominent citizens were present. They matured their designs, and proceeded to its execution. A construction company was formed, both in this country and in England. A short line was laid from Nova Scotia to Newfoundland, and soundings were made with a view of extending it to Ireland. It was found that the ocean was in no

place more than two and a half miles deep, and that the bottom was nearly level.

365. The *construction of the cable* was a work of the greatest difficulty, and sixty-two different kinds of rope were tried before the exact form and character was determined. The conducting line was made in the form of a strand, being composed of one central wire and six others drawn around it, all of the purest copper. This strand was covered with gutta-percha to exclude the water, and several other wires outside to add strength. The cable was made in England, and was coiled up on board two large steamers, which sailed for America, uncoiling the cable and dropping it quietly into the sea. Soon it broke, and that attempt was a failure. The next summer two steamers were sent into mid-ocean, the ends were spliced, and the vessels steamed away toward their respective countries. A hundred miles were payed out when a second break occurred. Again the ships met, re-spliced, and sailed away. This time both ends were successfully landed, and a strong current of electricity was received from the other side of the Atlantic.

366. *The success* was announced to the world in the business-like dispatch of Mr. Field, "The cable is successfully laid." The public, discouraged by delays and failures, had lost faith in ultimate success. The news thrilled the country like an electric shock, and the whole land sent up a shout of rejoicing. Congratulatory messages were sent by Queen Victoria and President Buchanan. Then was sent, "Europe and America are united by telegraph. Glory to God in the highest; on earth peace and good will toward men."

367. In 1859, a new industry was suddenly developed in western Pennsylvania. It was *the petroleum business*. As early as 1819, in boring a well in Ohio for brine for salt-making, a mineral oil was struck, instead of water. It was a source of great annoyance to the salt-makers. Attempts to use it for illuminating purposes failed for want of proper lamps. Many years afterward, oil was extensively

made from coal, and was called kerosene or coal-oil. The process of manufacture was expensive, and it was finally proposed to sink wells for the native mineral oil.

A well was bored in Venango County, Pennsylvania, seventy-two feet deep, from which a flow of ten barrels a day was obtained. This yield was worth two hundred dollars. The wildest excitement and speculation immediately followed. Land, worthless before, became of immense value, and wells were sunk in great numbers in all directions. Some of these yielded nothing, and others as high as two thousand barrels a day. The speculative spirit passed away in a few years, and the business became a settled industry. Large fortunes have been made, and an excellent and cheap illumination has been furnished for the world.

368. In spite of the President's efforts, the *slavery question* continued to be the disturbing theme. The North was irritated at the defiant bearing of the slave power; and the South was angered at the growing opposition to their institutions.

369. Soon the *Dred Scott Decision* was made, by which the Supreme Court of the United States declared that negroes are not, and can not become, citizens. Chief-Justice Taney referred to the fact of history (and was understood by many to declare) that "negroes have no rights which white men are bound to respect."

370. Several of the free states immediately passed *Personal Liberty Bills*, intended to prevent the execution of the Fugitive Slave Law, and to secure runaway slaves the benefit of trial by jury.

371. The country was soon startled by *the John Brown raid*. The scheme was devised by an old man named John Brown, who, with his sons, had taken a part in the border warfare in Kansas, and had done some sharp fighting there. His plan was to excite an insurrection among the slaves, arm them, and thus attack slavery in the

slave states themselves. In order to secure weapons for his army of blacks, he, with twenty-one followers, seized the arsenal at Harper's Ferry, and held the town.



JOHN BROWN.

By delaying his departure he was overpowered by the state militia, and most of his companions were killed. A few others who were posted on the outside of the town escaped to the mountains, and thence, after many perils and hardships, to the free states. Brown was put on trial before a Virginia jury charged with murder, treason, and exciting insurrection. In a few weeks after conviction, he was hung, his last act being to kiss the forehead of a slave child on his way to execution.

372. With the Southern people the *effects of the raid* were immediate and disastrous. It was taken as evidence of an intention to make war on the South, and as the natural result of free-soil doctrines. It was the most powerful argument ever placed in the hands of the disunionists. The South listened with favor to the idea of secession, and in the alarm and excitement forgot that most Northern people condemned the mad attempt of Brown.

373. About two hundred years ago, Father Hennepin, a



SEAL OF MINNESOTA.

French priest, visited *Minnesota*. In

1805, Lieutenant Pike explored the Mississippi to its source. The first white settlements were made by a party from the Brit-

ish possessions in the north. Its climate being severe, its growth was slow. In 1857 it entered the Union.

374. Lewis and Clarke were the early explorers of *Oregon*. The first settlement was made at Astoria, as a fur-trading post, by John Jacob Astor, a wealthy merchant of New York. There were no American *homes* in



SEAL OF OREGON.

Oregon till 1834, when a little company of Methodist missionaries settled in the valley of the Willamette. Its population increased rapidly after the discovery of gold on the Pacific coast. It became a state in 1859.

375. *In Kansas* the struggle between freedom and slavery still went on.



SEAL OF KANSAS.

The President gave his influence to support the pro-slavery men; but so strong was the tide of immigration from the free states that it was found impossible to

fasten slavery upon the territory. Kansas entered the Union in 1861 as a free state, after six years of angry agitation.

376. *The eighth census*, taken in 1860, indicated a population of over thirty-one millions (31,443,321).

377. As the time for another election drew near, public attention was directed to the *Democratic national convention* at Charleston. About six hundred delegates were in attendance, and they were much divided on the question of slavery. The Southern delegates, being unable to obtain an expression of their views in the platform, withdrew from the convention. Thus the great Democratic party, which had been victorious for so many years, was split asunder. The wedge was slavery.

378. Thus the people were divided into *four parties*.

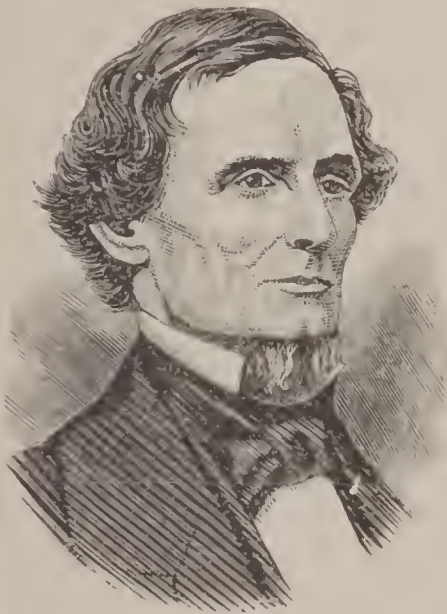
The Southern Democrats nominated John C. Breckinridge, and declared that Congress had recognized slavery in the territories, and that any citizen has a right to take slave property into any territory without forfeiting ownership. The Northern Democrats nominated Stephen A. Douglas, and declared that slavery or freedom is a question to be decided entirely by the white settlers in a territory. The Republicans nominated Abraham Lincoln, of Illinois, and declared that, as there is no law for slavery in the territories, and no Legislature to enact one, Congress is bound to prohibit it in every territory. The Constitutional Union party nominated John Bell, of Tennessee, and pronounced somewhat vaguely the motto, "The Union, the Constitution, and the enforcement of the laws."

379. *The canvass* was one of extraordinary excitement. The public mind was troubled by signs of coming danger. Efforts were made to repeat "the hard cider campaign." Immense processions paraded the streets, in which men split fence-rails on platforms. The Wide-Awakes, with capes and torches, were organized by thousands. "Honest Old Abe," "Abe, the Railsplitter," and many other inspiring epithets were on the lips of the Republicans. From first to last the campaign was a triumphant success. On the night after the election, the telegraph flashed the news over the land that Abraham Lincoln was elected President, and Hannibal Hamlin, of Maine, Vice-President.

380. *Threats of secession*, in the event of Lincoln's election, had been freely made during the campaign by the Southern leaders. They now declared it was time to leave a government which had fallen into the hands of their avowed enemies. The North had much to say to them about the crime and cowardice of ruining a government they could not rule. It was believed that this threat was a mere election artifice to secure votes, and would not be executed. In this the country was mistaken.

381. As soon as Lincoln's election was ascertained, *the work of secession* began in South Carolina, which,

since Jackson's time, had been the center of political discontent. A convention was called, at which a resolution favoring secession was unanimously adopted. The Legislature immediately passed an ordinance of withdrawal from the Union. It was a momentous step. The action was contagious. Within six weeks, Mississippi, Florida, Alabama, Georgia, Louisiana, and Texas passed similar ordinances, and their Representatives and Senators at Washington resigned their seats and left to follow the fortunes of their states.



JEFFERSON DAVIS.

382. Just before the end of Buchanan's term, delegates from the seceded states met at Montgomery, and formed a government called *The Confederate States of America*. They elected Jefferson Davis, of Mississippi, as President, and Alexander H. Stephens, of Georgia, as Vice-President. Committees were appointed on finance, foreign relations, and military affairs. The righteousness of slavery as a permanent institution was boldly declared, and the policy was openly announced to establish a slave-holding republic in the South.

383. *The course of events* was very rapid. Most of the friends and indorsers of the President either favored secession or opposed all attempts to arrest its progress. He was distracted by diverse councils, and allowed most of the forts and arsenals in the seceded states to be seized, one after another, with their munitions of war. For years the military stores had been quietly conveyed southward, under authority of a pro-slavery Secretary of War. The army had been reduced and stationed at remote parts on the frontier, and the navy was scattered on distant seas. There was a cry of "No coercion!" and affairs steadily drifted toward

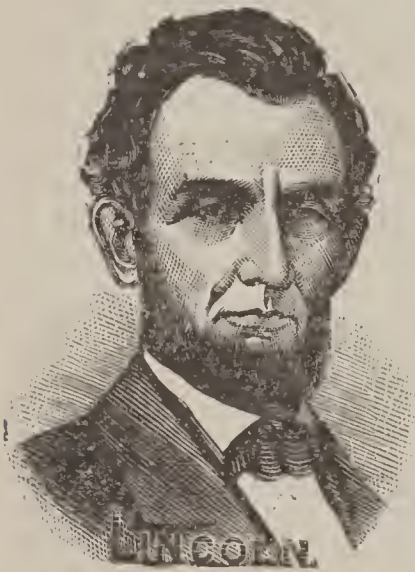
war. For the first time in the history of the republic, the President-elect slipped into Washington secretly and at night. Amid the upheavals of revolution, and in public and private alarm, the calamitous presidency of Buchanan ended.

CHAPTER XVI.

LINCOLN'S ADMINISTRATION.

1861—1865.

384. *The new President* had risen from humble life to the Legislature and to Congress. Though he opposed slavery, he did not think the Constitution gave Congress a right to interfere with it where it already existed.



385. In *his inaugural address* he declared that no state could voluntarily withdraw from the Union; that he had no intention to interfere with slavery; but that his oath of office made it his duty to hold, occupy, and possess all the

property of the United States. To the seceded states he said: "In your hands, my dissatisfied countrymen, not in mine, is the momentous issue of civil war."

386. The *indications of war* were too lightly estimated by both sections. The South believed that the people of the North were so engrossed in money-making, and so enfeebled by luxurious living, that they could not send out a vigorous soldiery, and that victory would be easy. They said, "Cotton is king," and believed that foreign nations would soon end the war, in order to supply themselves with that staple. The North thought the matter was all bluster, and that the South would not dare to fight for slavery with four million slaves exposed to the chances of war.

387. Hostilities began at *Fort Sumter*, in Charleston

harbor. It was garrisoned by Major Anderson with eighty men. Its supplies being nearly exhausted, the President resolved to provision it. The Confederates demanded its surrender. This being refused, it was bombarded from the city for thirty-four hours. His men being exhausted, his quarters on fire, and his ammunition nearly gone, Anderson surrendered the fort. These events occurred April 12 and 13, 1861. The war had begun.

388. A *review of the causes* which brought on the civil conflict would show that the evil tree had been planted by a past generation, and that its roots were spreading out into all the national life. 1. The difference in habits and pursuits had tended to weaken the bonds of common ancestry. 2. Different opinions of the nature of the government,—whether it was an indivisible union or a mere compact of states,—had existed from the days of Washington. 3. It had long been foreseen that the balance of political power, which was steadily moving northward, would at some time overthrow the southern rule. 4. The failure of the Missouri Compromise, which had preserved peace for forty years, revived the earlier threats of disunion.

5. The tariff, resulting in nullification, was seen to favor the manufacturing North at the expense of the cotton-growing South. 6. Little intercourse between the two sections led to jealousy and suspicion, till they looked upon each other almost as separate nationalities. 7. The publication of sectional books, whose popularity depended on the animosity between the two sections, were generally filled with ridicule and falsehood, and did much to embitter the sectional hatred. 8. The slavery question; especially as involved in the annexation of Texas, the Fugitive Slave Law, the Dred Scott Decision, the Kansas struggle, the John Brown raid,—these, all these tended to alienate the sympathies of the people, and, in the excitements of the passing hour, make them forget their common interests and their common struggles for independence. The gates of war were opened.

1861.

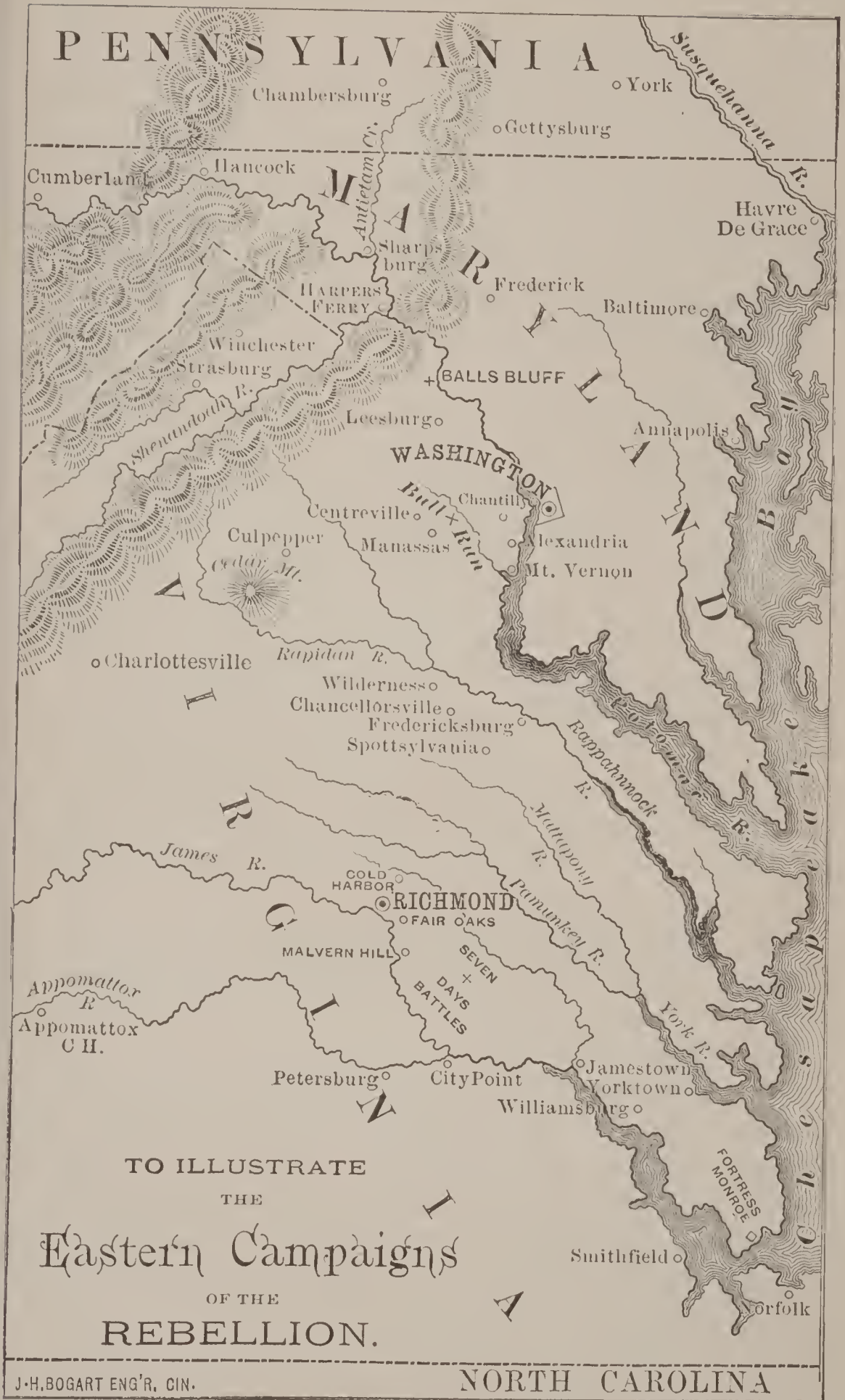
389. The *effect of the news* from Sumter was wonderful. No one who was not in the midst of it can imagine the storm of excitement that swept over the land. *In the North*, people had thought that patient labor at reconciliation would bring the seceded states back into the Union, and that the only object was to frighten the North into concessions to slavery. Some had thought the South should be allowed to go, and very few believed there would be much fighting. When the attack came, intense indignation prevailed everywhere, and thousands who before had expressed sympathy with the movement, now declared in favor of the Union.

390. *In the South* the effect was scarcely less marked. The wildest joy was manifested that the blow had at last been struck that would bring safety to their institutions. The colored people took sides with the Union, but, being unarmed and ignorant, counted little. White citizens who opposed disunion were either forced into silence, killed, or driven away.

391. A *call for troops* was made in both the North and the South. President Lincoln called for 75,000 volunteers, to serve three months. The Confederacy called for 38,000. Both of these calls were responded to with the utmost alacrity. Four states—Virginia, North Carolina, Arkansas, and Tennessee—not having joined the Confederacy, were included in Lincoln's call. They sent back defiant replies, and soon joined the fortunes of the South. The other four slave states—Delaware, Maryland, Kentucky, and Missouri—refused to secede, and declared in favor of neutrality. They were thus saved to the Union.

392. *The scene of the war*, as now became evident, was to be Virginia in the East, and the border slave states, Kentucky and Missouri, in the West. From both sections troops rushed forward to occupy these states.

393. The *operations in the East* were divided



into two campaigns—one in western Virginia, and the other in northern Virginia.

394. *In western Virginia* the Union forces, under General George B. McClellan, numbered thirty thousand, and the Confederates ten thousand. The engagements all resulted in victory for the Union; but they were of no great magnitude. They served to encourage the North, and led to the appointment of McClellan to the main command.

395. *In northern Virginia* the army, under General McDowell, crossed the Potomac and took Alexandria. To take Richmond was the object of the operations in the East during all the years of the war. Led on by the popular cry, "*On to Richmond!*" a forward movement was made. After some skirmishing, the two armies met at *Bull Run*. About thirty-five thousand men were engaged on each side. A severe battle ensued, and lasted nearly all day. McDowell's army was then thrown into utter confusion, and fled panic-stricken to Washington.

396. *The result* of this battle was to convince the country that the war was to be no mere holiday affair. The North saw that the southern people could fight and win victories. Both sides set to work to collect and equip gigantic armies. President Lincoln called for half a million volunteers to serve three years.

397. The *operations in the West* were confined to Missouri. There was some sharp fighting for possession of the State. In most of the engagements the Union forces were compelled to retreat.

398. *The Southern ports* had been closed early in the year by a blockade declared by President Lincoln. No ship was allowed to enter or leave. It was a long line of coast to be guarded by a small navy, and fast-sailing steamers found little difficulty in running the blockade. By escaping past the Union ships on dark nights, during the first part of the war, cotton was largely exported to England, and sold at a high price for muskets, siege-guns, powder, and cartridges. For a long time the inefficiency

of the blockade enabled the South to continue the struggle by obtaining supplies from Europe. But ships were rapidly made or purchased, and finally the government at Washington was able to *seal* the southern ports.

399. ***Coast operations*** were carried on to capture these blockaded ports. Two forts at Hatteras Inlet and two at Port Royal, were taken. They were converted into depots of supplies for the Union fleet and armies. A number of privateers were fitted out by the South to roam over the sea and prey on the commerce of the North. In this the South was very successful, the privateer *Sumter* alone capturing many rich cargoes.

400. ***Foreign relations*** during the war were satisfactory to neither of the contesting parties. Soon after the opening of hostilities, England and France issued proclamations of neutrality, but acknowledged the South as a belligerent power and entitled to the rights of nations struggling for independence. This caused anger and alarm at the North, where it had been hoped that foreign nations would take no part in the quarrel. In the South it caused deep disappointment, where it had been expected that the foreign demand for cotton would lead the nations to acknowledge the independence of the Confederacy, and to break the blockade.

401. An event called ***the Trent affair***, at this time, greatly endangered peaceful relations with England. Mason and Slidell, two Confederate ambassadors to England and France, ran the blockade and took passage on board the *Trent*, an English mail steamer. The next day the *Trent* was stopped by a United States war vessel, and the commissioners were seized and imprisoned at Boston. When the news reached England, the whole kingdom burst into a blaze of anger. The release of the envoys and satisfaction for the insult to a neutral flag were positively demanded.

War was averted by the wise and far-reaching diplomacy of the Secretary of State, William H. Seward. He admitted that the seizure was not warranted by the law of nations,

and declared that it was done without authority from Washington. A suitable apology was made, and the ambassadors were released and sent to their destination. Thus England was committed to a policy concerning the rights of neutral vessels which she had always denied, and which the United States had always contended for.

402. During the year *the currency* of the nation greatly changed. The banks suspended specie payments, and nearly all the gold and silver in the country was sent to Europe to buy military supplies. A new paper currency was created on the credit of the government. In the North "greenbacks," and in the South "confederate scrip," became the money of the people.

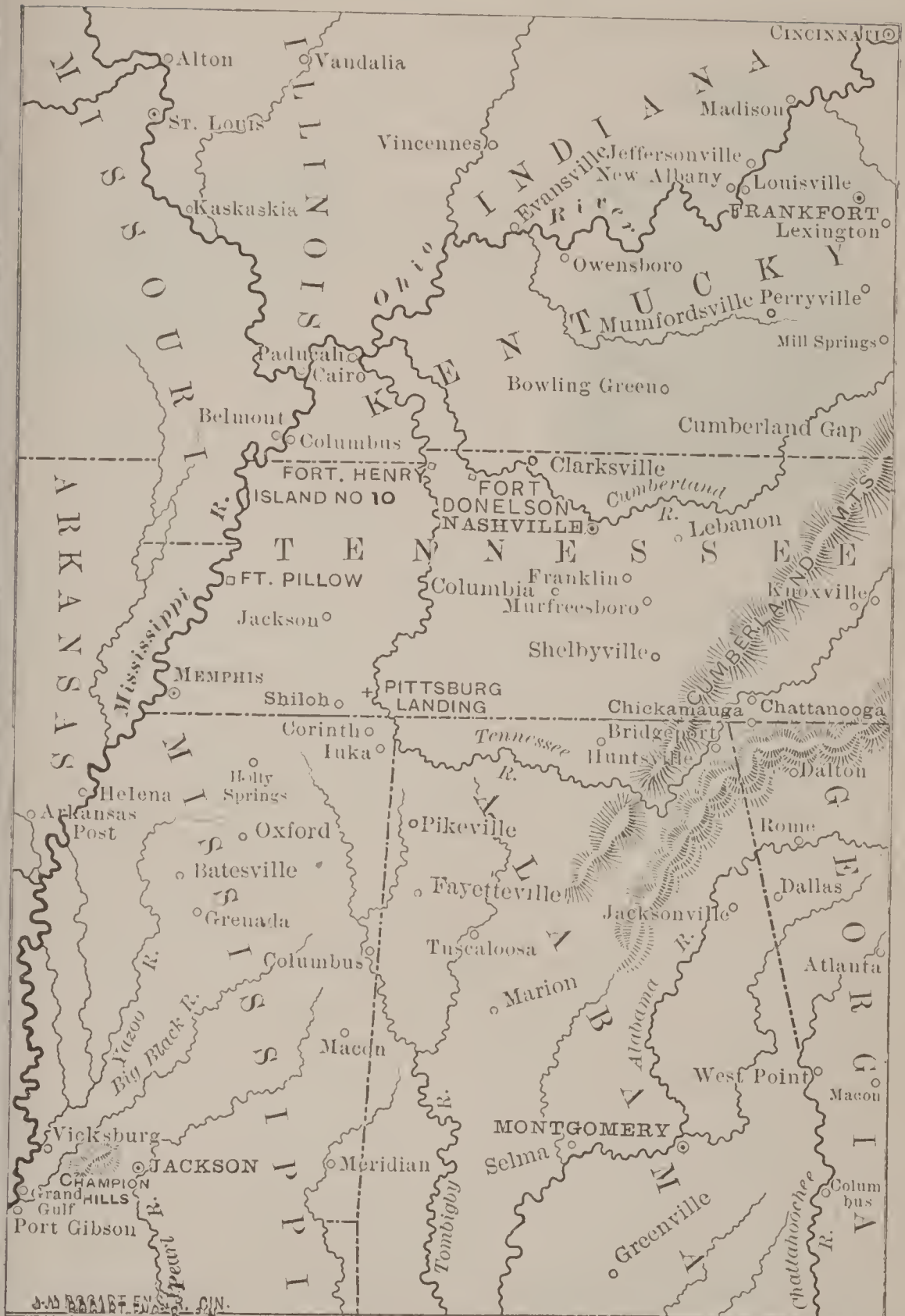
403. The *preparations* for a long war went ceaselessly forward during the winter. Foundries, ship-yards, and manufactories were kept busy night and day. The entire energies of both governments centered in the prosecution of the war.

1862.

404. *The armies* during this year were much the largest that had ever appeared on the continent. The whole Union force amounted to about half a million. The Confederate was somewhat smaller.

405. *In the East*, General McClellan, with two hundred thousand men, set out from Washington to capture the Confederate capital. He proceeded but a short distance when he changed his plan and embarked for Yorktown. From that point he advanced to within seven miles of Richmond without much resistance. Here McClellan was attacked, and the bloody battle of *Fair Oaks* was fought, lasting two days, and ending without decisive results.

In it, the Confederate commander-in-chief, General Joseph E. Johnston, was severely wounded. He was succeeded by General Robert E. Lee, a man of high military talents, who remained, to the end, the chief stay of the Confederacy. McClellan thought best to change the base

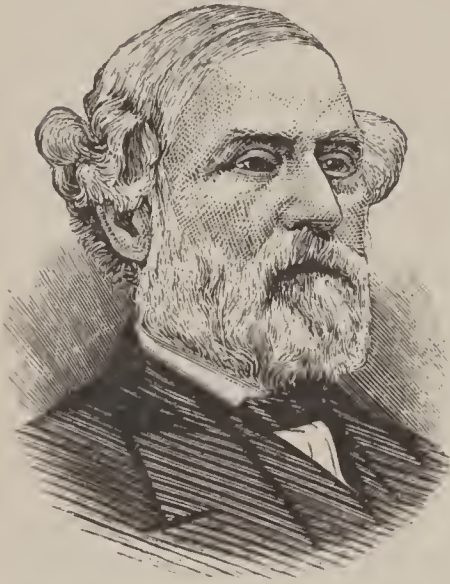


TO ILLUSTRATE

THE

Western Campaigns
OF THE
REBELLION.

of his operations to the James River, in order to be near his supplies and transports on that stream. This extremely hazardous movement brought on a series of obstinate battles, called the *Seven Days' Battles of the Peninsula*. For a week the roar of battle was almost incessant, but the encounters were indecisive, though the Union forces were obliged to retreat. The campaign ended with a loss of forty thousand.



GENERAL ROBERT E. LEE.

406. Richmond being thus rendered secure, Lee resolved upon an *invasion of the North*. In numerous hotly-contested battles between Generals Lee and Pope, the Confederates were successful, and the Union army was driven into Washington. Lee marched into Maryland. Meanwhile, McClellan had hastily placed his army on transports and gone northward, following Lee. The latter made a stand at *Antietam*; and, when McClellan came up, one of the greatest battles of the war was fought, raging all day and shattering both armies. Lee retreated into Virginia, and McClellan was superseded by General Ambrose E. Burnside. Lee's invasion cost him thirty thousand men. The Union losses were about the same.

407. The new commander advanced toward Fredericksburg, which was held by Lee, and strongly fortified in the rear. When Burnside crossed the river, he brought on the bloody battle of *Fredericksburg*, which resulted in a Union defeat, with a dreadful loss of twelve thousand.

408. *In the West*, the commander, General U. S. Grant, resolved to drive out the enemy from Kentucky and Tennessee. By the aid of the Federal gunboats, commanded by Commodore Foote, *Fort Henry*, on the Tennessee River, was taken. The army and the flotilla then proceeded to *Fort Donelson*, on the Cumberland River. This

place soon surrendered with ten thousand prisoners. The army then occupied Nashville, the Confederates collecting their forces and falling back to a second line of defenses, of which Corinth was the center. This was the first decided victory won by the Union arms.



CONFEDERATE FLAG.

409. At *Shiloh* these armies met again. Grant was violently attacked in his camp, with the river in his rear. The Confederates were

led by Generals Albert S. Johnston and Beauregard. All day long the battle raged with fearful slaughter on both sides, and, when night came, Grant was hemmed in near the river, protected by the gunboats. During the night the Union army was reinforced, and the battle was resumed next morning. Finally the Confederates fell back to Corinth. The losses were twelve thousand on each side. General Johnston was among the killed. On the approach of the reinforced Union army, the Confederates abandoned the Corinth line, and fell back over a hundred miles to Vicksburg and Jackson.

410. But the Confederates resolved not to lose all this territory. From east Tennessee two armies marched northward for an *invasion of Kentucky*. They overcame all opposition, and approached so near as to cause a panic in Cincinnati and Louisville. Having spent two months in the state, they leisurely retreated before General Buell's army of a hundred thousand, sweeping with them a long train of a thousand wagon-loads of spoils.

411. The *naval operations* of the year were important as introducing a new method of marine warfare. The Merrimac was a Confederate war vessel, clad in impenetrable iron and made at Norfolk. It burst out upon the Union fleet, sent two of the best ships to the bottom, and threatened the entire destruction of the Northern navy. During the night, the Monitor, an iron-clad vessel of peculiar

construction, arrived from New York. The two sea-monsters met next morning at close quarters, using heavier guns than had ever before been employed in naval encounter.

For five hours neither produced the slightest effect upon



FIGHT BETWEEN THE MERRIMAC AND THE MONITOR.

the other, till at last the Monitor sent a shot through the port-hole of the Merrimac, which returned disabled to Norfolk. After this novel sea-fight, the navy department gave much attention to the building of monitors. At this time, James B. Eads, who afterward built the steel bridge across the Mississippi, at St. Louis, and constructed the jetties below New Orleans, made and delivered complete to the government, all within two months, seven iron-plated steamers. They have since been introduced into the navies of the world.

412. In *review of the year* it was seen that the nation had suffered a slaughter without a parallel in the New World, but that the fortunes of war were about evenly divided, being favorable to the Confederate army in the East, and the Union army in the West.

1863.

413. The most notable event of the war occurred on the first of January, when President Lincoln issued one of the

most important documents of modern times, *The Emancipation Proclamation*. The war was begun with no design of abolishing slavery. But the sentiment of abolition had grown very rapidly in the North; and, when it became necessary to strike at the labor system of the South in order to weaken its military force, the step was taken with but little hesitancy or opposition. It was done as a military necessity, and not as a reformatory measure. Thus, after an existence of two hundred and forty-two years, that disturber of American politics, African slavery, became a thing of the past.

414. At the same time, *colored troops* began to be enlisted to fight in the armies of the Union. It had been thought that white troops would object to this movement; but the former slaves were anxious to strike a blow to guarantee their freedom, and on many a field their conduct was gallant and their presence acceptable.

415. *In the East*, Burnside, at his own request, was relieved of his command, and was succeeded by General Joseph Hooker. He advanced to *Chancellorsville*, where he was met by General Lee, supported by General Stonewall Jackson. The battle lasted two days, and resulted in a sickening defeat to Hooker. His loss was seventeen thousand, nearly twice that of his enemy. The brave and skillful Jackson was mortally wounded in the darkness by a mistaken volley from his own troops.

416. Encouraged by his success, Lee resolved on a *second invasion of the North*. He marched rapidly into Pennsylvania, followed by Hooker, who, on the eve of battle, was superseded by General George G. Meade. The two armies, numbering each eighty thousand, met, face to face, at the *battle of Gettysburg*. The conflict, the greatest of the war and in the history of the country, raged during the first three days of July. Victory favored the Union army, and Lee retreated southward. The losses were fifty-three thousand.

417 *In the West*, Grant followed his enemy south-

ward to **Vicksburg**. The gunboats were run past the batteries lining the bank, and the army passed around to the south, crossed the river, and confronted Vicksburg from the east. These movements brought on a number of obstinate battles, in all of which Grant was successful. The attempts to take the city by storm were repulsed, and the army settled down to a siege. The city, commanded by General Pemberton, held out a month, and then surrendered with twenty-seven thousand prisoners and vast quantities of guns, cannon, and military stores. By this victory the Union gained more, and the Confederacy lost more, than by any previous contest of the war. It opened the Mississippi from Cairo to the gulf.

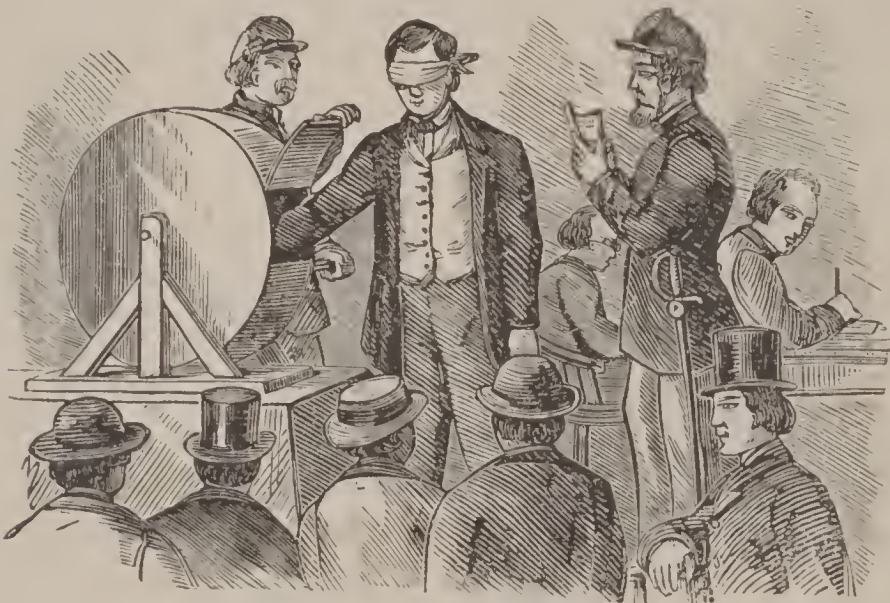
418. Later in the year, General Rosecrans, with a large Union army, met a severe defeat by the Confederate General Bragg, at **Chickamauga**, in Georgia. Bragg had been driven from Tennessee, but was now strongly reinforced from Virginia. He turned upon his enemy, defeated him in a battle in which the losses aggregated forty thousand, and drove him into Chattanooga. Here Rosecrans also was heavily reinforced from Virginia. He yielded the command to Grant, and in a series of stubborn battles about **Chattanooga**, Bragg was defeated and driven further southward.

419. *The calls for troops* in the North were frequent. After McClellan's repulse from Richmond, the President called for 300,000 additional troops; and during Lee's first invasion of the North, he called for 300,000 more. Again, during Lee's second invasion, 100,000 were demanded. All these calls had been promptly responded to except the last, which was not fully met.

420. *A period of reaction* had set in. The expenses and losses of the war were so vast that a large party in the North clamored for peace on any terms. Voluntary enlistments nearly ceased. Desertions from both armies were of continual occurrence. The bounty paid to soldiers induced many to desert and enlist again. At one time

more than two hundred a day deserted the army of the Potomac. It was even worse than this in the Confederate army.

421. In order to fill these vacancies, Congress passed a *Conscription Act*, and President Lincoln ordered a general draft of 300,000 men. All able-bodied men between



THE DRAFTING WHEEL.

the ages of twenty and forty-five were subject to military duty. The opponents of the war denounced this measure, and in several places, especially New York, the draft officers were resisted. Only about fifty thousand soldiers were obtained by the draft, but enlistments were quickened, and the thinned ranks were soon filled.

1864.

422. *Two great movements* were planned by General Grant, who had now been called to Washington and appointed to the command of all the armies, with the title of Lieutenant-General. The first of these was to be directed against Richmond by the army of the Potomac, led by General Grant. The other, under General Sherman, was a march through the interior of the Confederacy, from the Mississippi to the Atlantic.

423. *In the East*, with a hundred and forty thousand men, Grant pushed the operations with vigor, and wrote to

President Lincoln, "I propose to fight it out on this line if it takes all summer." Next day after breaking camp, he met the Confederates in the *Wilderness*. The battle lasted three days, with terrible losses, but resulted indecisively. Grant turned to one side to *Spottsylvania*, where was fought one of the bloodiest struggles of the war. He continued southward to *Cold Harbor*, where he lost ten thousand men within half an hour! The Union troops were everywhere repulsed, but they would not retreat. Thus far the campaign had cost Grant sixty, and Lee thirty-five, thousand men.

424. A *change of base* brought Grant against the defenses of Petersburg, beyond which were those of Richmond. A furious assault was ordered. This was repulsed with great slaughter, and Grant resolved upon a siege. This was pressed all fall and winter, conflicts often occurring in which each side lost thousands of men.

425. Meanwhile a *third invasion of the North* was executed by General Early, in order to compel Grant to raise the siege of Petersburg. Overcoming all opposition, he dashed up within gunshot of Washington, and then ordered a retreat, loaded with plunder. He was followed by a consolidated army, under General Philip H. Sheridan, and was defeated in three desperate battles. This was the last northern raid.

426. Sherman's "*March to the Sea*" was intended to cut off the supplies and sever the railroad communication of the Confederacy. The army consisted of sixty thousand men, and marched in two columns, subsisting largely on the country. Having defeated a large Confederate army under General Hood at Atlanta, he met with but little further opposition. Sherman thus showed that the Confederacy was "an empty shell," the men being drawn from the interior to defend the border.

427. Many *Confederate war vessels* were fitted out in the ship-yards of Great Britain to roam over the seas in quest of the Union commerce. The United States pro-

tested against this action on the part of England; but these remonstrances were not listened to. Here was laid the foundation of a difficulty which afterward cost Great Britain fifteen million dollars. The most famous of these cruisers was *the Alabama*—originally called “2-90,” because two hundred and ninety British merchants furnished money to build it. “In her whole career, involving the destruction of sixty-six vessels and a loss of ten million dollars to the merchant service of the United States, she never entered a Confederate port, but continued abroad, capturing and burning.” She was finally sunk in an encounter with a Union war steamer near the coast of France.

428. When *election times* came again, the Republicans re-nominated Lincoln by acclamation. The Democrats named General George B. McClellan. The seceded States, of course, took no part in the election. Lincoln secured the electoral vote of every state but three.

1865.

429. The *operations of this year* were all in the East. Grant had become satisfied from observation and the march of Sherman that the South was nearly exhausted, and that a vigorous stroke would end the war. Sheridan joined the commander-in-chief, and destroyed the railroads in the rear of Lee, whose situation was now nearly hopeless. Grant ordered an assault on Petersburg, and the works were carried. Lee dispatched to President Davis, “My lines are broken in three places. Richmond must be evacuated this evening.” The dispatch was handed to Mr. Davis in church. He hastily left the room, and the report spread that the city was to be abandoned. The wildest confusion ensued. The records of the Confederate government and large stores of provisions were sent away after the retreating army. The next day the Union army entered the city, and the Confederacy was without a capital.

430. *The surrender of Lee* soon followed. He made brave efforts to retreat with his army, but he was

closely followed by Sheridan. His troops were utterly worn out and hemmed in on all sides. An eye-witness said: "Hundreds dropped from exhaustion, and thousands let their muskets fall from inability to carry them farther." Having done all that human power could do to save the falling Confederacy, Lee surrendered his army on terms honorable to both the victor and the vanquished. When Johnston heard of this event, he knew that further resistance was useless. He opened a correspondence with Sherman, and surrendered his army. Thus, after four years of slaughter, ruin, and sorrow, the civil war was at an end.

431. But this work was scarcely done till *a terrible event* occurred at Washington. While President Lincoln was sitting in a theater with his wife and friends, a desperate, and probably insane, actor, named John Wilkes Booth, came unnoticed into his box, leveled a pistol, and shot the President in the head. The victim died the next morning. The assassin leaped upon the stage, escaped through the darkness, and fled. He was pursued, found concealed in a barn, and shot. Almost at the moment of the tragedy in the theater, another murderer, named Lewis Payne Powell, rushed into the bed-room of Secretary Seward, leaped upon the bed, stabbed him again and again, and escaped into the night. He was afterward caught, convicted, and hanged.

432. *The grief of the nation* was very marked. No President had ever been put to so severe a test, and none, since Washington, had so endeared himself to the people. His honesty, simplicity, fidelity, and sympathetic nature, which never deserted him, had secured his re-election by a large majority. In the presence of the difficult questions yet to be solved, the nation felt it had lost a wise and safe guide. This feeling extended even to the late Confederacy. The colored people especially mourned for him as for a father. "He went through life bearing the load of the people's sorrows with a smiling face. He was the guiding mind of the nation while he lived, and, when he died, the little children cried in the streets." When the

funeral procession passed by railway from Washington to his former home at Springfield, every station was crowded with mourners and draped with the emblems of grief.

433. The *losses of the war* were enormous. The total number of Union troops called for was 2,942,748. The entire number obtained was 2,690,401. The term of service varied from three months to three years. On the Union side it was estimated that three hundred thousand were killed in battle and died from disease. It is believed that four hundred thousand more were crippled and disabled for life. It would be safe to say that over a million men were either killed or disabled, including both sides.

434. A *national debt* of \$2,790,000,000 had accumulated at the end of the war. This was eighty-eight dollars for every man, woman, and child in the United States. In order to strengthen the confidence of the bondholders in the security of their investments, Congress solemnly pledged the nation, with but one dissenting vote, to the payment of the entire debt, principal and interest. During the last year, the cost of conducting the war, on the Union side, was three and a half million dollars a day; and the expense during the whole of the last year was more than the entire cost of carrying on the government from the administration of Washington to that of Lincoln.

At one time two dollars and eighty cents in paper were required to buy one dollar in gold. Near the close of the contest, the southern currency became worthless, a soldier not being able to buy a dinner with a \$100 dollar bill. The Confederate debt will probably never be paid, that government having been overthrown.

435. To meet these tremendous demands, several *financial measures* had been adopted by Congress. A tax was levied on manufactures, imports, incomes, and salaries, and a stamp duty on legal documents. These taxes, far heavier than those imposed by England before the Revolution, were patiently submitted to by the people, and thus an annual income of three hundred million dollars was

secured. This was sufficient to pay the one hundred and thirty-three millions of annual interest, defray the current expenses of the government, and leave a surplus to reduce the national debt.

United States bonds were issued on the credit of the government, redeemable at any time after five and under twenty years, and bearing interest in gold, payable semi-annually. National banks were also legalized, by which private persons might issue paper money, using national bonds instead of specie as the basis of their circulation. The treasury of the United States furnished the currency for this purpose, and guaranteed its redemption.

436. In *its military features* the war presented several facts, illustrating the resources of science and the inventive faculty of the people. By the improvement in small arms a regiment armed with breech-loading muskets could make five times as many discharges as one supplied with the old-style muzzle-loading guns. Great improvements also were made in ordnance and projectiles. Explosive machines, as torpedoes and hand-grenades, came into use. Iron-clad vessels have been already mentioned.

Troops were transported from place to place, with all their equipments, by railroad, steamboats, and sailing vessels. At one time twenty-three thousand men were taken by railway from Virginia to Tennessee, a distance of over a thousand miles, in seven days, eating and sleeping on the cars. Balloons were sometimes employed in examining the position and defenses of the enemy; and telegraph wires were carried to the battle fields, that instant communication could be had with the commander-in-chief.

437. *The political results* of the war were anticipated by very few. Final victory for the Union for a long time seemed doubtful; and, had foreign nations interfered, the Federal-arms would probably never have prevailed. The most important result was the abolition of slavery. The principle was also established that the United States are to be regarded as a nation, one and indivisible, and not as a mere alliance of sovereign states.

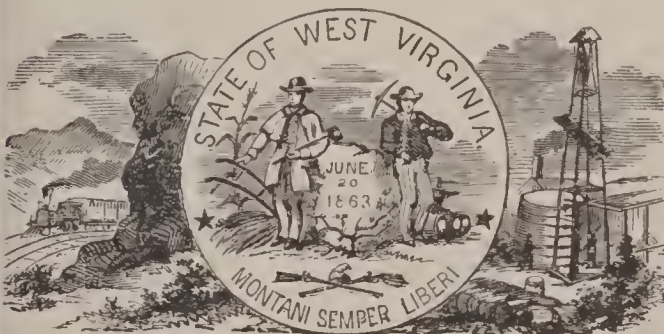
438. *The sufferings* resulting from the war were terrible and wide-spread. They extended even to Europe. The derangements of commerce, and especially the lack of cotton, threw thousands of poor English operatives out of employment. In this country there were few families that did not suffer some bereavement. In both the North and the South the devotion and patriotism of the women at home equaled the heroism of the soldiers in the field. In watching the sick and wounded in the hospital and on the field they did much to lessen the horrors of war.

439. *Sanitary fairs* were organized all over the country, and fourteen million dollars were raised in cash and supplies. In thousands of quiet homes delicate food and warm clothing were prepared for the soldiers in the field. The Sanitary Commission had its hospital cars on the railroads, and hospital cabins on steamers. Its litters, wagons, and ambulances were found on the battle fields. It provided dinners for regiments on their way to the front, took care of the wives and children of destitute soldiers, and collected vast stores of provisions. In no previous struggle in history had so much been done to relieve the miseries attending war; and even in the midst of the deadliest conflicts humanity had its victories.

440. The *Christian Commission* co-operated with the Sanitary, and raised four and a half million dollars for moral and religious work in the army. Bibles were distributed, tracts were scattered, and Christian teachers visited the camp and the hospital.

441. During the war, two new states were added to the Union. *West Vir-*

ginia, having refused to secede, was organized into a separate state in 1863, in order that it might have the privileges guaranteed by the Constitution.



SEAL OF WEST VIRGINIA.

442. *Nevada* was acquired by the Mexican conquest, but it contained a very small population till the discovery of its rich silver mines in 1859. It remained a territory three years, and then entered the Union in 1864 as the thirty-sixth state.



SEAL OF NEVADA.

443. The *sale of public lands* had been a source of income to the government from

the time of Washington. The thirteen colonies claimed the great territories lying directly west of them to the Mississippi; but at the close of the Revolution it was all ceded to the general government. At first, not less than four thousand acres would be sold at one time. But as this rule placed the lands in the hands of speculators, who neither produced nor improved, smaller tracts were offered to those wishing farms, after 1804. The lands were surveyed only as they were put in market, being divided into townships and sections. The cost of the public domain to the government averaged twenty-two cents per acre.

Previous to 1820, the lands were sold at auction at the land-office, at not less than two dollars per acre. After that time they were sold at auction at any price *above* a dollar and a quarter, the lots remaining unsold being afterward closed out on private sale *at* that figure. In 1836, the receipts from public lands were greater than at any time before or since, amounting to twenty-five million dollars. This land fever was caused by the completion of the Erie Canal, the use of steamboats on the western rivers, and the immigration into the Ohio and Mississippi valleys. It will be remembered that this apparent prosperity and rapid inflation of prices collapsed in the "panic of '37." After this the sale of lands was only such as was demanded by the advance of settlements.

444. *Homestead laws* date back to the year 1830.

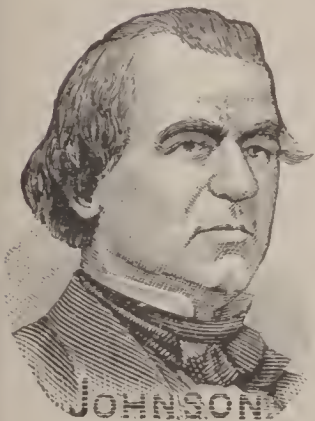
The object was to regulate the disposal of public lands to actual settlers by giving a pre-emptive right. Previous to that year, the government was opposed to the settlement of the public domain by non-purchasers; but Mr. Greeley took up the idea of "free homes for free people," and, through the columns of his paper, became the leading advocate of the pre-emptive principle. The law was amended from time to time, till it assumed its present form under the presidency of Lincoln.

The law provided, among other things, that no one could acquire public lands without residing upon them as a home and making improvements, and that any citizen could take a claim of a quarter-section, remain upon it a specified time, and then receive a free deed from the government. The effect of this provision was to shut out speculators, secure homes to the people, and rapidly fill up the territories.

CHAPTER XVII.

JOHNSON'S ADMINISTRATION.

1865 — 1869.



445. On the day after the assassination of Mr. Lincoln, the Vice-President, *Andrew Johnson*, of Tennessee, became the third "Accidental President." With no advantages of education in the schools, he was entirely a so-called "self-made man." From poverty and neglect he rose through successive offices to the Senate of the United States. He had opposed secession with all his power, and served during the war as military governor of Tennessee. He was earnest, honest-hearted, and sincerely desired to do his duty. His mistakes were probably not due to any wish to serve his own interests or those of any party.

446. The first duty of the President was the *disband-*

ing of the army, which consisted of about a million men. It was prophesied by foreign nations, and feared by many persons at home, that the return of so many men to civil life would be attended by serious evils. The quiet return of this vast multitude to their old homes and vocations was regarded as a great triumph of law and order, and as another proof of the stability of our institutions.

447. The most important duty of Congress and the President was the adaptation of affairs to a state of peace. This was called *reconstruction*. The question was, on what terms the southern states should be restored to their former position in the government.

448. The President soon issued a *Proclamation of Amnesty*, granting pardon to all persons, (except certain specified classes,) who had engaged in the organization and defense of the Confederacy. All persons accepting the pardon should take the oath of allegiance to the United States. Provisional governors were appointed for the southern states, who were instructed to call conventions of the people. The states were required to repeal their ordinances of secession, declare the Confederate debt void, and vote for a constitutional amendment abolishing slavery. All this was done, and the Thirteenth Amendment, having been ratified by the legislatures of twenty-seven states, became a part of the Constitution.

449. A serious *disagreement* unfortunately arose at this time between the President and Congress. The former held that the ordinances of secession were utterly void; and that therefore the so-called seceded states had never been out of the Union at all, and were immediately entitled to representation at Washington. Congress admitted that secession was void, but argued that, since the South had been in a treasonable state for four years, it would be unsafe and unwise to admit it to its former relations under the government without special legislation and guarantees.

These conditions were embodied by Congress in the Four-

teenth Amendment, granting certain civil rights to the colored people of the South, revising the southern representation in Congress, and affirming the validity of the Federal debt and the nullity of the Confederate. The contest between Congress and the Executive lasted two years, during which time a large number of bills were passed, promptly vetoed by the President, and as promptly re-passed by a two-thirds vote. The states were finally restored in accordance with the views of Congress and the provisions of the new amendment.

450. So far did this quarrel extend that *articles of impeachment* against the President were, for the first time in our history, agreed to by the House of Representatives. After a trial of two months, the President was acquitted. His escape was very narrow; a majority of two-thirds in the Senate was required for conviction, and only one vote was wanting.

451. During the war, Napoleon III of France interfered in the *affairs of Mexico*, and, having sent a French army there, succeeded in setting up an empire. He appointed Maximilian of Austria as emperor, who sustained his rule by an army of French and Austrian soldiers. The United States protested against this violation of the Monroe doctrine, but, being entirely absorbed in the war, could enforce nothing. But the Mexican President, Juarez, headed a movement against the usurper, and finally, at the demands from Washington, Napoleon withdrew his army. Maximilian fled, was arrested, tried, and shot. Thus the despotic attempt of Napoleon ended in failure.

452. The rejoicings of the country over the *Atlantic cable* in 1858 ended in disappointment. After a short time of successful operation, the cable was found to be giving out. Heavier and heavier charges were necessary in order to carry a message through, till, in a few weeks, the line could not be operated at all. The leaders of the enterprise were not dismayed by their third failure, but continued to experiment during all the time of the war

upon every kind of wire, and to advocate the possibility of the scheme.

Mr. Field made fifty voyages across the Atlantic, and finally secured enough capital to make and lay another cable. In the summer of 1865, it was coiled up in the Great Eastern, the largest vessel ever built. The steamer sailed from Ireland, and had payed out more than twelve hundred miles when the cable again broke and was lost. Six millions of dollars had already been spent in unsuccessful attempts; but, during the summer of 1866, Mr. Field and his determined associates again, and for the fifth time, started a steamer on its way. Permanent success was now achieved.

To make the triumph complete, the Great Eastern sailed back to the spot where the cable was lost the summer before, threw out grappling-irons, caught the lost line, brought it to the surface, spliced it, and landed it successfully at Newfoundland. After twelve years of persistent labor, Mr. Field received the gratitude and applause of all civilized nations. Since that time, several lines have been laid, and the Old World and the New are in constant communication. The apparatus used is exceedingly delicate, and the perfection of the cable is shown by the fact that the electricity generated in a gun-cap is sufficient to send a message across the Atlantic.

453. In 1867, by the *purchase of Alaska*, the United States acquired, for the first time in its history, territory not lying on its border. That country had been explored by a party of scientific men, with a view of establishing communication by telegraph with Asia by way of Behring Strait. Their report showed that its coast fisheries were of great value, and that its forests of white pine and yellow cedar were among the finest in the world. The proposal to purchase the peninsula met with much opposition from the press, but it was finally ceded by Russia to the United States on the payment of seven million two hundred thousand dollars. The territory was larger than the original

thirteen states, and contained a population of twenty-nine thousand.

454. During this presidency, *the territories* of the United States were reduced in size, increased in number, and made to assume a form in preparation for their early admission as states. Dakota was cut off from Nebraska, and Arizona from New Mexico. The others were organized under the names Colorado, Wyoming, Montana, Idaho,



SEAL OF NEBRASKA.

Utah, and Washington. The Indian Territory and Alaska have not yet been organized into territorial governments. In 1867, Nebraska was admitted as a state.

455. In 1868, Congress ratified a *treaty with the North German Confederation*, by which the right of German emigrants to sever their allegiance to their native country and to become citizens of the United States, was allowed.

456. During the same year, an *embassy from China*, headed by Anson Burlingame, formerly the American minister to that country, visited the United States. A treaty was ratified by which liberty of conscience, protection of property, and important commercial privileges were mutually secured. This was the first time that exclusive nation had ever sought a treaty with foreign countries.

457. When the *presidential election* came again, the contest was still found to be between the Republican and the Democratic parties. The former nominated General Ulysses S. Grant, and the latter, Horatio Seymour, of New York. The campaign was attended with much excitement; but there was no prominent issue before the people. Both parties accepted the results of the war, and affirmed the validity of the late amendments. The questions most

discussed were those arising out of the war. Thus politics looked back to the past instead of forward to the future. The result was the election of General Grant as President, and Schuyler Colfax, of Indiana, as Vice-President.

CHAPTER XVIII.

GRANT'S ADMINISTRATION.

1869 — 1877.

458. *The new Executive*, the eighteenth President, had received a military education, and served with distinction in the Mexican war. His national reputation was won by his campaign in the West, beginning with the capture of Forts Henry and Donelson. He rose rapidly in rank, till he became commander-in-chief of the Union army.



459. Soon after his inauguration, *the Pacific Railroad* was completed. This great enterprise had been agitated since the discovery of gold in California. But the work was not undertaken till 1863. To a company of capitalists Congress voted large amounts of land adjoining the proposed road, as Whitney and Degrand asked to have done years before. The land grant included the alternate sections for ten and twenty miles on each side of the track. Beside this, Congress guaranteed the payment of a large amount of bonds to be issued by the company. California had now grown into a wealthy state, and she lent her energy to the achievement.

The first division of the road extended from Council Bluffs, Iowa, to Ogden, in Utah, a distance of 1,032 miles. This was called the Union Pacific Railroad. The other division, called the Central Pacific Railroad, extended from San Francisco to Ogden, a distance of 882 miles. The work went on at both ends at the same time, and on May 10, 1869, two engines slowly steamed till they touched each

other in front, and the engineers from the East and the West shook hands across the narrow line of separation. The last rail was laid, and the last spike driven, with appropriate ceremonies. From Europe to America in nine days; from the Atlantic to the Pacific in five more; and across the Pacific to China in twenty more,—thus was realized the ambitious scheme of the fifteenth century, a short route to the Indies.

460. The work of reconstruction was completed in 1870 by the adoption of the *Fifteenth Amendment* to the Constitution. It declared that the right of suffrage shall not be withheld from any citizen of the United States "on account of race, color, or previous condition of servitude." Thus the ballot was conferred upon the emancipated black men of the South and the free colored men of the North. Texas was the last state to signify its acceptance of the amended Constitution, and to take its place in the reconstructed Union.

461. *The ninth census*, taken in 1870, showed a wonderful growth and progress, notwithstanding the ravages and waste of war. Since the last enumeration, the population had increased from thirty-one millions to thirty-eight millions (38,558,371). Since the days of Washington, the country had doubled its population about every twenty-five years. The expenses of managing the government doubled about every sixteen years. At the end of the second year of Grant's administration, \$204,000,000 of the national debt had been paid, and the price of gold had fallen to 110. Manufacturing had nearly doubled since 1860. The South was rapidly adjusting its industry on a basis of free labor, and the effects of the war were fast passing away.

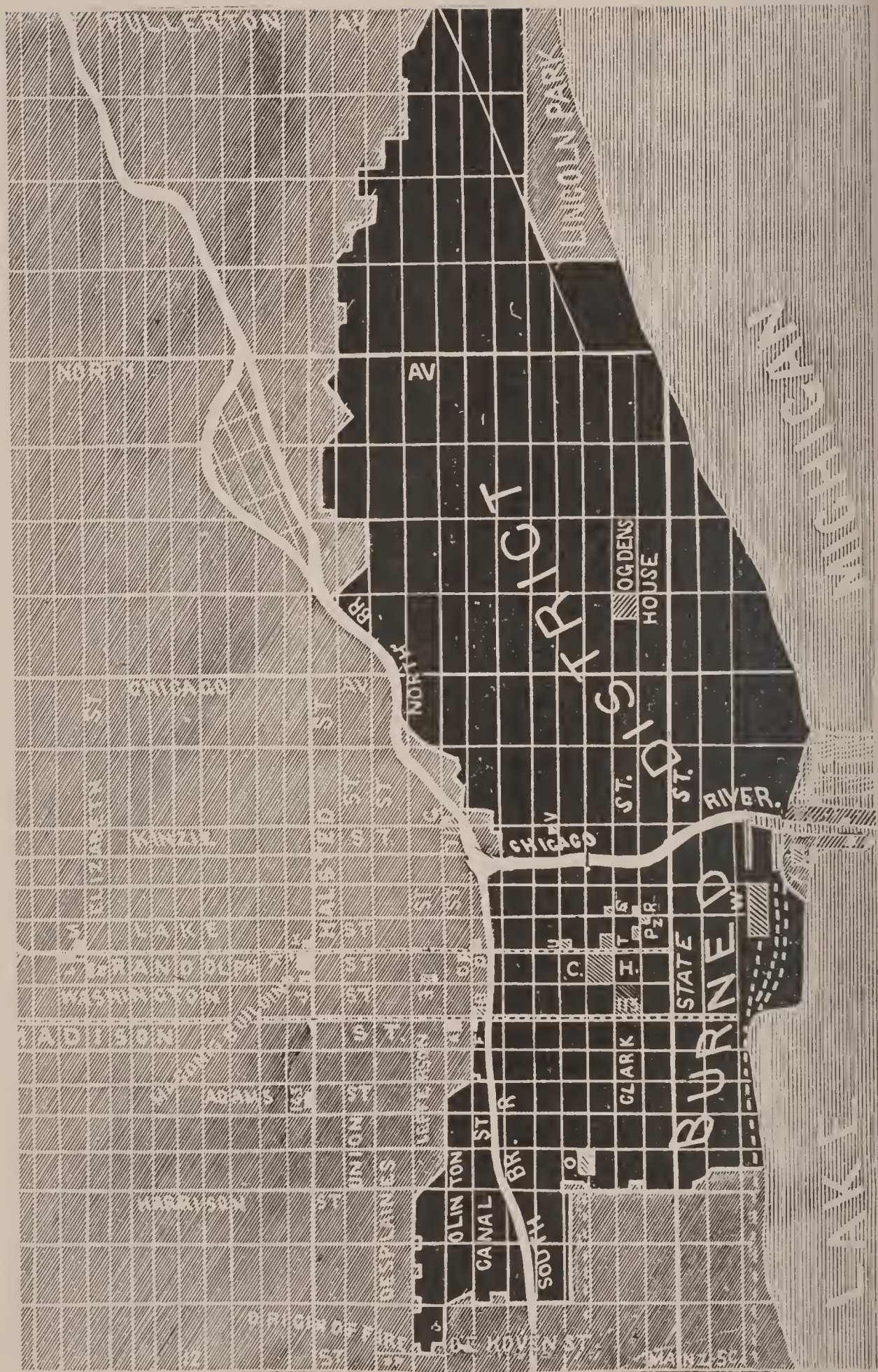
462. The *ratio of representation* in Congress has been changed frequently. As the population of the country has increased, it has required more and more people to be entitled to a representative. By this means the House of Representatives has been kept within reasonable size. In 1872, Congress ordered that thenceforth the House should

not be composed of more than 292 members. On the basis of the ninth census, the number of people entitled to a representative was fixed at 135,239. Without a special order of Congress no territory can be admitted as a state with a less population than this.

463. This administration was signalized by the settlement of the *Alabama claims* — a difficult and threatening question. The injury done during the war to American commerce by Confederate privateers, built and equipped in British ports, had been very great. These cruisers had been sent out without any attempt to conceal their purpose, and with no efforts on the part of the British government to restrain them. The repeated remonstrance of the Secretary of State against this violation of the laws of nations had been almost unheeded; but, after the war, both parties became anxious for a settlement.

A high commission, composed of five British and five American statesmen, met at Washington, and, after much discussion, bound their respective countries to submit all the claims of either nation against the other to a board of arbitration, composed of five members, to be appointed by the kings and rulers of friendly nations. This court of arbitration met at Geneva, Switzerland, gave the two nations a full and impartial hearing, and rendered an award of damages to the United States for fifteen and a half million dollars. This sum was paid by Great Britain the next year. This result was very encouraging to those who hope that the bloody and expensive methods of war will gradually go out of use, and that the disputes of nations, as well as those of individuals, will be settled by the courts. This arbitration was the most important triumph of the principles of the apostle of peace, William Ladd.

464. In 1871, a great calamity visited the country in the *burning of Chicago*. It broke out one evening in a stable on De Koven Street, and was caused by a cow's knocking over a kerosene lamp. It soon spread, driven by a high wind, to the neighboring lumber yards and wooden



MAP SHOWING EXTENT OF CHICAGO FIRE.

Scale: One inch and one-half to the mile. |—————| 1 mile.

buildings. The flames leaped the Chicago River, and swept on through the business part of the city. It raged with unabated fury for two days, and died out only when it reached Lake Michigan and Lincoln Park. The area burned over was two thousand one hundred acres, or three and a third square miles. About two hundred and fifty lives were lost, and the property destroyed amounted to two hundred million dollars. Ninety-eight thousand people were rendered homeless. "In the extent of the district burned over, the Chicago fire stands first; in the amount of property destroyed, second; and in the suffering occasioned, third, among the great conflagrations of the world."

465. Almost at the same time with the burning of Chicago, extensive *forest fires* burst out in the pine woods of Wisconsin, Minnesota, and Michigan. Many entire villages were consumed, and the flames out-traveled the fleetest horse. Fifteen hundred people perished in Wisconsin alone.

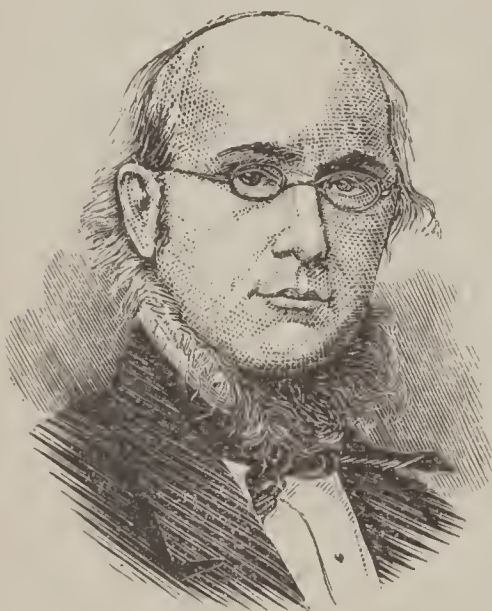
466. A year afterward, another misfortune came in *the Boston fire*. It raged for thirty-six hours, and laid many of the finest blocks in the country in ashes. Fifteen lives were lost, sixty-five acres were burned over, and property to the value of eighty millions was consumed. The losses of these conflagrations fell upon the entire people by depressing business and largely advancing the rates of insurance.

467. In 1872, Congress, by a two-thirds vote, removed the *political disabilities* imposed by the third section of the Fourteenth Amendment. The only exceptions were members of Congress, officers in the army and navy, cabinet officers, and foreign ministers, who had resigned and joined the Confederacy. One hundred and fifty thousand men of capacity and experience were thus restored to political life.

468. The issues entering into the *presidential canvass* at the close of Grant's first term, grew out of reconstruction as completed by Congress. Some of these measures had been received with great disapproval in the

South. The bestowal of the complete rights of citizenship upon the colored race, excited there the greatest alarm and indignation. A state of violence and lawlessness was thus inaugurated, and the issues of the war were often re-discussed with much bitterness. There was but little difference between the platforms of principles adopted by the opposing parties, and the canvass, which was exciting and sharp, was really a struggle for place and power.

469. *The candidates* were well-known men. The Republicans re-nominated General Grant for the first, and Henry Wilson, of Massachusetts, for the second, place on their ticket. The Democrats



HORACE GREELEY.

and Liberal Republicans nominated Horace Greeley, editor of the *New York Tribune*. For thirty years he had been one of the foremost men and the brightest light of journalism in the country. He had long been a leader of public opinion, having discussed daily, with great ability and enthusiasm, almost every subject of interest to the people. He was one of

the truly great men of America. The result of the campaign was the re-election of Grant by a large majority. Mr. Greeley died three weeks afterward, broken down by labor, political disappointment, and domestic bereavement.

470. Near the beginning of Grant's second term, public attention was directed to the *Credit Mobilier investigation* in Congress. The Credit Mobilier was a joint-stock company, chartered to advance the construction of public works. With a capital of nearly four millions it undertook the construction of the Pacific Railroad. Its business was so managed as to be very profitable, and the stock rose rapidly in value, the stockholders receiving enormous dividends. It so happened that a law-suit in

Pennsylvania revealed the fact that a large amount of the stock was owned by members of Congress. A suspicion was at once aroused that members had used their votes for selfish purposes in the subsidies and special privileges granted to the railroad. An investigation was demanded, in the course of which many scandalous transactions were revealed and several fair reputations tarnished.

471. In the fall of 1873, a disastrous *money panic* occurred. The great banking house of Jay Cooke & Co., of Philadelphia, failed suddenly. Other important failures occurred in quick succession. Depositors hurried to the banks all over the land and withdrew their money. The national currency was sent home for redemption. The result was that a large percentage of the banks temporarily suspended payment. Mercantile houses and manufacturing companies, not being able to meet the sudden demands of their creditors, were forced into suspension or bankruptcy.

It was now seen that both public and private expenditures had been extravagant, and that the apparent prosperity of business had been largely fictitious. Public confidence was shaken. Months elapsed before this was restored, and for years afterward business languished, manufactures fell off, and the value of nearly everything gradually receded. The main causes of the panic were speculation in railroad stocks, construction of unprofitable railroads in new and unsettled parts of the country, and the scarcity of money caused by the contraction of the national currency from seven hundred million dollars in 1865 to only half that sum in 1873.

472. During these eight years, the country was frequently called upon to record the *loss of public men* by death. Among these may be mentioned Edwin M. Stanton, Secretary of War under President Lincoln, and afterward Judge of the Supreme Court of the United States; General Robert E. Lee, who had served since the war as president of Washington and Lee University, in Virginia; William H. Seward, Secretary of State under

President Lincoln, and one of the ablest statesmen of the century ; Professor S. F. B. Morse, the honored inventor of the magnetic telegraph ; Horace Greeley, our greatest journalist ; General George G. Meade, the commander at Gettysburg ; Salmon P. Chase, Secretary of the Treasury



LOUIS AGASSIZ.

under President Lincoln, the author of our "greenbacks," and afterward Chief Justice of the United States ; Andrew Johnson, the last ex-President ; Henry Wilson, Vice-President ; Louis Agassiz, our greatest teacher of science ; and Charles Sumner, Senator from Massachusetts. He was the successor of Daniel Webster in the Senate, and had served continuously for twenty-four years.

He was a leader, not a follower, of public opinion, speaking often and powerfully on all questions affecting the welfare of the nation. He read the future clearly, and he lived to see every one of his chief measures adopted, except the one that was enlisting his powers of argument at the time of his last illness.

473. In 1874, an order, called the *Patrons of Husbandry*, extended widely over the country. All persons engaged in agriculture were eligible to membership. The objects were, to cultivate mutual acquaintance, to secure prosperity to the farmers by selling their products directly to the consumer and buying their goods directly from the producer, to oppose all monopolies and corporations that oppress the people, to strengthen the attachment to rural life, to discontinue the credit and mortgage systems, and to insist on purity in the management of public affairs. In 1868, there were but ten Granges in the United States. Six years afterward, they had increased to twenty thousand Granges, with a membership of a million and a half, secur-

ing a saving to the members of twenty million dollars yearly.

474. Early in the same year, a similar order, called the *Sovereigns of Industry*, was formed to secure to all industrial classes the same benefits the Grange was intended to secure to the farmer. This order flourished mostly in the East, as the Grangers in the West. The problems which these orders have tried to solve are among the most important of the age. Some of them are rapidly claiming the attention of political parties, and appearing in Congress and in state legislatures.

475. The *Signal Service Bureau*, in charge of General A. J. Meyer, was established by Congress in 1870, to make careful observations upon the temperature and moisture of the air, the rise and fall of rivers, and the direction and velocity of the wind. By this means the approach of storms and floods is announced hours, and sometimes days, before they reach distant localities. Thus time is gained for the protection of property and life. The probabilities of the weather for the various sections of the United States are daily published, and ninety per cent. of these predictions have been verified.

Stations for observation are established at about one hundred and forty places in the United States, and also at Behring Strait, Hudson Bay, Greenland, Labrador, Iceland, Norway, Russia, Italy, India, West Indies, South America,—around the globe! At all of the stations in the United States observations are taken at the same moment of time—corresponding to 7:35 A.M. at Washington. Great benefits have already resulted to river, lake, and marine commerce, and to agriculture, from the bureau, whose usefulness has probably only just begun.

476. A new *Indian policy* was adopted by the President at this time. The plan was to educate and civilize the Indians, not merely to punish them for their crimes. This humane scheme included schools, model farms, and instruction in the trades and the manners of civilized life.

The President was led to the adoption of this policy from the consideration that "the actual treatment of the Indians has been unjust and iniquitous beyond the power of words to express," and that, "as ascertained from government statistics since 1820, the policy of war had cost, for each Indian killed, the lives of twenty white men and half a million dollars."

Though the restless nature of the race was very apparent, the war-path was not so often trod, nor plundering raids so frequent. Thousands were settled on farms of their own, surrounded with domestic animals and many of the comforts of life. From the earliest times the race has been decreasing in numbers. The causes have been, a hopeless struggle with white men, the exposure incident to their mode of life, and their own vices made fatal by their adoption of those of their white neighbors. There were in 1870 about three hundred and eighty thousand Indians in the United States. They will finally either disappear altogether, or adopt the customs of civilized life.

477. In 1875, Congress passed the *Specie Resumption Act*, providing that after January 1, 1879, the legal-tender notes should be redeemed, on presentation, in coin. In the mean time silver was to take the place of fractional currency. This law was much discussed by the people, being greatly praised in the East and criticised in the West. Its effect was to raise the value of United States bonds and lower the premium on gold.

478. In the same year, *Colorado* was admitted into the



SEAL OF COLORADO.

Union as the thirty-eighth state. The healthfulness of its climate had made it a favorite resort for invalids; and its rich mineral deposits had

made mining the chief occupation of its people.

479. As the year 1876 drew near, the nation made

preparation to celebrate the *American Centennial* in an appropriate manner. Philadelphia was naturally selected as the place, it being the original seat of government. The celebration took the shape of an international exhibition, or world's fair. Many spacious buildings were erected, the grounds elegantly laid off, and the exhibition opened with appropriate ceremonies on May 10, 1876. It continued for six months. The products, industries, and achievements of nearly all civilized nations,—the new thoughts of the new age,—were represented there. "It was the first congress of the democracy of the world to which *all mankind* had been invited."

480. During the whole of Grant's term of office, the country was agitated by political *troubles in the South*. The rivalry between the parties—those favoring the new order of things and those preferring the old—was exceedingly bitter and not always bloodless. Secret orders of a treasonable nature, called Ku-Klux and White Leaguers, carried on the work of proscription and assassination. Armed conflicts between the whites and the blacks were very frequent, and always resulted in the slaughter of the negroes. The assassination of unarmed colored men was not uncommon. In several states two rival governors and legislatures claimed to be elected, and proceeded to support their claims by violence and intrigue. On such occasions, when asked by the governor interested, troops were sent into the riotous district until quiet could be restored.

481. When the time came for another presidential canvass, the *attitude of parties* was nearly the same as four years before. There was no great issue before the people. Politics still looked backward instead of forward. The Republicans argued that the record of the Democratic party for the last forty years showed it to be unfit to control the affairs of the nation. The Democrats had much to say about the extravagance and corruption of the Republican party, and the necessity of reform and economy in public

expenditures. Both parties accepted the amended Constitution. It was a struggle for the preferments of office and the patronage of the government.

482. There was no lack of *candidates*. The Republicans nominated Rutherford B. Hayes, of Ohio, and the Democrats, Samuel J. Tilden, of New York, both being the governors of their respective states. Two other parties made their appearance for the first time. The Greenback party nominated Peter Cooper, of New York, and made opposition to the Resumption Act its distinctive principle. The Prohibition party nominated General Green Clay Smith, of Kentucky, and advocated, among other things, the adoption of a constitutional amendment prohibiting the sale of alcoholic liquors as a beverage.

483. *The election* was the most peculiar ever held in the country. Neither Smith nor Cooper received a single electoral vote. The contest between Hayes and Tilden was so close in several of the states that the true condition of the vote was difficult to determine. The Republicans hastened to charge the Democrats with intimidating the colored Republican voters in the South. The Democrats charged the Republicans with illegal voting and making fraudulent returns. Boards of canvassers were sent to the doubtful states to ascertain the facts and to take testimony from competent witnesses.

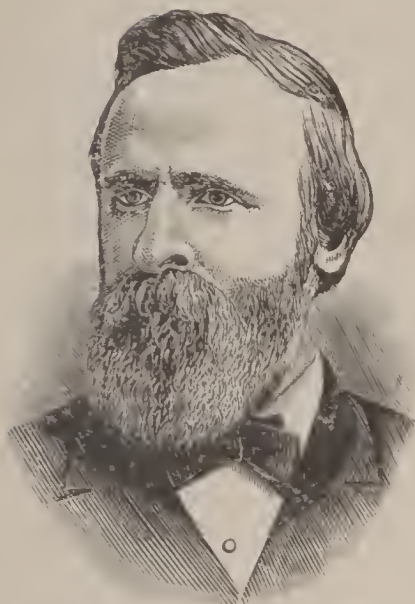
The matter excited the greatest apprehension throughout the nation, till it was finally settled by peaceful arbitration. Fifteen judges were chosen — five from the House, five from the Senate, and five from the Supreme Court — to decide the question, both parties being pledged to abide by their verdict. The result was, 185 electoral votes were counted for Hayes, and 184 for Tilden. On March 5, 1877, R. B. Hayes was peacefully inaugurated President, and William A. Wheeler, of New York, Vice-President.

CHAPTER XIX.

HAYES'S ADMINISTRATION.

1877

484. *The new President* had served with distinc-



RUTHERFORD B. HAYES.

tion as an officer in the Union army during the Rebellion. He had been twice elected Governor of Ohio, after the most determined opposition. In his letter accepting the nomination for the presidency he expressed the determination, if elected, to do all in his power to restore quiet to the South and business prosperity to the entire country. His inaugural address outlined the policy of his administration, and gave general satisfaction.

485. He was immediately confronted with the question of *the removal of the troops* that had been sent to keep the peace in the South. Many people in the North thought it would not be safe or prudent to do so. Being assured that there would be no disturbance, the President relieved the soldiers from their police duties. This course was widely disapproved in the North.

486. The President went into office pledged by the Republican party to *civil-service reform*. For many years it had been the custom to appoint such officials as were recommended by the members of Congress from that state where the officer was to be stationed. Great abuses had grown up under this system, as it had become the custom to recommend persons for appointment as a reward for party services or as a return for personal obligations. Too often the fitness of the applicant was disregarded. The President gave much attention to the correction of these abuses. He made but few dismissals, and did not specially consult supposed party interests. His course in

this matter excited much discussion and disapproval, especially among the members of the Republican party.

487. The month of July, 1877, is made memorable by ***railroad riots***. The train hands on the Baltimore & Ohio Railroad at Martinsburg, struck for higher wages. Instead of being a respectful demand for what they wished, it rapidly developed into rebellion against the state itself. The strikers swarmed upon the trains with revolvers, and engaged even with the state troops in armed conflicts. Soon the strike extended the whole length of the road, whose business was entirely suspended. The next day the insurrection spread to other roads and states. The mobs seized the railroad property, forbade the departure of all trains, and resisted both the local authorities and the troops of the United States.

At Pittsburg the mob destroyed a hundred locomotives, and burned miles of freight cars, the depots, and round-houses. In many other places the lawlessness was nearly as great. In less than a week the bloody and defiant spirit of riot extended to the West and even to California. For the time the rioters suspended all business on the leading railroads throughout the Union. The entire nation seemed to be under mob law. Conflicts between the troops and the mob occurred in many cities; much blood was shed and vast amounts of property destroyed. Gradually the police and troops routed the rioters; order was re-established, and the roads resumed their business. The great insurrection lasted twelve days. It was commonly called the railroad strike, and was the first riotous illustration in American history of the supposed conflict between labor and capital.

488. As soon as Congress met, the currency question assumed fresh importance; and bills for ***the remonetization of silver*** were introduced. Since 1873, silver had not been coined very largely, and was not legal tender for the payment of public or private debts in sums of over five dollars. The bill provided for increased coinage of silver and its restoration as legal tender. After much dis-

cussion the measure passed Congress. It was promptly vetoed by the President, and quickly re-passed by more than a two-thirds vote in both Houses. *Veto* was only *vote* with the letters differently arranged. The mints immediately began to coin and send out silver money

489. At the close of the first century of national history, *the center of our territory* is situated in Osborne County, Kansas, two hundred miles west of Topeka.

490. *The center of population* has been moving nearly westward since the Revolution at an average velocity of seventy-five feet a day, and now rests at Loveland, Clermont County, Ohio, twenty miles northeast of Cincinnati.

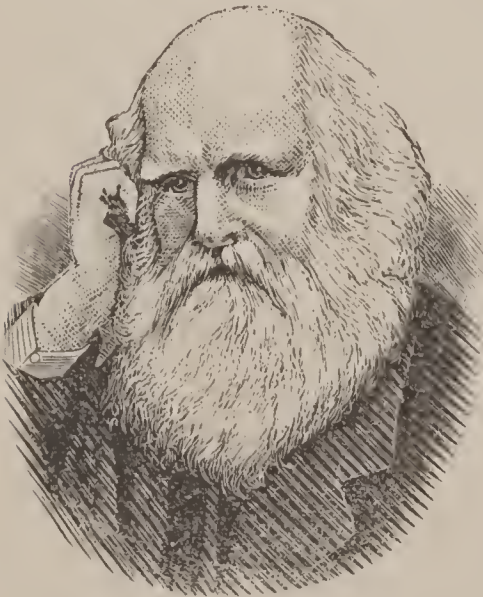
491. During the present generation, *agriculture* has made great advances under the influence of improved machinery, agricultural societies, fairs, field chemistry, and farm journals. In 1870, the yield of Indian corn, the greatest cereal product of the country, amounted to nearly a thousand million bushels. The amount of cotton aggregated fifteen hundred million pounds. Farming prevails in the West and manufacturing in the East. The number of cotton mills is over nine hundred, and New England produces enough calico to supply the whole country. On the other hand, Minnesota produces enough wheat in one year to feed her own people four years; Ohio, to supply hers one year; New York, six months; Massachusetts, one day; and Rhode Island, enough for breakfast but not enough for dinner!

492. The *power of the press* seems to be constantly increasing. To the genius of an American, Richard M. Hoe, the world is indebted for the type-revolving press, by which thirty thousand copies may be struck off in an hour. It is the age of the newspaper. Directed by the abilities and energy of such journalists as William Cullen Bryant, of the *Evening Post*, Horace Greeley, of the *Tribune*, and James Gordon Bennett, Sr., of the *Herald*, the newspaper has become a great power for good or evil. In 1870, the

number of periodicals was nearly six thousand. Eleven of these print over a hundred thousand copies each issue, and the total regular circulation is over twenty-eight million copies. The number of books published averages about three thousand a year.

493. In recent years *public libraries* have become very numerous in towns and cities. These are extensively read, and have great influence in directing the thought of the people. One American library—the Congressional, at Washington—contains over 300,000 volumes; while the Boston Public Library and that of Harvard College number over 200,000 each; and at least ten others contain fifty thousand each. The contents of these libraries aggregate forty-five million volumes.

494. *The work of education* has gone rapidly forward. The common-school system, which at first met with strong opposition in some localities, has become a great favorite with the people, single states, as Ohio, spending ten million dollars annually to educate the children. Seven million pupils attend these free schools, and are taught by two hundred thousand teachers. The system is in use in every state, and is rapidly gaining popularity in the South. Eleven of the states have adopted compulsory

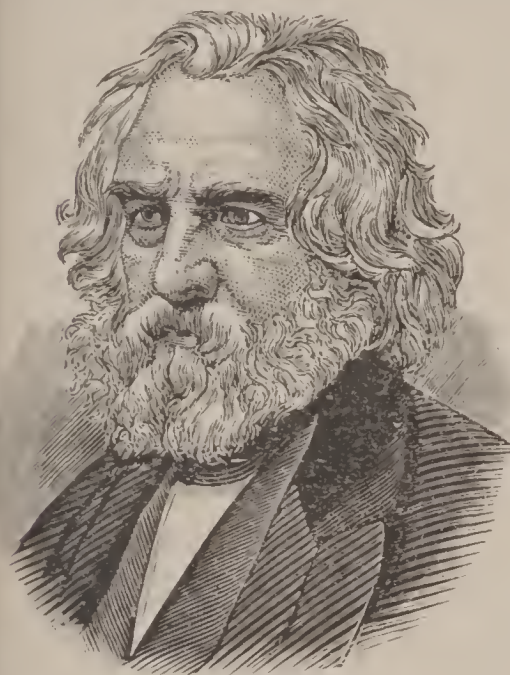


WILLIAM CULLEN BRYANT.

education. Higher education is furnished by about twenty-five hundred colleges, academies, professional and scientific schools, attended by two hundred and fifty thousand pupils, some of them being supported by public funds, and others by private and denominational patronage. People see that ignorant suffrage is one of the greatest dangers of the republic. In all nations the sovereign is carefully educated.

In this country every voter is a sovereign.

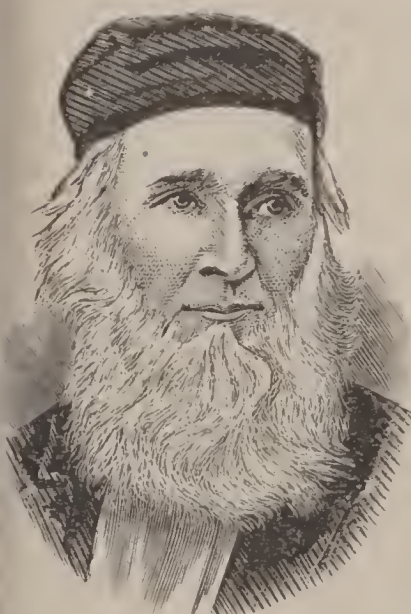
495. In *literature* much has been accomplished. William Cullen Bryant, when a boy of eighteen, wrote *Thanatopsis*, the first poetry, written by a native of America, that the world acknowledged to be poetry. He was followed by a troop of reputable writers, including Drake, Halleck, Poe, Willis, Whittier, Lowell, Longfellow. Charles Brockden Brown, the first American novelist, was followed



HENRY WADSWORTH LONGFELLOW.

by James Fenimore Cooper and Nathaniel Hawthorne. As historians, Sparks, Bancroft, Hildreth, Lossing, Prescott, Motley, and Irving are honored names.

496. In the *fine arts* America can not compare favorably with older countries. Our paintings and statuary have not won such applause from the world as has been accorded to our sewing machines, pianos, and farming implements. Yet much has been done. The names of West, Copley, and Page, in painting, and Powers, Story, and Harriet Hosmer, in sculpture, have secured great and perhaps lasting reputation.



HIRAM POWERS.

497. Our country has achieved its greatest results in *material progress*. American sewing machines, pianos, agricultural implements, and locomotives have received the highest awards of Europe. The American Bank Note Company, of New York, prints the paper money of Italy and Turkey. Steam fire-engines of American manufacture are used in the Euro-

pean capitals, and the Pullman palace cars are becoming

favorites on European railroads. Machines of American patents print English newspapers and reap the English harvests. The European goes to work by a Connecticut clock, and is warmed by an Albany stove.

498. Since the war, the *work of religion* has been advancing with increasing success. Next to the Roman Catholics, the Methodists are the most numerous denomination. There are 65,000 churches in the country, and they can seat twenty-five million people. There is one evangelical minister to every 791 persons. The church property is valued at \$350,000,000, and \$50,000,000 are paid every year for local church interests.

499. The end of our first hundred years is a suitable time to review the *predictions of foreign statesmen*. No sooner was the Declaration of Independence passed than they ventured to predict five things: I. *That the United States would be involved in ruinous foreign wars.* We have had but two foreign wars since the Revolution, and emerged safely from both. In the same period England has had seven, France ten, Prussia six, Russia ten, Austria five, and Italy six; and, except England, every one of these nations has been beaten in some of its conflicts.

II. *That the republic would be torn asunder by internal quarrels.* During the entire century we have had but one serious internal disturbance—the Rebellion. During the same time England has had two insurrections, Prussia one, Austria two, and Russia one. France has had seven revolutions, and Italy and Spain ten or a dozen each.

III. *That the republic would be succeeded by monarchy.* This has not yet come to pass. But during the last century France has not been able to maintain any one system of government twenty-five consecutive years. The sovereigns of Austria, Spain, and Greece have been forced to vacate their thrones. The monarch of France has been seven times compelled to leave his seat. Even Prussia has been obliged to change her form of government from an absolute to a constitutional monarchy.

IV. *That the confederation of states would be broken up.* This has not proved true. But Germany has witnessed the destruction of the German Confederation. England has lost some of her colonies, and Austria, her provinces. France has lost her possessions in Holland, in Belgium, and on the Rhine. Italy changed from a few to many individual states, and then to a united kingdom.

V. *That the republic would be robbed of its territory by strong military powers.* Our territory has rapidly increased, and we have never, at any time, parted with a single square foot of land belonging to the nation. During the same time there is not a single European state that has not lost a part of its territory.

500. The past has already indicated the *future issues* that will agitate the public mind. These are questions of importance,—civil service reform, the currency, the tariff question, the Bible in the public schools, compulsory education, woman suffrage, foreign—and especially Chinese—immigration, cheap transportation and the regulation of railroads, the rights of labor and capital, secret societies, temperance, and religion. What shape these questions will assume, or which will be most prominent, it is impossible to foresee.

501. *Our country* claims and needs the love and service of all. Compared with the nations of Europe, it is in its infancy. There kingdoms have been growing more than a thousand years, while our republic has reached only the end of its first century. They celebrate their Millenium, and we our Centennial. Without vain boasting, we may congratulate ourselves on the solidity and rapidity of our growth. The world has never before produced a republic of such size, and many a democracy has been shattered in less than a century. Our success has been attained in spite of the political contradiction in proclaiming freedom in theory, and yet cherishing slavery in practice; in spite of the annual arrival of thousands of immigrants, without a just apprehension of republican principles or institutions;

in spite of violent political and partisan turmoils every four years; and in spite of sectional discontent upheaving into attempted revolution. To guard against domestic, even more than foreign, dangers; to educate the people in correct living and the high duties of citizenship; to lead pure lives and cultivate noble purposes,—these are the essential duties of every American, “that the republic may receive no detriment,” that the nation may rise in true majesty, and that democratic government may not disappear from the earth.

REVIEW.

CHAPTER I.

The idea of independence, a slow growth.—R. H. Lee introduces an important resolution.—A formal Declaration of Independence is drafted.—And passed.—It is received with enthusiasm by the Whigs, with alarm by the Tories, and with anger by King George.—The British evacuate Boston.—Washington is badly beaten on Long Island.—But makes a successful dash at Princeton and Trenton.—Stark wins a victory at Benington.—And Gates at Stillwater.—Washington loses one at Brandywine.—And another at Germantown.—England offers pardon.—Lafayette lends timely aid.—The army spends a winter of suffering at Valley Forge.—The Conway Cabal is defeated.—Articles of Confederation proposed and finally adopted.—A flag is adopted.—Franklin wins a great victory at Paris.—England proposes peace.—Howe is superseded by Clinton.—Washington wins the battle of Monmouth.—Butler desolates the colony of Wyoming.—Paul Jones makes the navy famous.—Sketch of finance.—Charleston is surrendered to the British.—Gates is severely beaten at Camden.—Arnold plots his treason.—A mutiny breaks out at Morristown.—But is quieted by Congress.—Seven thousand men arrive from France.—Greene supersedes Gates.—He fights at Cowpens and Guilford Court-House.—Washington takes Cornwallis.—Which ends the war.—The provisions of the treaty.—The army is disbanded.—And Washington retires to Mount Vernon.

CHAPTER II.

Defects of the Confederation stated.—The convention of revision decides to make a new Constitution.—The slavery question first enters politics.—And the Federalists and the Republicans arise.—Sketch

of the legislative power.—Of the executive power.—Of the judicial.
—Washington is chosen President.

CHAPTER III.

Washington becomes President.—Eleven constitutional amendments are adopted.—A revenue is raised by import duties.—Public credit was also improved by the National Bank.—Congress resolves to remove to the Potomac.—The first census taken in 1790.—Citizen Genet makes trouble in America.—But is sent home.—The President quells the whisky insurrection.—And gives attention to the growing trouble with England.—Vermont, Kentucky, and Tennessee join the United States.—Washington's policy is maliciously assailed.—Congress makes provision for public education.—Whitney invents the cotton gin.—Description of His Excellency's dress and receptions.—Styles of dress in fashionable life.—In common life.—Washington declines re-election, and delivers his farewell address.

CHAPTER IV.

Sketch of Adams's career.—A weak spot found in the Constitution.—The French difficulty again becomes serious.—But war is averted by a change at Paris.—The country mourns for Washington.—The life of the western pioneer.—The second census.—Manners of society outlined.—Four things destroy Adams's chances of re-election.—The Twelfth Amendment adopted.

CHAPTER V.

Sketch of Jefferson.—He begins by reform.—He purchases Louisiana.—And sends a party to explore it.—War arises with Tripoli.—Troubles with England assume fresh prominence.—Right of search and tenure of allegiance explained.—The Chesapeake surrenders to the Leopard.—Measures of retaliation.—Burr shoots Hamilton.—And plans to operate in the Southwest.—Ohio is admitted.—Congress abolishes the foreign slave trade.—And authorizes the coast survey.—Fulton puts a steamboat on the Hudson.—Webster writes his spelling-book and dictionary.—Results of a prayer-meeting under a haystack.—Sketch of Jefferson's official manners.

CHAPTER VI.

Sketch of Madison.—Harrison goes against Tecumseh.—War is declared with England.—The Federalists oppose the war.—Perry wins an important victory on Lake Erie.—Jackson quiets the Creeks.—The British take and burn Washington.—Jackson wins at New Orleans.—And the war ends without political results.—Finances greatly deranged.—Another National Bank is chartered.—Louisiana

and Indiana are admitted.—Rate of immigration noted.—Great men come forward.—Early history of power manufacturing.—Sketch of the American Bible Society.—Savings banks originate.—The Colonization Society formed.

CHAPTER VII.

Sketch of Monroe.—Jackson raids the Seminoles.—And Florida is purchased.—Calhoun becomes the originator of protective tariffs.—Sketch of subsequent legislation respecting tariffs.—The country takes the fever for internal improvements.—The Erie Canal is dug.—And the National Road is constructed.—The first steamer crosses to Liverpool.—Five new states are admitted.—Which brings on a great debate.—But the country is quieted by the Missouri Compromise.—Monroe declares his “doctrine.”—The first school for deaf mutes.—Lafayette revisits America.—Sketch of changes in western life.

CHAPTER VIII.

Sketch of J. Q. Adams.—Several Indian tribes are removed.—New agitation of the tariff question.—The country is excited about Free Masonry.—The history of railroads outlined.—Adams and Jefferson both die on the semi-centennial day.—The Tract Society is formed in New York.—And is followed by the Peace Society.—Novelties in domestic life.—Adams has a quiet presidency.—The next President chosen from the West.

CHAPTER IX.

Sketch of Jackson.—He displaces seven hundred officials.—Which creates a sensation.—He forbids the National Bank.—Which creates another.—The South talks against protection.—Hayne and Webster have a debate.—And Jackson nips nullification.—He removes the government deposits.—The Seminole war drags through seven years.—The slavery agitation among the people.—Anti-slavery newspapers.—Nat. Turner makes an insurrection.—The fifth census.—Arkansas and Michigan are admitted.—The cholera visits the country.—The first asylum for the blind.—Reaping and mowing machines come into use.

CHAPTER X.

Sketch of Van Buren.—The panic breaks out.—And is somewhat relieved by the Sub-Treasury scheme.—The sixth census.—The history of the temperance reform outlined.—The advance of education.—The famous hard cider campaign comes on.

CHAPTER XI.

Harrison dies after a month's service.—Sketch of Tyler.—He refuses to re-charter the National Bank.—Which causes a storm of abuse.—England finally abandons her right of search.—An excitement arises against the Mormons.—The annexation of Texas becomes the great question.—Sketch of postal affairs.—Morse conceives a great idea.—And labors for years upon it.—Is surprised by an appropriation.—And constructs the first telegraph.—Goodyear vulcanizes rubber.—The antarctic continent is discovered.—The Freesoilers declare themselves at the election.

CHAPTER XII.

Sketch of Polk.—Northern boundary is fixed at 49°.—The Mexican war begins at Palo Alto.—Monterey is taken.—And victory won at Buena Vista.—Fremont takes California.—Vera Cruz is taken.—Scott captures Mexico.—Which ends the war.—Gold is discovered in California.—And the world takes a fever.—Howe makes a sewing machine.—But struggles through difficulties to success.—Sketch of subsequent improvements.—An asylum for idiots is set up at Boston.—Texas, Iowa, and Wisconsin are admitted as States.—David Wilmot makes a proviso.

CHAPTER XIII.

Sketch of Taylor.—Agitation about the admission of California.—The Omnibus Bill becomes a law.—But only after long and angry debate.—Taylor dies.—The seventh census.—Much interest is taken in Arctic exploration.—The U. G. R. R. takes passengers to Canada.

CHAPTER XIV.

Sketch of Pierce.—Arizona acquired by purchase.—A world's fair is opened at New York.—Commercial intercourse with Japan.—History of the Pacific railroad outlined.—Douglas introduces the Kansas-Nebraska Bill.—Which brings war upon "bleeding Kansas."—Sumner is beaten in the Senate chamber.—The American party is organized.

CHAPTER XV.

Sketch of Buchanan.—He sends an army to quiet the Mormons.—The story of the Atlantic cable outlined.—Sketch of the petroleum excitement.—The Supreme Court decides the Dred Scott case.—John Brown makes his raid.—The eighth census.—The Democratic party is split by slavery.—And it is beaten at the election.—Then talk of secession is heard.—And the work begins in South Carolina.—Soon the Confederate States are organized.—And the country is covered with gloom.

CHAPTER XVI.

Lincoln makes his inaugural.—The Rebellion begins at Fort Sumter.—The causes are reviewed.—The country springs to arms.—McClellan wins victories in West Virginia.—The army is panic-stricken at Bull Run.—The Southern forts are blockaded.—England and France declare the South a belligerent power.—The Trent affair nearly causes a foreign war.—McClellan fights at Fair Oaks.—And seven days in the Peninsula.—Lee makes his first invasion of the North.—And is obliged to retreat from Antietam.—Burnside loses at Fredericksburg.—Grant wins at Forts Henry and Donelson.—And gets a victory at Shiloh.—The invasion of Kentucky.—The Monitor disables the Merrimac.—Lincoln issues the proclamation of emancipation.—Colored troops are enlisted.—Hooker is dreadfully beaten at Chancellorsville.—Lee makes the second invasion of the North.—And Meade wins a great but dearly fought victory at Gettysburg.—Grant takes Vicksburg.—Rosecrans is badly beaten at Chickamauga.—But his army afterward prevails at Chatanooga.—A reaction of opinion sets in.—And a draft is ordered.—The battle rages at the Wilderness.—Lee wins victories at Cold Harbor and Spottsylvania.—Grant besieges Petersburg.—Early makes a third invasion of the North.—Sherman marches to the sea.—Richmond is evacuated.—And Lee surrenders.—Johnston follows his example.—The war ends.—Assassination of the President.—Some statistics of the war.—The National debt.—The military features of the war.—The Sanitary and Christian commissions.—Two new states are admitted.—History of government land sales.—Provisions of the Homestead law.

CHAPTER XVII.

Johnson becomes President.—He issues a proclamation of amnesty.—And becomes involved in a quarrel with Congress.—He is impeached.—And acquitted.—Napoleon interferes in Mexico.—The Atlantic Cable is made a permanent success.—Alaska is purchased.—The Territories reduced to final form.—Treaties with Germany and China.

CHAPTER XVIII.

Grant becomes President.—The Pacific railroad is completed.—The Fifteenth Amendment is ratified.—The ninth census.—The present ratio of representation in Congress.—The Alabama claims are peaceably adjusted.—Chicago burns.—And Boston.—The Credit Mobilier investigation.—Jay Cooke & Co. fail.—And a money panic ensues.—The country loses many of its distinguished men.—Sketch of the Patrons of Husbandry.—And the Sovereigns of Industry.—Sketch of the Signal Service Bureau.—Grant adopts a new Indian

policy.—Congress passes the Specie Resumption Act.—The nation celebrates its birthday.—Trouble in the South continues.—The country is in doubt about the election.—But finally inaugurates Hayes and Wheeler.

CHAPTER XIX.

Sketch of Hayes.—The removal of the troops.—Hayes tries civil service reform.—The country is astonished at the railroad riots.—Silver is remonetized.—The center of territory and population.—Agriculture.—The press.—Libraries.—Education.—Literature.—Art.—Material progress.—Religion.—Predictions of foreign statesmen in the light of after time.—Future issues.—The duty of the present.

TABLE OF CONTEMPORARY EVENTS IN
EUROPEAN HISTORY.

1776 — 1878.

This has been the *period of progress*. It has been the era of politics and great popular ideas. The actors were nations, not men. The responsibility of rulers, the right of popular suffrage, the natural equality and fraternity of men, the progressive character of society, the true value of human life and the human soul, the sacred freedom of conscience, the right of free speech and thought,—these were the ideas that, springing into action, shaped the achievements of the age. Resisting these tendencies in which the public conscience was asserting itself, Europe encountered the storms of revolt, and retreated before the advancing power of the people. Accepting them, America went steadily onward in the career of nationality and progress.

A strong tendency of the age has been toward centralization of power. The century has witnessed the absorption of pigmy kingdoms by giant monarchies, the consolidation of small and hostile states into great and coherent empires. It has been seen that philanthropy is more than patriotism, and humanity more than nationality.

Government has ceased to be the arbitrary domination of a few, and has become, more than ever before, the expression of the popular will. Political ideas which had only an uncertain and traditionary existence, have been

embodied in settled constitutions and embalmed in written forms of government.

But the triumphs of this intellectual and progressive age have not been confined to politics or government. They have also been in industry and thought. All eyes have been attracted by these successive achievements. Commerce has grown from the uncertain employment of a few to an overshadowing interest of the state. Mechanic art has quadrupled the wealth-producing power of the race, and the wildest dreams of magic have been equaled by the realizations of inventive genius. Science and literature have kept even pace with art. They have left no field unexplored, and have doubled the sum of human knowledge. Religious zeal has awakened for the conquest of the world. It is the age of missions and missionary labor. The Bible has gone into hundreds of languages, and been printed by the millions of copies.

In America the period opened with the utterance of Jefferson, that "governments derive their just powers from the consent of the governed." It closed with the sublime sentiment of Lincoln, "government of the people, by the people, and for the people." It has shown how grand are the possibilities of the American republic,—that it can cope with gigantic evils; that its tendency is toward peace and good will, while it is strong to maintain itself against rebellion, tumult, and war. It has proved that there is a power stronger than armies—the public opinion of an enlightened people. "The Great Century" has presented more problems and achieved more solutions than any other in the long roll of time.

1778. Captain Cook discovered the Sandwich Islands.

1782. The rotary steam engine invented in England by Watt.

1785. The power-loom invented by Arkwright.

1788. The English settled Australia.

1789. The opening of the French Revolution.

- 1793. Reign of Terror in France. Execution of Louis XVI and Marie Antoinette.
- 1795. Impeachment of Warren Hastings, Governor-General of India.
- 1798. Vaccination discovered in England by Dr. Jenner. Galvanism discovered at Bologna by Galvani. Lithography invented at Munich by Senefelder.
- 1800. Parliamentary union of Great Britain and Ireland
- 1804. British and Foreign Bible Society organized.
- 1807. Abolition of the slave-trade throughout British dominions.
- 1815. Battle of Waterloo resulted in the total and final overthrow of Napoleon.
- 1816. Safety-lamp invented in England by Sir Humphrey Davy.
- 1821. Independence of Mexico.
- 1824. Macadamizing the streets of London commenced by MacAdam.
- 1830. A year of revolutions—in Belgium, Germany, Poland, and France.
- 1832. Opening of the Manchester & Liverpool Railway.
- 1833. Slavery abolished throughout British dominions.
- 1839. Daguerre invented the photographic process.
- 1845. Sir John Franklin sailed on an arctic expedition, from which he never returned.
- 1847. Famine in Ireland.
- 1851. Great Exhibition in London.
- 1856. End of the Crimean war.
- 1857. Sepoy rebellion in India against the English.
- 1867. Constitution of the North German Confederation adopted by the Prussian Chamber of Deputies.
- 1871. Victor Emanuel made Rome the capital of Italy. End of the temporal power of the Pope.
- 1872. Franco-Prussian war. Overthrow of the French empire and the establishment of a republic.
- 1878. War between Russia and Turkey, ends with the virtual overthrow of the Turkish empire in Europe.

HISTORICAL RECREATIONS.

1. Who first suggested the idea that the world is a sphere?
2. Who first suggested a westward voyage to Asia?
3. How long was Columbus in seeking aid?
4. How large was the settlement of Jamestown?
5. What was the first regular industry in the country?
6. Name two strange delusions in colonial history.
7. What strange idea hindered the settlement of America?
8. Name two things that caused its settlement.
9. Recount some of the outrages against the Indians.
10. Where is the center of our population and our territory?
11. Who first "went West?"
12. In what battle did Washington bitterly rebuke the general and rally the army to victory?
13. What sieges can you mention?
14. Mention the points of contrast between Washington and Jefferson.
15. By whom and on what occasion were the words used:
"Millions for defense, but not a cent for tribute?"
16. Name some famous retreats in our history.
17. Mention a great achievement of a lazy farmer.
18. Who first proposed a union of all the colonies?
19. Who was the first American editor?
20. What boy wrote the first standard American poetry?
21. Which cause of the Revolution do you think the most important?
22. Name the wars in our history in their order.
23. Which of these do you think were justifiable?
24. Which of them was without political results?
25. In which did the Americans win every battle?
26. How did the French and English populations compare in the French and Indian war?
27. Which wars do you think might have been avoided?
28. In which did the cost amount to more than the victory was worth?

29. Name the events in our history that seem to you providential.
30. What commander died at the moment of victory?
31. What territory have the United States acquired by purchase? By annexation? By conquest?
32. What six Vice-Presidents were afterward elected Presidents?
33. What six Secretaries of State afterward became Presidents?
34. Who is the only ex-President now living?
35. Which was the oldest and which the youngest at the time of death?
36. What has been the average per cent. of increase in population during each ten years since the first census? How long does it take the country to double its population?
37. At that rate, what will be the population in the year 1900? The year 1976?
38. What tea-party became historical?
39. Which is the longer, the Pacific Railroad or the Atlantic cable?
40. Name the great American inventors.
41. Who, in a frail canoe, on a stormy night, visited an Indian wigwam, at the risk of his life, to save those of his enemies?
42. What Presidents died in office?
43. Who was called the Colossus of the American Congress?
44. Who was called the "Old Man Eloquent?"
45. Who was called the "Apostle of Peace?"
46. Who was called the "Great Pacificator?"
47. Who was called "Old Rough and Ready?"
48. Who was the Bachelor President?
49. What father and son were Presidents?
50. What three ex-Presidents died on the Fourth of July?
51. Whose dying words were, "Do n't give up the ship?"
52. How did the President's message originate?

53. Who was called the "American Fabius?"
54. Who was "Old Hickory?"
55. What was the "hard-cider campaign?"
56. What important society began in a haystack?
57. In whose administration was the largest number of states admitted?
58. In which were none admitted?
59. What general arose from a sick-bed to lead his army to victory?
60. How many years since Independence has the country been involved in war?
61. Who drafted the Declaration of Independence?
62. Who drafted the Constitution?
63. What was Lafayette's name?
64. Name ten labors and achievements of Franklin.
65. How many Presidents were Virginians?
66. Name the states that have furnished Presidents.
67. What battle was fought after peace was made?
68. Who used and what was meant by the words, "To the victors belong the spoils?"
69. What celebrated foreigners have fought in the armies of the United States?
70. What President went to Washington secretly and at night?
71. Who was called the "Father of American Law?"
72. What President had not voted in his life?
73. What rendered Valley Forge memorable?
74. What colony was founded as a home for the poor?
75. In which colony was the greatest degree of religious toleration practiced?
76. In which was the least degree?
77. How many invasions of the North did Lee's army make?
78. What President was impeached?
79. Which presidency do you think was the most unfortunate for the country?
80. On what occasion were 133 ballots taken in Congress?

81. Name the men who commanded the army of the Potomac.
82. Give one example of treason, one of assassination, and one of personal assault.
83. How many attempts were made to lay the Atlantic cable?
84. Give a noted example of arbitration.
85. How was the culture of rice introduced? Cotton?
86. State some strange facts about the food, houses, and domestic life of the people.
87. Who was the author of "squatter sovereignty," and what did it mean?
88. What Presidents were not elected by the people?
89. When and for what reasons were the various constitutional amendments made?
90. Which of our Presidents have been military men?
91. How many years did the Federalists control the government? The Republicans (in the old sense)? The Democrats? The Whigs? The Republicans (in the present sense)?
92. Name some important characters among the Indians.
93. Name some unsuccessful candidates for the presidency.
94. What general was shot in the night by his own men?
95. Who took a midnight ride to alarm the country?
96. What English statesman favored America in the Revolution?
97. How many times since Independence, and on what occasions, has Congress fled for safety?
98. What battle was witnessed from the house-tops?
99. Mention the greatest slaughter, considering the length of time, to be found in our history.
100. What questions are likely to enter into future politics?

PRONOUNCING VOCABULARY

OF PROPER NAMES.

- Abelard, ab'-e-lard.
Agassiz, ag'-a-see.
Algiers, ăl-jeerz'.
Algonquin, ăl-zhŏn-keen'.
Allston, awl'-ston.
Amalfi, ăh-măl'-fee.
Angelo, ăn'-jă-lo.
Andre, ăn'-dră.
Antietam, ăn-tee'-tăm.
Antoinette, ăn-tŏ-nět'.
Aretino, ă-ră-tee'-no.
Armada, ahr-mah'-dă.
Ashe, ash.
Augsburg, ŏugs'-boorg.

Balboa, bahl-bo'-ă.
Beauregard, bŏ'-rĕh-gard.
Behemoth, be'-he-muth.
Behring, beer'-ing.
Birney, bŭr'-ne.
Bologna, bo-lŏn'-ya.
Buel, bŭ'-ĕl.
Buena Vista, bwă'-nă vĭs'-tă.
Burgogne, bŭr-goin'.
Burke, bŭrk.
Burleigh, bur'-lĭ.
Burroughs, bur'-rŏz.

Cabot, kăb'-ŏt.
Cabrillo, kă-brĕl'-lo.

Cairo, kă'-rŏ.
Calhoun, kal-hoon'.
Carleton, kahrl'-tŭn.
Cartier, kar-te-ă'.
Castile, kas-teel'.
Champlain, shăm-plane'.
Charta, kăr'-tă.
Chattanooga, chăt-ăn-oŏ-gă.
Chickamauga, chick-a-maw'-gă.
Colfax, kŏl'-făx.
Copernicus, kŏ-pĕr'-nĭ-kŭs.
Corneille, kor-năl'.
Cornwallis, korn-wŏl'-lis.
Cortez, kŏr-tĕs'.
Credit Mobilier, cră'-dĭ-mŏ-bĭl-ĭ-ăr.

Daguerre, dă-gĕr'.
De Gama, dă-gah'-mă.
Degrand, dĕ-grănd'.
De Kalb, dŭ kăhlb'.
De Monts, dŭ-mong'.
De Soto, dă sŏ'-tŏ.
Descartes, dă-kărt'.
Diaz, dee'-ăz.
Douglas, dŭg'-las.
Dubuque, du-bŏŏk'.
Du Quesne, du-kăn'.
Duyckinck, di'-kink.

Egyptian, e-gĭpt'-shun.

Erickson, ĕr'-ĭk-sun.

Evans. ĭv'-anz.

Ewing, yoo'-ing.

Fabius, fa'-bĭ-us.

Fenelon, fĕn'-eh-lŏn.

Freneau, frĕ-no'.

Frobisher, frŏb'-ĭsh-ĕr.

Galena, gā-lee'-naw.

Galileo, gāl-ĭ-lee'-o.

Genet, jĕh-net'.

Genoese, jĕn-o-eez'.

Ghent, gĕnt.

Gilbert, zhĕl-bair'.

Gouverneur, goov-ĕr-noor'.

Grinnell, grĭn-nell'.

Guericke, ga'-rĭk-kĕh.

Guido, gwee'-do.

Gutenberg, goo'-ten-bĕrg.

Guy, ghi.

Habeas, hāb'-e-as.

Hakluyt, hāk'-loot.

Hatteras, hăt'-e-rās.

Hayne, hain.

Hennepin, hen'-ne-pin.

Hiawatha, hee-ā-wā'-thă.

Hispaniola, hĭss-păn-ĭ-o'-lă.

Holbrook, hŏl'-brook.

Horatio, hŏ-rā'-shŏ.

Hosmer, hoss'-mĕr.

Hugenots, hu'-gĕ-nŏts.

Ignatius, ĭg-nā'-she-us.

Iroquois, ĭr-ŏ-kuah'.

Juarez, hoo-ă'-rĕs.

Kosciusko, kŏs-sĭ-ŭs'-ko.

Kaskaskia, kas-kas'-kĭ-ă.

Kearney, kar'-nĭ.

Lafayette, lă-fă-ĕt'.

Leibnitz, lĭb'-nits.

Loyola, loi-o'-lă.

Magellan, mă-jel'-lăn.

Mandeville, măn'-dĕ-vĭl.

Manhattan, man-hat'-tan.

Maximilian, max-ĭ-mĭl'-yan.

Mazarin, maz-ă-reen'.

Melancthon, me-lănĕ'-thŏn.

Mesilla, mĕs-ĭl'-lă.

Meyer, mi'-er.

Milan, mil'-an.

Montcalm, mŏnt-kahm'.

Machael, mĭ'-kĕl.

Monterey, mŏn-tă-ră'.

Montesquieu, mŏn-tĕs-ku'.

Motier, mo-tĭ-ă'.

Munich, mŭ'-nĭk.

Nantes, nants.

Nauvoo, naw-voo'.

Norfolk, nŏr'-fŏk.

Nueces, nwă'-sĕs.

Oglethorpe, ō'-gĕl-thŏrp.

Orleans, or'-le-anz.

Osceola, ŏs-sĕ-ŏ'-lă.

Otis, ō'-tĭs.

Palo Alto, pah'-lo al'-to.

Panama, pan-ă-mah'.

Patroons, pa-troonz'.

Plumer, plu'-mĕr.

Plymouth, plīm'-uth.	Steinheil, stīn'-hīl.
Polish, pōl'-īsh.	St. Augustine, sēnt aw'-gus-teen.
Ponce de Leon, pōn'-thā dā lā-ōn'.	Stuyvesant, stī'-ve-sant.
Prairie du Chien, pra'-rī dū sheen.	Squier, skwīr.
Pulaski, pū-lās'-kee.	Taney, taw'-nī.
Quebec, kwe-běck'.	Tecumseh, tē-cūm'-sēh.
Racine, ras-seen'.	Toscanelli, tōs-kā-nēl'-lee.
Raleigh, raw'-lī.	Thanatopsis, thān-ā-tōp'-sīs.
Revere, re-veer'.	Trevethick, trev'-ī-thick.
Richelieu, reesh-eh-lu'.	Ulysses, u-līss'-eez.
Rochambeau, ro-shōn-bō'.	Van Eyck, van-īk'.
Rosecrans, rose'-ē-krahns.	Vasconcelos, vās-kōn-sel'-lōs.
San Diego, san de-ā'-go.	Venango, ve-nang'-go.
Santa Fe, san'-ta fā.	Venice, ven'-iss.
Schuylkill, skool'-kil.	Vera Cruz, vā'-rah kroos.
Schuyler, ski'-lēr.	Verrazzani, vēr-rat-tsah'-nē.
Scotia, skō'-she.	Vespucci, ves-poot'-she.
Seward, sū'-ard.	Worcester, woos'-ter.
Seymour, see'-mūr.	Whitefield, whīt'-feeld.
Shirley, shur'-lī.	Willamette, wil-lah'-met.
Slidell, slī-del'.	Zeisberger, zīs'-bērg-ēr.
Steuben, stū'-bēn.	Zenger, zēng'-er.

TABLE OF THE PRESIDENTS.

I.—TABLE OF THE PRESIDENTS.

NO.	PRESIDENT.	STATE.	DIED	AGE.	TERM OF OFFICE.	BY WHOM ELECTED.	VICE-PRESIDENT.	SECRETARY OF STATE.
1	George Washington	Virginia..	1799	67	Eight years.....	Whole people	John Adams.....	{ Thomas Jefferson. { Edward Randolph. { Timothy Pickering. { John Marshall.
2	John Adams.....	Massachusetts...	1826	91	Four years.....	Federalists..	Thomas Jefferson....	{ James Madison. { Robert Smith. { James Monroe. { John Quincy Adams. { Henry Clay. { Martin Van Buren. { Edward Livingston. { Louis McLane. { John Forsyth. { Daniel Webster. { Hugh S. Legare. { Abel P. Usler. { John C. Calhoun. { James Buchanan. { John M. Clayton. { Daniel Webster. { Edward Everett. { William L. Marcy. { Lewis Cass. { Jeremiah S. Black.
3	Thomas Jefferson...	Virginia.....	1826	83	Eight years.....	Republicans.	{ Aaron Burr..... } { George Clinton..... } { Elbridge Gerry..... } { P. D. Tompkins..... } John C. Calhoun.....	{ John C. Calhoun..... } { Martin Van Buren... }
4	James Madison.....	Virginia.....	1836	85	Eight years.....	Republicans.	{ George Clinton..... } { Elbridge Gerry..... } { P. D. Tompkins..... } John C. Calhoun.....	{ John C. Calhoun..... } { Martin Van Buren... }
5	James Monroe.....	Virginia.....	1831	73	Eight years.....	Republicans.	{ John C. Calhoun..... } { Martin Van Buren... }	{ John C. Calhoun..... } { Martin Van Buren... }
6	John Quincy Adams	Massachusetts...	1848	81	Four years.....	Republicans.	{ John C. Calhoun..... } { Martin Van Buren... }	{ John C. Calhoun..... } { Martin Van Buren... }
7	Andrew Jackson...	Tennessee.....	1845	78	Eight years.....	Democrats...	{ John C. Calhoun..... } { Martin Van Buren... }	{ John C. Calhoun..... } { Martin Van Buren... }
8	Martin Van Buren..	New York.....	1862	80	Four years.....	Democrats...	Richard M. Johnson.	{ John C. Calhoun..... } { Martin Van Buren... }
9	W. H. Harrison.....	Ohio.....	1841	68	One month.....	Whigs.....	John Tyler.....	{ John C. Calhoun..... } { Martin Van Buren... }
10	John Tyler.....	Virginia.....	1862	72	Three years eleven mths.	Whigs .....	.....	{ John C. Calhoun..... } { Martin Van Buren... }
11	James K. Polk.....	Tennessee.....	1849	54	Four years.....	Democrats...	George M. Dallas....	{ John C. Calhoun..... } { Martin Van Buren... }
12	Zachary Taylor.....	Louisiana.....	1850	66	One and a third years...	Whigs	Millard Fillmore....	{ John C. Calhoun..... } { Martin Van Buren... }
13	Millard Fillmore...	New York.....	1874	74	Two and two-third years.	Whigs.....	.....	{ John C. Calhoun..... } { Martin Van Buren... }
14	Franklin Pierce.....	New Hampshire	1869	65	Four years.....	Democrats...	William R. King.....	{ John C. Calhoun..... } { Martin Van Buren... }
15	James Buchanan....	Pennsylvania....	1868	77	Four years.....	Democrats...	J. C. Breckinridge...	{ John C. Calhoun..... } { Martin Van Buren... }
16	Abraham Lincoln...	Illinois.....	1865	56	Four years one month...	Republicans.	{ Hannibal Hamlin... } { Andrew Johnson... }	{ John C. Calhoun..... } { Martin Van Buren... }
17	Andrew Johnson....	Tennessee.....	1875	67	Three years eleven mths.	Republicans.	.....	{ John C. Calhoun..... } { Martin Van Buren... }
18	Ulysses S. Grant....	Illinois.....	.....	.....	Eight years.....	Republicans.	Schuyler Colfax.....	{ John C. Calhoun..... } { Martin Van Buren... }
19	Rutherford B. Hayes	Ohio.....	.....	.....	.....	Republicans.	Henry Wilson.....	{ John C. Calhoun..... } { Martin Van Buren... }
							William A. Wheeler.	{ John C. Calhoun..... } { Martin Van Buren... }

II.—TABLE OF THE STATES.

NO.	STATES.	ORIGIN AND MEANING OF NAME.	WHEN ADMIT- TED.	SETTLED.		POPULA- TION IN 1870.	AREA.	STATE MOTTOES ON THE STATE SEALS.
				WHEN	BY WHOM.			
1	Virginia.....	Elizabeth, the "Virgin Queen."	The original thirteen States.	1607	English....	1,224,947	38,352	Thus always with Tyrants.
2	Massachusetts...	The place of great hills.		1620	English....	1,457,351	7,800	By the sword she seeks peace under
3	New York.....	Duke of York.....		1623	Dutch.....	4,380,322	47,000	More elevated.
4	New Jersey.....	Governor of Jersey Island.....		1623	English....	905,794	8,320	
5	New Hampshire	Hampshire County, England..		1629	English....	318,300	9,280	
6	Maryland.....	Queen Henrietta Maria.....		1634	English....	780,894	9,356	Grow and increase.
7	Connecticut....	Long River.....		1635	English....	537,418	4,674	He who transplanted still sustains.
8	Rhode Island...	Red Island.....		1636	English....	217,356	1,306	Hope.
9	North Carolina..	Charles II.....		1663	English....	1,068,243	45,000	
10	South Carolina..	Charles II.....		1663	English....	728,000	29,385	[property.
11	Pennsylvania....	Penn's Woodland.....		1682	English....	3,515,993	46,000	Ready to defend it with our lives and
12	Delaware.....	Lord Delaware.....		1703	Swedes....	125,015	2,120	Virtue, Liberty and Independence.
13	Georgia.....	George II.....		1733	English....	1,200,609	58,000	Agriculture and Commerce.
14	Vermont.....	Green Mountain.....		1724	English....	330,552	10,212	
15	Kentucky.....	Dark and Bloody Ground.....	1791	1775	English....	1,321,001	37,680	United we stand, divided we fall.
16	Tennessee.....	River with the Great Bend....	1792	1757	English....	1,257,983	45,600	A Commonwealth in a Nation.
17	Ohio.....	Beautiful River.....	1796	1788	English....	2,602,323	39,964	
18	Louisiana.....	Louis XIV.....	1802	1699	French....	732,731	46,431	
19	Indiana.....	Indian's Ground.....	1812	.....	French....	1,673,046	33,809	
20	Mississippi.....	Great Father of Waters.....	1816	1716	French....	834,170	47,156	
21	Illinois.....	River of Men.....	1817	1682	French....	2,539,638	55,405	State Sovereignty—National Union.
22	Alabama.....	Here we Rest.....	1818	1702	French....	996,984	50,722	I direct.
23	Maine.....	The Main Land.....	1819	1625	French....	626,463	31,766	The public safety is the supreme law.
24	Missouri.....	Muddy Water.....	1820	1755	French....	1,715,000	67,380	The people rule.
25	Arkansas.....	The Name of a Tribe.....	1821	1785	French....	483,179	52,198	One of many.
26	Michigan.....	Great Lake.....	1836	1701	French....	1,184,266	56,243	Let me alone.
27	Florida.....	Blooming.....	1837	1565	Spanish....	187,751	50,268	
28	Texas.....	Drowsy Ones.....	1845	.....	Spanish....	797,500	237,321	
29	Iowa.....	Gathering of the Waters.....	1845	1788	French....	1,191,724	50,914	Civilization has succeeded barbarism.
30	Wisconsin.....	Cloudy Water.....	1846	1745	French....	1,055,167	53,924	I have found it.
31	California.....	Wild Marjoram.....	1848	1769	Spanish....	560,255	163,000	The Star of the North.
32	Minnesota.....	Smoky Water.....	1850	1846	Americans.	435,511	95,274	
33	Oregon.....	.....	1858	1811	.....	90,922	100,000	Through difficulties to the stars.
34	Kansas.....	.....	1859	.....	.....	362,872	78,418	Mountaineers are always freemen.
35	West Virginia...	.....	1861	.....	.....	442,475	23,000	
36	Nevada.....	.....	1863	.....	.....	42,491	112,000	
37	Nebraska.....	.....	1864	.....	.....	123,000	78,000	
38	Colorado.....	.....	1867	.....	.....	39,864	104,500	Nothing without divine aid.

III.—ACQUISITIONS OF TERRITORY.

YEAR.	TERRITORY.	AREA IN MILES.	HOW OBTAINED.	FROM WHOM.	COST.
1776	Thirteen States.....	820,680	-----	England ---	-----
1803	Louisiana	899,579	By purchase ----	France	\$15,000,000
1819	Florida.....	66,900	By purchase ----	Spain	5,000,000
1845	Northern Boundary.....	308,052	By treaty	England ---	-----
1846	Texas	318,000	By annexation --	Mexico ----	7,500,000
1847	New Mexico and California.....	522,955	By conquest	Mexico ----	18,000,000
1853	Arizona	45,535	By purchase ----	Mexico ----	10,000,000
1867	Alaska	577,390	By purchase ----	Russia	7,200,000
		3,559,091			\$62,700,000

DECLARATION OF INDEPENDENCE.

A DECLARATION BY THE REPRESENTATIVES OF THE UNITED STATES OF AMERICA, IN CONGRESS ASSEMBLED, JULY 4, 1776.

WHEN, in the course of human events, it becomes necessary for one people to dissolve the political bands which have connected them with another, and to assume, among the powers of the earth, the separate and equal station to which the laws of nature and of nature's God entitle them, a decent respect to the opinions of mankind requires that they should declare the causes which impel them to the separation.

We hold these truths to be self-evident—that all men are created equal; that they are endowed by their Creator with certain unalienable rights; that among these are life, liberty, and the pursuit of happiness; that, to secure these rights, governments are instituted among men, deriving their just powers from the consent of the governed; that, whenever any form of government becomes destructive of these ends, it is the right of the people to alter or abolish it, and to institute a new government, laying its foundation on such principles, and organizing its powers in such form, as to them shall seem most likely to affect their safety and happiness. Prudence, indeed, will dictate that governments long established should not be changed for light and transient causes; and, accordingly, all experience has shown that mankind are more disposed to suffer, while evils are sufferable, than to right themselves by abolishing the forms to which they are accustomed. But when a long train of abuses and usurpations, pursuing invariably the same object, evinces a design to reduce them under absolute despotism, it is their right, it is their duty to throw off such government, and to provide new guards for their future security.

Such has been the patient sufferance of these colonies, and such is now the necessity which constrains them to alter their former systems of government. The history of the present king of Great Britain is a history of repeated injuries and usurpations, all having, in direct object, the establishment of an absolute tyranny over these states. To prove this let facts be submitted to a candid world:

He has refused his assent to laws the most wholesome and necessary for the public good.

He has forbidden his governors to pass laws of immediate and pressing importance, unless suspended in their operation until his assent should be obtained; and, when so suspended, he has utterly neglected to attend to them.

He has refused to pass other laws for the accommodation of large districts of people, unless those people would relinquish the right of representation in the Legislature—a right inestimable to them, and formidable to tyrants only.

He has called together legislative bodies at places unusual, uncomfortable, and distant from the depository of their public records, for the sole purpose of fatiguing them into compliance with his measures.

He has dissolved representative houses repeatedly for opposing with manly firmness his invasions on the rights of the people.

He has refused, for a long time after such dissolutions, to cause others to be elected, whereby the legislative powers, incapable of annihilation, have returned to the people at large for their exercise; the state remaining, in the mean time, exposed to all the dangers of invasion from without and convulsions within.

He has endeavored to prevent the population of these states; for that purpose obstructing the laws for naturalization of foreigners, refusing to pass others to encourage their migration hither and raising the conditions of new appropriations of lands.

He has obstructed the administration of justice by refusing his assent to laws for establishing judiciary powers.

He has made judges dependent on his will alone for the tenure of their offices, and the amount and payment of their salaries.

He has erected a multitude of new offices, and sent hither swarms of officers to harass our people and eat out their substance.

He has kept among us, in times of peace, standing armies without the consent of our Legislature.

He has affected to render the military independent of and superior to the civil power.

He has combined with others to subject us to a jurisdiction foreign to our Constitution, and unacknowledged by our laws, giving his assent to their acts of pretended legislation:

For quartering large bodies of armed troops among us:

For protecting them, by a mock trial, from punishment for any murders which they should commit on the inhabitants of these states:

For cutting off our trade with all parts of the world:

For imposing taxes on us without our consent:

For depriving us, in many cases, of the benefits of trial by jury:

For transporting us beyond seas to be tried for pretended offences:

For abolishing the free system of English laws in a neighboring province, establishing therein an arbitrary government, and enlarging its boundaries, so as to render it at once an example and fit instrument for introducing the same absolute rule into these colonies:

For taking away our charters, abolishing our most valuable laws, and altering fundamentally the powers of our governments:

For suspending our own Legislatures, and declaring themselves invested with power to legislate for us in all cases whatsoever.

He has abdicated government here by declaring us out of his protection, and waging war against us.

He has plundered our seas, ravaged our coasts, burnt our towns, and destroyed the lives of our people.

He is, at this time, transporting large armies of foreign mercenaries to complete the works of death, desolation, and tyranny, already begun, with circumstances of cruelty and perfidy scarcely paralleled in the most barbarous ages, and totally unworthy the head of a civilized nation.

He has constrained our fellow-citizens, taken captive on the high seas, to bear arms against their country, to become the executioners of their friends and brethren, or to fall themselves by their hands.

He has excited domestic insurrections amongst us, and has endeavored to bring on the inhabitants of our frontiers the merciless Indian savages, whose known rule of warfare is an undistinguished destruction of all ages, sexes, and conditions.

In every stage of these oppressions, we have petitioned for redress in the most humble terms; our repeated petitions have been answered only by repeated injury. A prince whose character is thus marked by every act which may define a tyrant is unfit to be the ruler of a free people.

Nor have we been wanting in attention to our British brethren. We have warned them, from time to time, of attempts made by their Legislature to extend an unwarrantable jurisdiction over us. We have reminded them of the circumstances of our emigration and settlement here. We have appealed to their native justice and magnanimity, and we have conjured them, by the ties of our common kindred, to disavow these usurpations, which would inevitably interrupt our connections and correspondence. They, too, have been deaf to the voice of justice and consanguinity. We must, therefore, acquiesce in the necessity which denounces our separation, and hold them, as we hold the rest of mankind—enemies in war, in peace friends.

We, therefore, the representatives of the United States of America, in General Congress assembled, appealing to the Supreme Judge of the world for the recitude of our intentions, do, in the name and by the authority of the good people of these colonies, solemnly publish and declare that these United Colonies are, and of right

ought to be, free and independent states; that they are absolved from all allegiance to the British crown, and that all political connection between them and the state of Great Britain is, and ought to be, totally dissolved; and that, as free and independent states, they have full power to levy war, conclude peace, contract alliances, establish commerce, and to do all other acts and things which independent states may of right do. And for the support of this declaration, with a firm reliance on the protection of Divine Providence, we mutually pledge to each other our lives, our fortunes, and our sacred honor.

The foregoing declaration was, by order of Congress, engrossed, and signed by the following members:

JOHN HANCOCK.

New Hampshire.—Josiah Bartlett, William Whipple, Matthew Thornton.

Massachusetts Bay.—Samuel Adams, John Adams, Robert Treat Paine, Elbridge Gerry.

Rhode Island.—Stephen Hopkins, William Ellery.

Connecticut.—Roger Sherman, Samuel Huntington, William Williams, Oliver Wolcott.

New York.—William Floyd, Philip Livingston, Francis Lewis, Lewis Morris.

New Jersey.—Richard Stockton John Witherspoon, Francis Hopkinson, John Hart, Abraham Clark.

Pennsylvania.—Robert Morris, Benjamin Rush, Benjamin Franklin, John Morton, George Clymer, James Smith, George Taylor, James Wilson, George Ross.

Delaware.—Cæsar Rodney, George Read, Thomas M'Kean.

Maryland.—Samuel Chase, William Paca, Thomas Stone, Charles Carroll, of Carrollton.

Virginia.—George Wythe, Richard Henry Lee, Thomas Jefferson, Benjamin Harrison, Thomas Nelson, Jr., Francis Lightfoot Lee, Carter Braxton.

North Carolina.—William Hooper, Joseph Hewes, John Penn.

South Carolina.—Edward Rutledge, Thomas Heyward, Jr., Thomas Lynch, Jr., Arthur Middleton.

Georgia.—Button Gwinnett, Lyman Hall, George Walton.

CONSTITUTION OF THE UNITED STATES.

[Went into operation on the first Wednesday in March, 1789.]

PREAMBLE.

WE, the people of the United States, in order to form a more perfect union, establish justice, insure domestic tranquillity, provide for the common defense, promote the general welfare, and secure the blessings of liberty to ourselves and our posterity, do ordain and establish this Constitution for the United States of America.

ARTICLE I.

OF THE LEGISLATIVE POWER.

SECTION 1. All legislative powers herein granted shall be vested in a Congress of the United States, which shall consist of a Senate and House of Representatives.

OF THE HOUSE OF REPRESENTATIVES.

SEC. 2. The House of Representatives shall be composed of members chosen every second year by the people of the several States, and the electors in each State shall have the qualifications requisite for electors of the most numerous branch of the State Legislature.

No person shall be a Representative who shall not have attained to the age of twenty-five years, and been seven years a citizen of the United States, and who shall not, when elected, be an inhabitant of that State in which he shall be chosen.

Representatives and direct taxes shall be apportioned among the several States which may be included within this Union, according to their respective numbers, which shall be determined by adding to the whole number of free persons, including those bound to service for a term of years, and excluding Indians not taxed, three-fifths of all other persons. The actual enumeration shall be made within three years after the first meeting of the Congress of the United States, and within every subsequent term of ten years, in such manner as they shall by law direct. The number of Representatives shall not exceed one for every thirty thousand, but each State shall have at least one Representative; and, until such enumeration shall be made, the State of New Hampshire shall be entitled to choose three, Massachusetts eight, Rhode Island and Providence Plantations one, Connecticut five, New York six, New Jersey four, Pennsylvania eight, Delaware one, Maryland six, Virginia ten, North Carolina five, South Carolina five, and Georgia three.

When vacancies happen in the representation from any State, the executive authority thereof shall issue writs of election to fill such vacancies.

The House of Representatives shall choose their speaker and other officers; and shall have the sole power of impeachment.

OF THE SENATE.

SEC. 3. The Senate of the United States shall be composed of two Senators from each State, chosen by the Legislature thereof, for six years; and each Senator shall have one vote.

Immediately after they shall be assembled in consequence of the first election, they shall be divided as equally as may be into three classes. The seats of the Senators of the first class shall be vacated at the expiration of the second year, of the second class at the expiration of the fourth year, and of the third class at the expiration of the sixth year, so that one-third may be chosen every second year; and if vacancies happen by resignation, or otherwise, during the recess of the Legislature of any State, the executive thereof may make temporary appointments until the next meeting of the Legislature, which shall then fill such vacancies.

No person shall be a Senator who shall not have attained to the age of thirty years, and been nine years a citizen of the United States, and who shall not, when elected, be an inhabitant of that State for which he shall be chosen.

The Vice-President of the United States shall be President of the Senate, but shall have no vote, unless they shall be equally divided.

The Senate shall choose their other officers, and shall have a President *pro tempore*, in the absence of the Vice-President, or when he shall exercise the office of President of the United States.

The Senate shall have the sole power to try all impeachments. When sitting for that purpose, they shall be on oath or affirmation. When the President of the United States is tried, the Chief Justice shall preside; and no person shall be convicted without the concurrence of two-thirds of the members present.

Judgment in cases of impeachment shall not extend further than to removal from office, and disqualification to hold and enjoy any office of honor, trust or profit, under the United States; but the party convicted shall nevertheless be liable and subject to indictment, trial, judgment and punishment according to law.

MANNER OF ELECTING MEMBERS.

SEC. 4. The times, places and manner of holding elections for Senators and Representatives, shall be prescribed in each State by the Legislature thereof; but the Congress may at any time, by law, make or alter such regulations, except as to the places of choosing Senators.

CONGRESS TO ASSEMBLE ANNUALLY.

The Congress shall assemble at least once in every year, and such meeting shall be on the first Monday in December, unless they shall by law appoint a different day.

POWERS.

SEC. 5. Each house shall be the judge of the elections, returns and qualifications of its own members, and a majority of each shall constitute a quorum to do business; but a smaller number may adjourn from day to day, and may be authorized to compel the attendance of absent members, in such manner, and under such penalties, as each house may provide.

Each house may determine the rules of its proceedings, punish its members for disorderly behavior, and, with the concurrence of two-thirds, expel a member.

Each house shall keep a journal of its proceedings, and from time to time publish the same, excepting such parts as may, in their judgment, require secrecy; and the yeas and nays of the members of either house on any question shall, at the desire of one-fifth of those present, be entered on the journal.

Neither house, during the session of Congress, shall, without the consent of the other, adjourn for more than three days, nor to any other place than that in which the two houses shall be sitting.

COMPENSATION, ETC., OF MEMBERS.

SEC. 6. The Senators and Representatives shall receive a compensation for their services, to be ascertained by law, and paid out of the Treasury of the United States. They shall in all cases, except treason, felony and breach of the peace, be privileged from arrest during their attendance at the session of their respective houses, and in going to and returning from the same; and for any speech or debate in either house, they shall not be questioned in any other place.

No Senator or Representative shall, during the time for which he was elected, be appointed to any civil office under the authority of the United States, which shall have been created, or the emoluments whereof shall have been increased during such time; and no person holding any office under the United States, shall be a member of either house during his continuance in office.

MANNER OF PASSING BILLS, ETC.

SEC. 7. All bills for raising revenue shall originate in the House of Representatives; but the Senate may propose or concur with amendments as on other bills.

Every bill which shall have passed the House of Representatives and the Senate, shall, before it becomes a law, be presented to the President of the United States; if he approve he shall sign it, but if not he shall return it, with his objections, to

that house in which it shall have originated, who shall enter the objections at large on their journal, and proceed to reconsider it. If, after such reconsideration, two-thirds of that house shall agree to pass the bill, it shall be sent, together with the objections, to the other house, by which it shall likewise be reconsidered, and if approved by two-thirds of that house, it shall become a law. But in all such cases the votes of both houses shall be determined by yeas and nays, and the names of the persons voting for and against the bill shall be entered on the journal of each house respectively. If any bill shall not be returned by the President within ten days (Sunday excepted) after it shall have been presented to him, the same shall be a law, in like manner as if he had signed it, unless the Congress by their adjournment prevent its return, in which case it shall not be a law.

Every order, resolution or vote, to which the concurrence of the Senate and House of Representatives may be necessary (except on a question of adjournment), shall be presented to the President of the United States; and before the same shall take effect, shall be approved by him, or being disapproved by him, shall be re-passed by two-thirds of the Senate and House of Representatives, according to the rules and limitations prescribed in the case of a bill.

POWER OF CONGRESS.

SEC. 8. The Congress shall have power to lay and collect taxes, duties, imposts and excises, to pay the debts and provide for the common defense and general welfare of the United States; but all duties, imposts and excises shall be uniform throughout the United States;

To borrow money on the credit of the United States;

To regulate commerce with foreign nations, and among the several States, and with the Indian tribes;

To establish an uniform rule of naturalization, and uniform laws on the subject of bankruptcies throughout the United States;

To coin money, regulate the value thereof, and of foreign coin, and fix the standard of weights and measures;

To provide for the punishment of counterfeiting the securities and current coin of the United States;

To establish post-offices and post-roads;

To promote the progress of science and useful arts, by securing for limited times to authors and inventors the exclusive right to their respective writings and discoveries;

To constitute tribunals inferior to the Supreme Court;

To define and punish piracies and felonies committed on the high seas, and offenses against the law of nations;

To declare war, grant letters of marque and reprisal, and make rules concerning captures on land and water;

To raise and support armies, but no appropriation of money to that use shall be for a longer term than two years;

To provide and maintain a navy;

To make rules for the government and regulation of the land and naval forces;

To provide for calling forth the militia to execute the laws of the Union, suppress insurrections and repel invasions;

To provide for organizing, arming and disciplining the militia, and for governing such part of them as may be employed in the service of the United States, reserving to the States respectively the appointment of the officers, and the authority of training the militia according to the discipline prescribed by Congress;

To exercise exclusive legislation in all cases whatsoever, over such district (not exceeding ten miles square) as may, by cession of particular States, and the acceptance of Congress, become the seat of the government of the United States, and to exercise like authority over all places purchased by the consent of the Legislature of the State in which the same shall be, for the erection of forts, magazines, arsenals, dockyards and other needful buildings; and

To make all laws which shall be necessary and proper for carrying into execution the foregoing powers, and all other powers vested by this Constitution in the government of the United States, or in any department or officer thereof.

LIMITATION OF THE POWERS OF CONGRESS.

SEC. 9. The migration or importation of such persons as any of the States now existing shall think proper to admit, shall not be prohibited by the Congress prior to the year one thousand eight hundred and eight, but a tax or duty may be imposed on such importation, not exceeding ten dollars for each person.

The privilege of the writ of *habeas corpus* shall not be suspended, unless when in cases of rebellion or invasion the public safety may require it.

No bill of attainder or *ex post facto* law shall be passed.

No capitation, or other direct tax shall be laid, unless in proportion to the census or enumeration hereinbefore directed to be taken.

No tax or duty shall be laid on articles exported from any State.

No preference shall be given by any regulation of commerce or revenue to the ports of one State over those of another; nor shall vessels bound to, or from, one State, be obliged to enter, clear or pay duties in another.

No money shall be drawn from the treasury, but in consequence of appropriations made by law; and a regular statement and account of the receipts and expenditures of all public money shall be published from time to time.

No title of nobility shall be granted by the United States; and no person holding any office of profit or trust under them shall, without the consent of the Congress, accept of any present, emolument, office or title, of any kind whatever, from any king, prince or foreign State.

LIMITATION OF THE POWERS OF THE INDIVIDUAL STATES.

SEC. 10. No State shall enter into any treaty, alliance or confederation; grant letters of marque and reprisal; coin money; emit bills of credit; make any thing but gold and silver coin a tender in payment of debts; pass any bill of attainder, *ex post facto* law, or law impairing the obligation of contracts or grant any title of nobility.

No State shall, without the consent of the Congress, lay any imposts or duties on imports or exports, except what may be absolutely necessary for executing its inspection laws; and the net produce of all duties and imposts, laid by any State on imports or exports, shall be for the use of the treasury of the United States; and all such laws shall be subject to the revision and control of the Congress.

No State shall, without the consent of Congress, lay any duty of tonnage, keep troops, or ships of war, in time of peace, enter into any agreement or compact with another State, or with a foreign power, or engage in war, unless actually invaded, or in such imminent danger as will not admit of delay.

ARTICLE II.

EXECUTIVE POWER.

SECTION 1. The executive power shall be vested in a President of the United States of America. He shall hold his office during the term of four years, and together with the Vice-President, chosen for the same term, be elected as follows:

MANNER OF ELECTING.

Each State shall appoint, in such manner as the Legislature thereof may direct, a number of electors, equal to the whole number of Senators and Representatives to which the State may be entitled in the Congress; but no Senator or Representative, or person holding an office of trust or profit under the United States, shall be appointed an elector.

(The electors shall meet in their respective States, and vote by ballot for two persons, of whom one at least shall not be an inhabitant of the same State as themselves. And they shall make a list of all the persons voted for, and of the number of votes for each; which list they shall sign and certify, and transmit sealed to the seat of the government of the United States, directed to the President of the Senate. The President of the Senate shall, in the presence of the Senate and House of Representatives, open all the certificates, and the votes shall then be counted. The person having the greatest number of votes shall be the President, if such number be a majority of the whole number of electors appointed; and if there be more than one who have such majority, and have an equal number of votes, then the House of

Representatives shall immediately choose by ballot one of them for President; and if no person have a majority, then from the five highest on the list the said House shall in like manner choose the President. But in choosing the President, the votes shall be taken by States, the representation from each State having one vote; a quorum for this purpose shall consist of a member or members from two-thirds of the States, and a majority of all the States shall be necessary to a choice. In every case, after the choice of the President, the person having the greatest number of votes of the electors shall be the Vice-President. But if there should remain two or more who have equal votes, the Senate shall choose from them by ballot the Vice-President.*)

TIME OF CHOOSING ELECTORS.

The Congress may determine the time of choosing the electors, and the day on which they shall give their votes; which day shall be the same throughout the United States.

WHO ELIGIBLE.

No person except a natural born citizen, or a citizen of the United States at the time of the adoption of this Constitution, shall be eligible to the office of President; neither shall any person be eligible to that office who shall not have attained the age of thirty-five years, and been fourteen years a resident within the United States.

WHEN THE PRESIDENT'S POWER DEVOLVES ON THE VICE-PRESIDENT.

In case of the removal of the President from office, or of his death, resignation or inability to discharge the powers and duties of the said office, the same shall devolve on the Vice-President, and the Congress may by law provide for the case of removal, death, resignation or inability, both of the President and Vice-President, declaring what officer shall then act as President, and such officer shall act accordingly until the disability be removed, or a President shall be elected.

PRESIDENT'S COMPENSATION.

The President shall, at stated times, receive for his services a compensation which shall neither be increased nor diminished during the period for which he shall have been elected, and he shall not receive within that period any other emolument from the United States, or any of them.

OATH.

Before he enter on the execution of his office, he shall take the following oath or affirmation: "I do solemnly swear (or affirm) that I will faithfully execute the office of President of the United States, and will, to the best of my ability, preserve, protect and defend the Constitution of the United States."

POWERS AND DUTIES.

SEC. 2. The President shall be Commander-in-Chief of the army and navy of the United States, and of the militia of the several States when called into the actual service of the United States; he may require the opinion, in writing, of the principal officer in each of the executive departments, upon any subject relating to the duties of their respective offices, and he shall have power to grant reprieves and pardons for offences against the United States, except in cases of impeachment.

He shall have power, by and with the advice and consent of the Senate, to make treaties, provided two-thirds of the Senators present concur; and he shall nominate, and by and with the advice and consent of the Senate, shall appoint ambassadors, other public ministers and consuls, Judges of the Supreme Court, and all other officers of the United States, whose appointments are not herein otherwise provided for, and which shall be established by law; but the Congress may by law vest the appointment of such inferior officers, as they think proper, in the President alone, in the Courts of law, or in the heads of departments.

The President shall have power to fill up all vacancies that may happen during the recess of the Senate, by granting commissions which shall expire at the end of their next session.

* Altered by the 12th Amendment. See page 322.

SEC. 3. He shall, from time to time, give to the Congress information of the state of the Union, and recommend to their consideration such measures as he shall judge necessary and expedient; he may, on extraordinary occasions, convene both houses or either of them, and in case of disagreement between them, with respect to the time of adjournment, he may adjourn them to such time as he shall think proper; he shall receive ambassadors and other public ministers; he shall take care that the laws be faithfully executed, and shall commission all the officers of the United States.

OFFICERS REMOVED.

SEC. 4. The President, Vice-President, and all civil officers of the United States, shall be removed from office, on impeachment for, and conviction of, treason, bribery, or other high crimes and misdemeanors.

ARTICLE III.

OF THE JUDICIARY.

SECTION 1. The judicial power of the United States shall be vested in one Supreme Court, and in such inferior Courts as the Congress may from time to time ordain and establish. The Judges, both of the Supreme and inferior Courts, shall hold their offices during good behavior, and shall, at stated times, receive for their services a compensation which shall not be diminished during their continuance in office.

SEC. 2. (The judicial power shall extend to all cases, in law and equity, arising under this Constitution, the laws of the United States, and treaties made, or which shall be made, under their authority; to all cases affecting ambassadors, other public ministers and consuls; to all cases of admiralty and maritime jurisdiction; to controversies to which the United States shall be a party; to controversies between two or more States; between a State and citizens of another State; between citizens of different States; between citizens of the same State claiming lands under grants of different States, and between a State, or the citizens thereof, and foreign States, citizens or subjects.*)

JURISDICTION OF SUPREME COURT.

In all cases affecting ambassadors, other public ministers and consuls, and those in which a State shall be a party, the Supreme Court shall have original jurisdiction. In all the other cases before mentioned, the Supreme Court shall have appellate jurisdiction, both as to law and fact, with such exceptions, and under such regulations as the Congress shall make.

OF TRIALS FOR CRIMES.

The trial of all crimes, except in cases of impeachment, shall be by jury; and such trial shall be held in the State where the said crimes shall have been committed; but when not committed within any State, the trial shall be at such place or places as the Congress may by law have directed.

OF TREASON.

SEC. 3. Treason against the United States shall consist only in levying war against them, or in adhering to their enemies, giving them aid and comfort.

No person shall be convicted of treason unless on the testimony of two witnesses to the same overt act, or on confession in open Court.

The Congress shall have power to declare the punishment of treason, but no attainder of treason shall work corruption of blood, or forfeiture, except during the life of the person attainted.

ARTICLE IV.

STATE ACTS.

SECTION 1. Full faith and credit shall be given in each State to the public acts, records and judicial proceedings of every other State. And the Congress may, by general laws, prescribe the manner in which such acts, records and proceedings shall be proved, and the effect thereof.

* Altered by the 11th Amendment. See page 322.

PRIVILEGES OF CITIZENS.

SEC. 2. The citizens of each State shall be entitled to all privileges and immunities of citizens in the several States.

A person charged in any State with treason, felony or other crime, who shall flee from justice, and be found in another State, shall, on demand of the executive authority of the State from which he fled, be delivered up, to be removed to the State having jurisdiction of the crime.

RUNAWAYS TO BE DELIVERED UP.

No person held to service or labor in one State, under the laws thereof, escaping into another, shall, in consequence of any law or regulation therein, be discharged from such service or labor, but shall be delivered up on claim of the party to whom such service or labor may be due.

NEW STATES.

SEC. 3. New States may be admitted by the Congress into this Union; but no new State shall be formed or erected within the jurisdiction of any other State; nor any State be formed by the junction of two or more States, or parts of States, without the consent of the Legislatures of the States concerned as well as of the Congress.

TERRITORIAL AND OTHER PROPERTY.

The Congress shall have power to dispose of, and make all needful rules and regulations respecting, the territory, or other property belonging to the United States; and nothing in this Constitution shall be so construed as to prejudice any claims of the United States, or of any particular State.

SEC. 4. The United States shall guarantee to every State in this Union a republican form of government, and shall protect each of them against invasion; and, on application of the Legislature, or of the Executive (when the Legislature can not be convened), against domestic violence.

ARTICLE V.

AMENDMENTS.

The Congress, whenever two-thirds of both houses shall deem it necessary, shall propose amendments to this Constitution; or, on the application of the Legislatures of two-thirds of the several States, shall call a Convention for proposing amendments, which, in either case, shall be valid to all intents and purposes, as part of this Constitution, when ratified by the Legislatures of three-fourths of the several States, or by Conventions in three-fourths thereof, as the one or the other mode of ratification may be proposed by Congress; provided, that no amendment which may be made prior to the year one thousand eight hundred and eight, shall in any manner affect the first and fourth clauses in the ninth Section of the first Article; and that no State, without its consent, shall be deprived of its equal suffrage in the Senate.

ARTICLE VI.

DEBTS.

All debts contracted, and engagements entered into, before the adoption of this Constitution, shall be as valid against the United States under this Constitution as under the Confederation.

SUPREME LAW OF THE LAND.

This Constitution, and the laws of the United States which shall be made in pursuance thereof, and all treaties made, or which shall be made, under the authority of the United States shall be the supreme law of the land; and the Judges in every State shall be bound thereby, any thing in the Constitution or laws of any State to the contrary notwithstanding.

OATH.—NO RELIGIOUS TEST.

The Senators and Representatives before mentioned, and the members of the several State Legislatures, and all executive and judicial officers, both of the United States and of the several States, shall be bound by oath or affirmation to support this Constitution; but no religious test shall ever be required as a qualification to any office, or public trust, under the United States.

ARTICLE VII.

The ratifications of the Conventions of nine States shall be sufficient for the establishment of this Constitution between the States so ratifying the same.

Done in Convention, by the unanimous consent of the States present, the seventeenth day of September, in the year of our Lord one thousand seven hundred and eighty-seven, and of the Independence of the United States of America the twelfth. In witness whereof we have hereunto subscribed our names.

GEORGE WASHINGTON,

President, and Deputy from Virginia.

New Hampshire—John Langdon, Nicholas Gilman. *Massachusetts*—Nathaniel Gorham, Rufus King. *Connecticut*—William Samuel Johnson, Roger Sherman. *New York*—Alexander Hamilton. *New Jersey*—William Livingston, David Brearley, William Patterson, Jonathan Dayton. *Pennsylvania*—Benjamin Franklin, Thomas Mifflin, Robert Morris, George Clymer, Thomas Fitzsimmons, Jared Ingersoll, James Wilson, Gouverneur Morris. *Delaware*—George Read, Gunning Bedford, Jr., John Dickinson, Richard Bassett, Jacob Broom. *Maryland*—James M'Henry, Daniel of St. Tho. Jenifer, Daniel Carroll. *Virginia*—John Blair, James Madison, Jr. *North Carolina*—William Blount, Richard Dobbs Spaight, Hugh Williamson. *South Carolina*—John Rutledge, Chas. Cotesworth Pinckney, Charles Pinckney, Pierce Butler. *Georgia*—William Few, Abraham Baldwin.

Attest,

WILLIAM JACKSON, *Secretary.*

AMENDMENTS TO THE CONSTITUTION.

[The first ten amendments were proposed by Congress at their first session, in 1789. The eleventh was proposed in 1794, and the twelfth in 1803.]

ARTICLE I.

FREE EXERCISE OF RELIGION.

Congress shall make no law respecting an establishment of religion, or prohibiting the free exercise thereof; or abridging the freedom of speech, or of the press; or the right of the people peaceably to assemble, and to petition the government for a redress of grievances.

ARTICLE II.

RIGHT TO BEAR ARMS.

A well-regulated militia being necessary to the security of a free State, the right of the people to keep and bear arms shall not be infringed.

ARTICLE III.

NO SOLDIER TO BE BILLETED, ETC.

No soldier shall, in time of peace, be quartered in any house without the consent of the owner; nor in time of war, but in a manner to be prescribed by law.

ARTICLE IV.

UNREASONABLE SEARCHES PROHIBITED.

The right of the people to be secure in their persons, houses, papers and effects, against unreasonable searches and seizures, shall not be violated; and no warrants shall issue but upon probable cause, supported by oath or affirmation, and particularly describing the place to be searched, and the persons or things to be seized.

ARTICLE V.

CRIMINAL PROCEEDINGS.

No person shall be held to answer for a capital or otherwise infamous crime, unless on a presentment or indictment of a Grand Jury, except in cases arising in the land or naval forces, or in the militia, when in actual service, in time of war or public danger; nor shall any person be subject for the same offense to be put twice

In jeopardy of life or limb; nor shall be compelled, in any criminal case, to be a witness against himself; nor be deprived of life, liberty or property, without due process of law; nor shall private property be taken for public use without just compensation.

ARTICLE VI.

MODE OF TRIAL.

In all criminal prosecutions the accused shall enjoy the right to a speedy and public trial, by an impartial jury of the State and district wherein the crime shall have been committed, which district shall have been previously ascertained by law, and to be informed of the nature and cause of the accusation; to be confronted with the witnesses against him; to have compulsory process for obtaining witnesses in his favor; and to have the assistance of counsel for his defense.

ARTICLE VII.

RIGHT OF TRIAL BY JURY.

In suits at common law, where the value in controversy shall exceed twenty dollars, the right of trial by jury shall be preserved; and no fact tried by jury shall be otherwise re-examined in any Court of the United States than according to the rules of the common law.

ARTICLE VIII.

BAIL.—FINES.

Excessive bail shall not be required, nor excessive fines imposed, nor cruel and unusual punishments inflicted.

ARTICLE IX.

RIGHTS NOT ENUMERATED.

The enumeration in the Constitution of certain rights, shall not be construed to deny or disparage others retained by the people.

ARTICLE X.

POWERS RESERVED.

The powers not delegated to the United States by the Constitution, nor prohibited by it to the States, are reserved to the States respectively or to the people.

ARTICLE XI.

LIMITATION OF JUDICIAL POWER.

The judicial power of the United States shall not be construed to extend to any suit in law or equity commenced or prosecuted against one of the United States by citizens of another State, or by citizens or subjects of any foreign State.

ARTICLE XII.

ELECTION OF PRESIDENT.

The electors shall meet in their respective States, and vote by ballot for President and Vice-President, one of whom, at least, shall not be an inhabitant of the same State with themselves; they shall name in their ballots the person voted for as President, and in distinct ballots the person voted for as Vice-President; and they shall make distinct lists of all persons voted for as President and of all persons voted for as Vice-President, and of the number of votes for each, which list they shall sign and certify, and transmit sealed to the Seat of the Government of the United States, directed to the President of the Senate; the President of the Senate shall, in the presence of the Senate and House of Representatives, open all the certificates, and the votes shall then be counted; the person having the greatest number of votes for President shall be the President, if such number be a majority of the whole number of electors appointed; and if no person have such a majority, then from the persons having the highest numbers, not exceeding three, on the list of those voted for as President, the House of Representatives shall choose immediately by ballot the President. But in choosing the President, the vote shall be taken by States, the representatives from each State having one vote; a quorum for this purpose shall consist of a member or members from two-thirds of the States, and a majority of all the States shall be necessary to a choice. And if the

House of Representatives shall not choose a President, whenever the right of choice shall devolve upon them. before the fourth day of March next following, then the Vice-President shall act as President, as in the case of the death or other Constitutional disability of the President.

The person having the greatest number of votes as Vice-President shall be the Vice-President, if such number be a majority of the whole number of electors appointed; and if no person have a majority, then from the two highest numbers on the list, the Senate shall choose the Vice-President; a quorum for the purpose shall consist of two-thirds of the whole number of Senators, and a majority of the whole number shall be necessary to a choice.

But no person Constitutionally ineligible to the office of President shall be eligible to that of Vice-President of the United States.

[Ratified in 1865.]

ARTICLE XIII.

SEC. 1. Neither Slavery nor involuntary servitude, except as a punishment for crime, whereof the party shall have been duly convicted, shall exist within the United States, or any place subject to their jurisdiction.

SEC. 2. Congress shall have power to enforce this article by appropriate legislation.

[Ratified in 1868.]

ARTICLE XIV.

SEC. 1. All persons born or naturalized in the United States, and subject to the jurisdiction thereof, are citizens of the United States, and of the State wherein they reside. No State shall make or enforce any law which shall abridge the privileges and immunities of citizens of the United States. Nor shall any State deprive any person of life, liberty or property, without due process of law, nor deny to any person within its jurisdiction the equal protection of the laws.

SEC. 2. Representatives shall be apportioned among the several States according to their respective numbers, counting the whole number of persons in each State, excluding Indians not taxed; but whenever the right to vote at any election for electors of President and Vice-President, or United States Representatives in Congress, executive and judicial officers, or the members of the Legislature thereof, is denied to any of the male inhabitants of such State, being twenty-one years of age, and citizens of the United States, or in any way abridged, except for participation in rebellion or other crimes, the basis of representation therein shall be reduced in the proportion which the number of such male citizens shall bear to the whole number of male citizens twenty-one years of age in that State.

SEC. 3. No person shall be a Senator or Representative in Congress, elector of President and Vice-President, or hold any office, civil or military, under the United States, or under any State, who, having previously taken an oath as a member of Congress, or as an officer of the United States, or as a member of any State Legislature, or as an executive or judicial officer of any State, to support the Constitution of the United States, shall have engaged in insurrection or rebellion against the same, or given aid or comfort to the enemies thereof; but Congress may, by a vote of two-thirds of each House, remove such disability.

SEC. 4. The validity of the public debt of the United States authorized by law, including debts incurred for the payment of pensions and bounties for service in suppressing insurrection or rebellion, shall not be questioned; but neither the United States nor any State shall assume to pay any debt or obligation incurred in aid of insurrection or rebellion against the United States, or any claim for the loss or emancipation of any slave, but all such debts, obligations and claims shall be illegal and void.

SEC. 5. The Congress shall have power to enforce, by appropriate legislation, the provisions of this article.

[Ratified in 1870.]

ARTICLE XV.

SEC. 1. The right of citizens of the United States to vote shall not be denied or abridged by the United States, or by any State, on account of race, color or previous condition of servitude.

SEC. 2. The Congress shall have power to enforce this Article by appropriate legislation.

2940

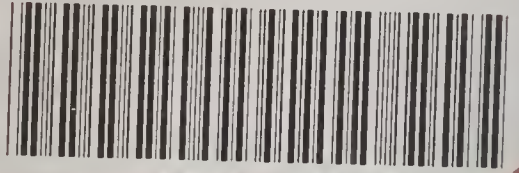
Deacidified using the Bookkeeper process.
Neutralizing agent: Magnesium Oxide
Treatment Date: April 2010

PreservationTechnologies
A WORLD LEADER IN COLLECTIONS PRESERVATION

111 Thomson Park Drive
Cranberry Township, PA 16066
(724) 779-2111

0 005 914 937 4

LIBRARY OF CONGRESS



0 005 914 937 4